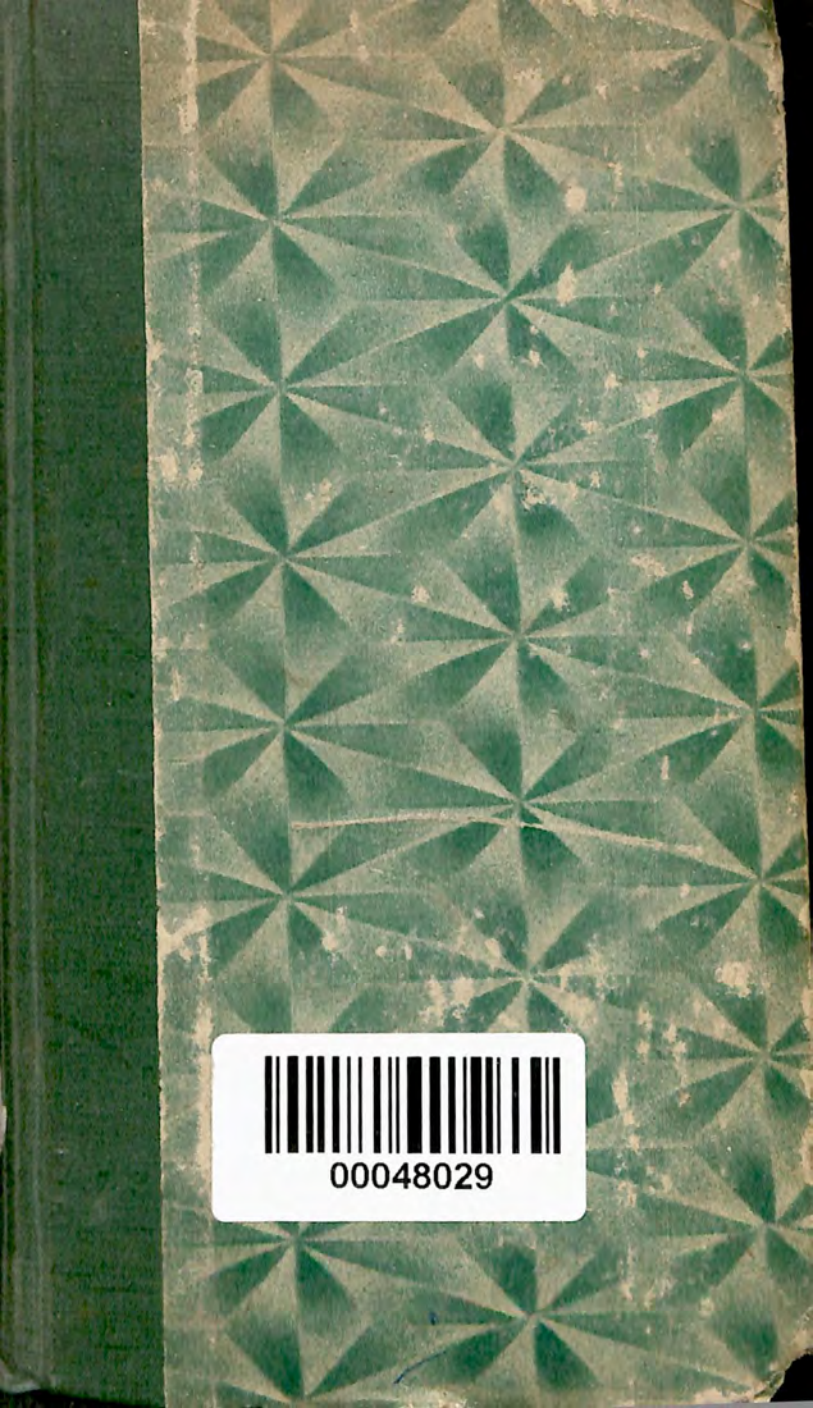
00048029

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BÓMBAY-400 001.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 16 January, 2016

A

PRACTICAL

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

Ax-5-8

PRACTICAL

GERMAN GRAMMAR;

OR,

A NEW AND EASY METHOD

OF

ACQUIRING A THOROUGH KNOWLEDGE

OF THE

German Language.

48029

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS

BY JOHN ROWBOTHAM,

LATE OF THE CLASSICAL, MATHEMATICAL AND COMMERCIAL ACADEMY,

WALWORTH.

London:

PRINTED FOR BALDWIN, CRADOCK AND JOY; HARVEY AND DARTON; AND BOOSEY AND SONS.

1824.

00048029

PRINTED BY J. B. G. VOGEL,
ST. GEORGE'S PLACE, CAMBERWELL.

PREFACE.

Ancillon, in his "Mélanges de Littérature et de Philosophie," says of the German Language, that "it is rich, varied and flexible,—a language which owes to itself all its beauties,—which possesses in itself undeveloped treasures,—and which is susceptible of an indefinite perfection." Indeed all competent judges readily admit that it possesses advantages not to be found in any of the mixed dialects of Europe, and that, in strength, copiousness, beauty, sublimity and comprehensiveness of expression, it is surpassed by no language ancient or modern.

The Germans hold so high a rank in literature, science and the arts, and their authors of eminence are so numerous as

every department of human knowledge, that the study of their language has now become, not merely desirable as a matter of taste, but, in some degree, necessary to every person who has the slightest pretensions to an acquaintance with European literature.

This language not only opens a rich source of gratification to the man of taste and science, but, as it is the origin of the greater part of our colloquial words and phrases, it cannot fail to throw much light on the works of GOWER, CHAUCER, SPENCER, SHAKSPEARE and other early writers, and must therefore be of essential service to every Englishman who wishes to acquire an accurate and extensive knowledge of his native tongue. Its utility, in a mercantile point of view, cannot be doubted, as it is probably more in use among European Merchants than any other language, except the English. While, however, the importance of the German Language in literature and science,—in arts and commerce,—gives it a just claim to the very general attention which is now paid to it in the middle and higher ranks of society, it is a subject of serious complaint that there has hitherto existed in English no good practical German Grammar. The great disadvantage is, that, in most or all of those which have been published, the first exercises begin with long sentences which require the application of all the rules of syntax, and that, in some instances, more rules are requisite than the writers themselves have given. Instead, however, of undertaking a

task which, though easy, might be thought invidious, namely to detail their various defects, the author thinks it sufficient to say that it has been his anxious endeavour to obviate them; and, as he is an Englishman, he presumes to hope that his grammar will be more useful, to his own countrymen, than any similar productions from the hands of German writers:—for who, it may be asked, is so likely to know the peculiar difficulties which retard the progress of the English student, as he who has had to contend with them.

Although the arrangement of the following pages differs considerably, from that of preceding writers, the materials of which they are composed have been carefully selected from the works of German Grammarians of established authority.

In this grammar every rule or important note is followed by easy exercises, or by suitable examples: the exercises increase in difficulty by regular and almost imperceptible gradations, commencing with the articles and nouns which are sufficiently difficult for beginners, then proceeding with the articles, nouns and adjectives, and so on in regular order through the other parts of speech. In syntax the rules have been compressed as much as possible in order to afford greater scope for illustration and practice; and, though this grammar is comprised within a smaller compass than most others on the same subject, it will nevertheless be found to contain more matter than any German Gram-

mar hitherto published in this country. Throughout the work the author has been studious to unite conciseness with perspicuity, so as neither to perplex the student with unnecessary explanations, nor to omit any elucidation which he conceived would be useful. How far he has succeeded in these particulars is left to the decision of candid and impartial judges.

MARLBOROUGH PLACE,
WALWORTH.
May 1st, 1824.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Alphabet 1
Pronunciation 4
Capitals 5
Observations on Orthography 6
Parts of Speech 8
Articles 9
Nouns 7
Declension of Proper Names 10
Observations on the Plural of Nouns 12
——————— Declension of Nouns 17
——————— Gender of Nouns 24
Endings of Nouns of every Declension 31
Adjectives 41
Terminations of Adjectives 51
Comparison of Adjectives 61
Numerals 63
Pronouns 70
Possessive Pronouns 78
Demonstrative Pronouns 83
Relative Pronouns 89
Interrogative Pronouns 94
Indefinite Pronouns 98
Division of Verbs 101

CONTENTS.

PAGE.

Auxiliary Verbs 97
Conjugation of a Regular Active Verb 134
Table of Terminations of the Regular Verbs 138
Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Sehen 141
List of the Irregular Verbs 153
Conjugation of a Regular Passive Verb 170
Conjugation of an Irregular Passive Verb 175
Conjugation of Neuter Verbs ..... 178 and 179
Observations on the Neuter Verbs 183
Neuter Verbs with haben 187
Neuter Verbs with Seyn 190
Compound Verbs 192
Observations on the Compound Verbs 201
Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed 206
Reflective Verbs 207
Observations on the Reflective Verbs 212
Impersonal Verbs 212
Observations on the Impersonal Verbs 217
Adverbs 222
Prepositions 226
Conjunctions 235
Interjections 241

SYNTAX.

Articles 243
Nouns 251
Observations respecting the Cases 259
Adjectives 260
Observations on the Adjectives 266
Pronouns 270
Possessive Pronouns 270
Demonstrative Pronouns 275

CONTENTS.

Relative Pronouns 279
Interrogative Pronouns ..... [illegible]
Indefinite Pronouns ..... [illegible]
Verbs ..... [illegible]
Agreement of Verbs ..... [illegible]
Government of Verbs 291
Moods and Tenses of Verbs ..... [illegible]
Passive Verbs 311
Neuter Verbs ..... [illegible]
Compound Verbs 314
Reflective Verbs ..... [illegible]
Impersonal Verbs 317
Participles ..... [illegible]
Adverbs ..... [illegible]
Prepositions 324
Conjunctions ..... [illegible]
Familiar Dialogues ..... [illegible]
Proverbs and Idiomatic Expressions, &c. ..... [illegible]
German Abbreviations 346

Explanation of the Signs and English Abbreviations which are used in this Grammar.

The Asterisk (*) is sometimes used to direct the reader to some note or observation; but it is generally placed before single words to show that the vowels a, o, u, are changed into the diphthongs ae, oe, ue, or ä, ö, ü. Example: das Buch, the book; die Buecher, or Bücher, the books.

The letters *M. F. N. m. f. n.* or *Mas. Fem. Neut.* denote the genders Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The letters *N. G. D. A.* or *Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc.* denote the cases Nominative, Genitive, Dative and Accusative.

The figures 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. when used after a noun, point out to what declension the noun belongs.

The letters *a. b. c. d.* &c. denote first, second, third, &c. *Ex.* used for Example; *Obs.* for Observe, or Observation; *Sing.* Singular; *Pl.* Plural.

Pres. Present Tense; *Imp.* Imperfect; *Perf.* Perfect; *Plup.* Pluperfect; *1st. Fut.* First Future; *2nd. Fut.* Second Future; *Cond.* Conditional; *Act.* Active; *Pass.* Passive; *Vide*, or *v.* See; *P.* or *p.* Page; *Gram.* Grammar.

A PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR.

CHAP. I.

§ I. *The Alphabet.*

Letters.	*Names.*	*English.*	*Pronounced.*
A, a,	ah,	A, a.	as *a* in *Father*,
B, b,	bay,	B, b.	generally sounded as in English, except where it is sounded like *p* at the end of words; as, ob, abhe, pronounced op.
C, c,	tsay,	C, c.	before a, o, u as K, as Cato, Cicero, before e, i, y as Z, as if it were written Zicero.
D, d,	day,	D, d,	as in English, but in some provinces much harder and approaching to the *t*.
E, e,	a,	E, e,	as *a* in *fate*, but is sometimes sounded like the broad
F, f,	f,	F, f,	
G, g,	ghay,	G, g,	G, at the beginning of words is hard, at the end, it has the soft guttural sound of ch; as, der Tag, (the day). But the sound of G, and of the guttural g have no corresponding sound in the English language.
H, h,	hah,	H, h,	as in English when it begins a word, otherwise it merely prolongs the sound of the preceding vowel.
I, i,	e,	I, i,	
J, j,	yod,	J, j.	as *y* in year.
K, k,	kah	K, k,	
L, l,	l.	L, l.	
M, m,	m.	M, m,	
N, n,	n.	N, n,	
O, o,	o.	O, o,	
P, p,	pay,	P, p.	

Name.	English.	Pronounced.
koo,	Q, q,	
err,	R, r,	
s,	S, s,	
tay,	T, t,	
oo,	U, u,	has either the long sound of the English *oo*, as die Kuh, *(koo) cow*, or the short sound of *u* in *full*.
fow,	V, v,	as *f* in English.
vay,	W, w,	nearly as *v* in the English word *vine*
iks,	X, x,	
ipsilon,	Y, y,	Y is merely double *i* and was formerly written *ij*, it is sounded as *y* in the English word system, Syſtem.
tsett,	Z, z,	as *ts*, in the German word Zimmer, *room*, which is sounded as if it were tſimmer.

The letters, f, l, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, and x, when combined with other letters, are pronounced as in English.

THE VOWELS ARE

a, e, i, o, u.

THE DIPHTHONGS ARE

ä or ae, pronounced as a in *hare*.

äu or oe, ... *eu*, or *œu*, in the French *peu*, little; *cœur*, heart; ex. hören, to hear.

ü or ue, ... the French *u* in *dure*, hard; ex. übel, ill.

au, ... *ou*, in *house*; ex. Bau, building.

ay, ey, ... *y*, in *sky*; ex. Kaiſer, emperor.

ei, ey, ... *y*, in *by*; ex. bei or bey, near.

ie, ... *ee*, in the English word *feet*.

eu, ... *i* or *oi*, in *voice*; ex. Feuer, *fire*.

---

* As it would be inconvenient to put dots, or e over capitals the diphthongs Ae, Oe, Ue are used at the beginning of words to find the ä, ö, ü. Ex: die Aepfel, *the apples*; but ä, ö, ü, are used when differently situated. Ex: die Bögen, *the bows*, die Brüder, *the brothers*.

A TRIPHTHONG is the union of three vowels; as [illegible] pronounced as *oi* in the English word *voice*, Ex. [illegible]

THE DOUBLE CONSONANTS ARE

ch, ſch, ck, ff, ph, pf, ſſ, ß, tz.
ch, sch, ck, ff, ph, pf, ss, sz, tz.

Some of the letters or characters are so similar in [illegible] as to be easily confounded. To avoid this confusion [illegible]

1. That among the capital letters 𝔅, *bay*, is closed in the middle, and 𝔙, *fow*, is open.

2. 𝔈, *e*, has a small projecting stroke in the middle, 𝔗, *tsay*, has not.

3. 𝔊, *ghay*, is without any opening, but 𝔖, *s*, has an opening,

4. 𝔎, *kah*, is rounded at the top towards the right hand, 𝔑, *n*, open in the middle and, 𝔯, *err*, closed.

5. 𝔐, *m*, is open, and 𝔚, *vay*, closed at the bottom.

Among the small letters.

1. 𝔟, *bay*, is perfectly closed below, and 𝔥, *hah*, open.

2. 𝔪, *m*, is quite open below, and 𝔴, *vay*, is closed.

3. 𝔳, *fow*, is closed, and 𝔶, *ipsilon*, is open at the bottom.

4. 𝔵, *iks*, has a small stroke below on the left, and 𝔯, *err*, none.

§ II. *On the Pronunciation.*

In German as in most other foreign languages attempts are generally made by writers of Grammars to give rules for the pronunciation; but as any description of sounds that can possibly be given, must fall far short of oral instruction and serve rather to mislead than instruct, I shall confine myself to the following observation.

The Germans pronounce every letter in each word, and always according to the original sound, except the diphthongs and combined consonants ch, ſch, ph, ß.

This rule cannot mislead, but students of the German or of any other foreign language, had better never attempt to acquire the pronunciation without the assistance of a teacher, as sounds must be acquired by the ear and not by the eye.

§ III. *Observations respecting the use of Capital Letters.*

1. All substantives, as well as all words used substantively, begin with capitals, and also all sentences: as,

e day.	die Woche, the week.
e wise man.	die Meinigen, my family.
he green.	das Unſerige, our property.
ine.	das Leſen, (*the*) reading, &c.
ſener Mann iſt	An honest man is the noblest
Werk Gottes.	work of God.

2. The pronouns answering to *you, your*, &c. must begin with a capital, when they refer to the person whom we address; as, Sie, *you*; Du, *thou* &c. Ihr, Ihrige, *your*; but the pronoun ich, *I*, is never written with a capital but at the beginning of a sentence, or in some particular instances, which may be learnt by reading.

The pronoun ſie, when it answers to the English pronoun *they*, or *she*, is written with a small letter, unless it begin a sentence.

The numeral Ein, *one*, begins with a capital to distinguish it from the article, when a particular stress is laid upon it; as, Es iſt nur Ein Gott, there is but one God.*

Observations on Orthography.

Learners are often embarrassed by the various modes of spelling, adopted by different authors, the following examples and remarks may be found useful.

Use C instead of K; as, Cabinet, &c. *instead of* Kapitel, Kabinet.

Use T instead of Z; as, Cither, &c. ..... Zentner, Zither.

Use ei instead of ey; as, frei, Ei, &c. .... { zwey, drey, frey, Ey, May, bey, Fiſcherey.
ei, Fiſcherei,

Use i instead of y; as, Fürſtin, &c. ..... Königinn, Fürſtinn.

Use D instead of T; as, Dinte, &c. ..... Brod, Dinte.

Use Z instead of ß; as, Weizen, &c. ..... Reitzen, Weitzen.

Many authors reject the h from words or syllables which are pronounced long; as, Name, Narung, Einmal, &c. *instead of* Nahme, Nahrung, Einmahl.

In many of the modern publications, which are printed in German characters, i is used instead of y. Ex. bei (*not* bey) and all words compounded with bei; as beiſitzen, *to sit by*, (*not* beyſitzen, *both*, (*not* beyde); zwei, *two*, (*not* zwey); drei, *three*.

Vide the new edition of Bailey's Dictionary,

---

* Words derived from the proper names of places begin with a capital. Die franzöſiſche Sprache iſt viel ärmer als die deutſche, *The French language is much poorer than the German*; but some authors make use of the capital, and would write: Die Franzöſiſche Sprache, &c.

Heinsius' German Grammar, Zeitung für d… genblatt, &c. But in the Jena and Leip… which are printed in Roman characters, … the above examples.

As still greater irregularities take plac… the following observations respecting them…

1. A word should never terminate in … write muß, *not* muſſ; bloß, *not* bloſſ. So … *tred*, naß, *wet*, &c. For this authority vide … Adelung's Dictionary or Grammar, or any … which are printed in German characters. … indifferent, whether ſſ or ß be employed … ters are used. Vide the Jena or Leipsic …

2. ß is invariably used after a vowel … the middle and at the end of words; as, … *salute*; ſaßen, *sat*; Spaß, *sport*, &c.*

3. ß is used instead of ſſ, at the end of … sonant follows: as, haßlich, *hateful*; größ… Sprößling, *sprig*, &c. But when a short … ther vowel follows, ſſ is used instead of ß … haſſen, *to hate*; eſſen, *to eat*; Schloſſer, … &c. So in declining the same observati… *Sing.* N. Faß, (cask,) G. Faſſes, … *Plur.* N. Faſſer, (casks) G. Faſſer, … *Sing.* N. Fraß, (glutton) G. Fraßes, … *Plur.* N. Fraße, &c.

N.B. a is short in Faß; but long in …

4. In the following adjectives and n… Bloß, *naked*. *M.* bloßer, *F.* bloße, *N.* bloß… Groß, *great*. *M.* großer, *F.* große, *N.* groß… Süß, *sweet*. *M.* ſüßer, *F.* ſüße, *N.* ſüßes; …
But in the following the vowel a is sho…

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Blaß, pale.	blaſſer,	blaſſe,	blaſſes.
Graß, horrible.	graſſer,	graſſe,	graſſes.
Naß, wet.	naſſer,	naſſe,	naſſes.
Bläſſe, paleness.	Näſſe, wetness.		

5. In contracted words ß is used instead of s or ſ, as,
dieß for dieſes, this, *Nom. Neuter.*
deß .... deſſen, of this, *Gen. Mas.* and *Neut.*
weß .... weſſen, whose, or of whom.
er ißt.... er iſſet, he eats.
er läßt .. er läſſet, he lets.

* The double vowels aa, au, äu, ei, ie, oo … ä, ö, ü are sometimes long and sometimes sh…

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

CHAP. II.

§ I. *Parts of Speech.**

In German there are nine different classes of words or parts of speech, five of which are declinable, and four indeclinable, viz.

Declinable.	*Indeclinable.*
1. Article, Geſchlechtswort.	6. Adverb, Nebenwort.
2. Noun, Nennwort, or Hauptwort.	7. Preposition, Vorwort.
3. Adjective, Beiwort.	8. Conjunction, Bindewort.
4. Pronoun, Fürwort.	9. Interjection, Empfindungswort.
5. Verb, Zeitwort.	

§ II. *On the Article.*

There are two articles, viz. ein, *a* or *an*, and der, *the*; which are declined in three genders, masculine, feminine and neuter.

ARTICLES.

Ein, a, is thus declined.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ein,	eine,	ein, a.
G.	eines,	einer,	eines, of a.
D.	einem,	einer,	einem, to a.
A.	einen,	eine,	ein, a.

Ein has no plural.

* It is presumed that students are already acquainted with the parts of speech; they are the same in German as in English.

Der, the, is thus declined.

Singular.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	der,	die,	das, the.
G.	des,	der,	des, of the.
D.	dem,	der,	dem, to the.
A.	den,	die,	das, the.

Plural for all the Genders.

N. die, the.
G. der, of the.
D. den, to the.
A. die, the.*

CHAP. III.

NOUNS.

§ I. *On the noun,* (Nennwort).

DECLENSION.

The changes of termination in German nouns are all comprehended under five declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension generally end in el, er, en, lein, and make the genitive case singular in s, and the dative plural in n, without any other change of termination.†

Masculine.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. der Engel, the angel.	*N.* die Engel, the angels.
G. des Engels, of the angel.	*G.* der Engel, of the angels.
D. dem Engel, to the angel.	*D.* den Engeln, to the angels.
A. den Engel, the angel.	*A.* die Engel, the angels.

---

* The articles must agree with the nouns to which they are joined in gender, number and case. This is properly a rule belonging to syntax, but it may here be found of great utility.

† Those nouns which end in en, in the nominative, do not take another n, in the dative plural, Ex. Degen.

Masculine.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. der Degen, the sword.	*N.* die Degen, the swords.
G. des Degens, of the sword.	*G.* der Degen, of the swords.
D. dem Degen, to the sword.	*D.* den Degen, to the swords.
A. den Degen, the sword.	*A.* die Degen, the swords.

Neuter.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. das Meſſer, the knife.	*N.* die Meſſer, the knives.
G. des Meſſers, of the knife.	*G.* der Meſſer, of the knives.
D. dem Meſſer, to the knife.	*D.* den Meſſern, to the knives.
A. das Meſſer, the knife.	*A.* die Meſſer, the knives.

So decline.

Der Adler, the eagle.	das Becken, the bason.
das Alter, the age.	der Buſen, the bosom.
der Ballen, the bale.	der Himmel, the heaven.

Most nouns of this declension change the vowels a, o and u into ä or ae, ö or oe, ü or ue in the plural; as,

Mas.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. der Apfel, the apple.	*N.* die Aepfel, the apples.
G. des Apfels, of the apple.	*G.* der Aepfel, of the apples.
D. dem Apfel, to the apple.	*D.* den Aepfeln, to the apples.
A. den Apfel, the apple.	*A.* die Aepfel, the apples.

* Feminine.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. die Mutter, the mother.	*N.* die Mütter, the mothers.
G. der Mutter, of the mother.	*G.* der Mütter, of the mothers.
D. der Mutter, to the mother.	*D.* den Müttern, to the mothers
A. die Mutter, the mother.	*A.* die Mütter, the mothers.

So decline.

der Bogen, the bow.	die Tochter, the daughter.
der Bruder, the brother.	der Vater, the father.
der Faden, the thread.	der Vogel, the bird.

---

* Feminines in the German language never change their termination in the singular. (Example, Mutter.)

Practice on the first Declensio

Observe. The words marked (*) change t
u, in the plural, into the diphthongs ä, ö, ü.

Of the ditch,	*Graben, *m.* di
The brothers, (*Nom.*)	*Bruder, *m.* br
The hearing, (*Acc.*)	Hören, *n.* hea
To the birds,	*Vogel, *m.* bir
Of the seal,	Siegel, *n.* sea
To the mother,	*Mutter, *f.* mo
Of the father,	*Vater, *m.* fat
To the daughters,	*Tochter, *f.* dau
To the backs,	Rücken, *m.* ba
To the nails,	*Nagel, *m.* nai
Of the mantles,	*Mantel, *m.*

Observations on this Declensi

1. Nouns of this declension are all masculine, or neuter, ex
cept die Mutter, the mother; die Tochter, the dau
2. They generally end in el, er, en, lein; but
in el or er, belong to the third declension. *Vide*

(a) in (el,) as:

das Achtel, the eighth	der Hammel, the
der Apfel, the apple.	der Haspel, the
der Beutel, the purse.	der Himmel, (*th*
der Büffel, the buffalo.	der Hobel, the
das Ferkel, the pig.	der Mantel, the
der Flügel, the wing.	der Pudel, the
das Geflügel, the poultry.	der Schnabel, t
das Gemurmel, the murmur.	der Strudel, the
das Getümmel, the tumult.	der Tadel, (*the*)

(b) in (er,) as:

der Adler, the eagle.	der Gegner, the
das Alter, (*the*) age.	das Gelächter,
der Anker, the anchor.	das Gewitter,
der Becher, the goblet.	der Kaiser, the
der Donner, (*the*) thunder.	das Laster, (*the*)
das Fieber, the fever.	das Opfer, the
der Fehler, the fault.	der Sommer, (*the*)
der Finger, the finger.	der Zucker, sug

* (*The*) is omitted in English before some wo
general sense; but (*the*) is used before the same w
ticular sense.

(c) in (en,) as:

Balken, the beam,	der Graben, the ditch.
Busen, the bosom.	der Haken, the hook.
Degen, the sword.	der Knochen, the bone.
Eisen, the iron.	der Schatten, the shade.
Felsen, the rock.	das Verbrechen, the crime, &c.

Infinitives employed as substantives belong to this declension and are of the neuter gender; as,

Lesen, reading.	das Zeichen, drawing, &c.

Among these may be reckoned such as are compounded with

Bewußtseyn, consciousness.	das Wohlseyn, welfare, &c.

(d) Diminutives in chen, and lein, as;

Knäbchen, the little boy; from der Knabe, the boy.
Söhnchen, the little son; from der Sohn, the son.
Kindlein, the little child; from das Kind, the child.

These diminutives are much more frequent in German than in English, particularly in colloquial discourse; but in modern style, klein, little, is more used; as, der kleine Knabe, the little boy.

(e) Neuters and collectives in e; as,

Gebirge, the mountains.	das Gemüse, *(the)* vegetables.
Gedränge, the crowd.	das Getreide, *(the)* corn.
Gebäude, buildings.	das Gewerbe, *(the)* trade, &c.

Some neuters in a of foreign extraction form their plural in

Das Sofa, the sofa.	*N.* das Klima, the climate
G. Des Sofas, of the sofa.	*G.* des Klimas, of the climate.
Pl. Die Sofas, the sofas.	*Pl.* die Klimas, the climates.

The following words of this declension, change the vowels a, o, u, into ä, ö, ü, in the plural.

Der Acker, the field.	der Hammel, the wether.
Der Apfel, the apple.	das Kloster, the convent.
Der Boden, the ground.	das Lager, the camp.
Der Bogen, the arch.	der Mantel, the mantle.
Der Bruder, the brother	der Nagel, the nail.
Der Faden, the thread.	der Sattel, the saddle.
Der Garten, the garden.	der Schnabel, the bill, or beak.
Der Graben, the ditch.	der Vater, the father.
Der Hafen, the haven.	der Vogel, the bird, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION.

In the second declension the genitive singular ends in s, the dative in e, and has e in all the cases plural, except the dative, which takes en; as,

Masculine.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. der Baum, the tree.	*N.* die Bäume, the trees.
G. des Baumes, of the tree.	*G.* der Bäume, of the trees.
D. dem Baume, to the tree.	*D.* den Bäumen, to the trees.
A. den Baum, the tree.	*A.* die Bäume, the trees.

Neuter.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. das Kreutz, the cross.	*N.* die Kreutze, the crosses.
G. des Kreutzes, of the cross.	*G.* der Kreutze, of the crosses.
D. dem Kreutze, to the cross.	*D.* den Kreutzen, to the crosses.
A. das Kreutz, the cross.	*A.* die Kreutze, the crosses.

So decline.

der *Korb, the basket.	der *Kamm, the comb.
der König, the king.	der *Kopf, the head.
der *Rock, the coat.	der Oheim, the uncle.
der *Stock, the stick.	das Gerücht, the report.
der Tag, the day.	das Haar, the hair.
der Arm, the arm.	das Paar, the pair.*

Feminines, it should be remembered, do not change in the singular. (*Vide note p.* 8.); as,

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. die Wand, the wall.	*N.* die Wände, the walls.
G. der Wand, of the wall.	*G.* der Wände, of the walls.
D. der Wand, to the wall.	*D.* den Wänden, to the walls.
A. die Wand, the wall.	*A.* die Wände, the walls.

So decline the following feminines:

die *Stadt, the city.	die *Kuh, the cow.
die *Magd, the maid.	die *Kunst, the art.
die *Bank, the bench.	die *Gans, the goose.

Practice on the second Declension.

To the head,	*Kopf, *m.* head.
Of the horse,	Pferd, *n.* horse.
To the feet,	*Fuß, *m.* foot.
The frogs, (*N.*)	*Frosch, *m.* frog.
The hoofs, (*A.*)	Huf, *m.* hoof.
The nut, (*N.*)	*Nuß, *f.* nut.
The nut, (*A.*)	.....

Netz, *n.* net.
.....
*Knopf, *m.* button.
Maß, *n.* measure.
Pfund, *n.* pound.
*Paß, *m.* pass.
*Maus, *f.* mouse.
.....
.....

Observations on the second Declension.

The declension ends in almost all the letters of the alphabet and comprehends all nouns, which are not expressly brought under the other declensions. The principal endings are b, d, f, g, l, m, n, s, t, v, and z; as,

der Dieb, the thief.	der Kampf, the combat.
der Fleck, the blot.	der Kapaun, the capon.
der Freund, the friend.	der Keim, the sprig.
die Frucht, the fruit.	die Kraft, the power.
der Gebrauch, the custom.	der Kreis, the circle.
das Gemüse, the vegetables.	der Krieg, the war.
das Ungeziefer, the vermin.	die Laufbahn, the career.
der Hecht, the pike.	der Muff, the muff.
das Heu, the hare.	

The masculines of this declension change the vowels a, o and u into ä, ö and ü in the plural; as,

der Abt, the abbot.	der Pacht, the farm.
der Bart, the beard.	der Pflock, the plug.
der Bischof, the bishop.	der Pflug, the plough.
der Block, the block.	der Pfuhl, the pool.
der Bock, the buck.	der Sarg, the coffin.
der Brand, the fire.	der Schlag, the blow.
der Damm, the dam.	der Schluß, the conclusion.
der Diebstahl, the theft.	der Schooß, the lap.
der Duft, the exhalation.	der Schwan, the swan.
der Dunst, the vapour.	der Schlund, the gulf.
der Fall, the fall.	der Stab, the staff.
der Gesang, the song.	der Stamm, the trunk.
der Hahn, the cock.	der Storch, the stork.
der Kauf, the purchase.	der Sturm, the storm.
der Krug, the pitcher.	der Vorhang, the curtain.
der Lauf, the course.	der Wall, the rampart.
der Markt, the market.	der Wunsch, the wish.
der Mund, the mouth.	der Zaum, the bridle, &c.

So likewise the following foreign words:

der Altan, the balcony.
der Altar, the altar.
der Canal, the canal.
der Capellan, the chaplain.
der Cardinal, the cardinal.
der Chor, the choir.
der Fiscal, the exchequer.
der Magistrat, the magistrate.
der Marschall, the marshal.
der Pocal, the drinking cup.
der Propst, the provost.
das Tribunal, the tribunal, &c.

The following nouns do not change their vowels in the plural:

der Aal, the eel.
der Ahorn, the maple.
der Amboß, the anvil.
der Anwald, the attorney.
der Ballast, the ballast.
der Bau, the building.
der Dachs, the badger.
der Dolch, the dagger.
der Falz, the fold.
der Flachs, the flax.
der Gemahl, the spouse.
der Halm, the stubble.
der Harnisch, the harness.
der Hauch, the breath.
der Kalk, the lime.
der Lachs, the salmon.
der Lauch, the leek.
der Laut, the sound.
der Leichnam, the corpse.
der Luchs, the lynx.
der Mittag, the noon.
der Pfad, the path.
der Port, the port.
der Schuh, the shoe.
der Stoff, the stuff.
der Strauß, the ostrich.
der Trunkenbold, the drunkard.
der Zoll, the inch.
but der Zoll, the toll, in the plural Zölle.

3. All feminines change their vowels but none of the neuters, except:

Sing.	*Plural.*
das Arsenal, the arsenal.	die Arsenäle, the arsenals.
das Chor, the choir.	die Chöre, the choirs.
das Floß, the float or raft.	die Flöße, the floats or rafts.

THIRD DECLENSION.

In this declension all the cases of both numbers, end in en, except the nominative singular; but those ending in el, or er, take n instead of en, as:

Masculine.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. der Fürst, the prince.	*N.* die Fürsten, the princes.
G. des Fürsten, of the prince.	*G.* der Fürsten, of the princes.
D. dem Fürsten, to the prince.	*D.* den Fürsten, to the princes.
A. den Fürsten, the prince.	*A.* die Fürsten, the princes.

Masculine.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. der Knabe, the boy.	*N.* die Knaben, the boys.
G. des Knaben, of the boy.	*G.* der Knaben, of the boys.
D. dem Knaben, to the boy.	*D.* den Knaben, to the boys.
A. den Knaben, the boy.	*A.* die Knaben, the boys.

So decline.

der Soldat, the soldier.	der Neffe, the nephew.
der Komödiant, the player.	der Tirann, the tyrant.
der Student, the student.	der Held, the hero.
der Zeuge, the witness.	der Prinz, the prince.
der Affe, the monkey, or ape.	der Hase, the hare.

The feminines of this declension are unchangeable in the singular, as in the preceding declensions.

Feminine.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. die Freiheit, the liberty.	die Freiheiten, the liberties.
G. der Freiheit, of the liberty.	der Freiheiten, of the liberties.
D. der Freiheit, to the liberty.	den Freiheiten, to the liberties.
A. die Freiheit, the liberty.	die Freiheiten, the liberties.

So decline.

die Kirche, the church.	die Laſt, the burden.
die Gegend, the country.	die Kugel, the ball.
die Königinn, the queen.	die Zeit, the time.

Practice on the third Declension.

To the poet,	Poet, *m.* poet.
Of the heroes,	Held, *m.* hero.
The writings, (*N.*)	Schrift, *f.* writing.
The writing, (*A.*)	.....
To the ball,	Kugel, *f.* ball.
Of the master,	Herr, *m.* master.
To the count,	Graf, *m.* count.
The world,	Welt, *f.* world.
Of the tyrants,	Tirann, *m.* tyrant.
Of the burden,	Laſt, *f.* burden.
To the sister,	Schweſter, *f.* sister.
Of the men,	Menſch, *m.* man.
Of the intentions,	Abſicht, *f.* intention.
Of the prince,	Fürſt, *m.* prince.
To the princes,	.....
Of the churches,	Kirche, *f.* church.

Observations on the third Declension.

(a) Most masculines in e belong to this declension, as:

der Affe, the ape.
der Böhme, the Bohemian.
der Britte, the Briton.
der Zelte, the Celt.
der Erbe, the heir.
der Funke, the spark.
der Haſe, the hare.
der Junge, the boy or lad.
der Sclave, the slave.
der Zeuge, the witness, &c.

(b) The names of people according to their country, profession, character and the like, as:

der Advocat, the lawyer.
der Bayer, the Bavarian.
der Chriſt, the Christian.
der Franzoſe, the Frenchman.
der Geck, the fop.
der Geſell, the mate.
der Hageſtolz, the old bachelor.
der Iſraelit, the Israelite.
der Monarch, the monarch.
der Mohr, the Moor.
der Student, the student.
der Tartar, the Tartar.
der Thor, the fool, &c.

The feminines of this declension are

(a) Nouns ending in e, el, er, except die Mutter, and die Tochter, which are of the first declension, as:

die Ader, the vein.
die Ameiſe, the ant.
die Amſel, the blackbird.
die Bibel, the bible.
die Biene, the bee.
die Blume, the flower.
die Fabel, the fable.
die Gabel, the fork.
die Inſel, the island.
die Kammer, the chamber.
die Kugel, the ball.
die Leber, the liver.
die Leyer, the lyre.
die Mauer, the wall, &c.

(b) Nouns ending in heit, keit, ſchaft, ung, inn, and ei or ey, as:

die Beleidigung, the offence.
die Fiſcherei, the fishery.
die Freiheit, the freedom.
die Gutthäterinn, the benefactress.
die Herrlichkeit, the splendor.
die Herrſchaft, the lordship, &c.

(c) Nouns ending in ath, end, ſt, cht, ld, n, &c. as:

die Birn, the pear.
die Gegend, the country.
die Heirath, the marriage.
die Tugend, the virtue, &c.
die Laſt, the burden.
die Liſt, the artifice.
die Pflicht, the duty.

3. Nouns ending in e, el, er, take only n, as: der Bothe, *the messenger*; *(G.)* Bothen; *(Pl.)* Bothen; die Schulter, *the shoulder*; *(Pl.)* Schultern.

4. The following nouns take ens, or ns, instead of n in the genitive singular, but those ending in n, take s only.

der Karpfen, the carp.
der Nahme, the name.
der Same, the seed.
der Schade, the mischief.
der Schmerz, the pain.
der Wille, the will.

Making the genitive des Buchstabens, des Friedens, &c. All those words (except des Herz) originally had en in the nominative, and belonged to the first declension, in which way they may still be used; das Herz, *the heart*, being neuter, is the same in the accusative as the nominative, that is, das Herz, not Herzen. These nouns may likewise take n in the nominative, and fall under the first declension, as, der Frieden, der Funken, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive singular in es, or s, the dative in e, and all the cases in the plural in en, or n, as:

Neuter.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. das Ohr, the ear.	*N.* die Ohren, the ears.
G. des Ohres, of the ear.	*G.* der Ohren, of the ears.
D. dem Ohre, to the ear.	*D.* den Ohren, to the ears.
A. das Ohr, the ear.	*A.* die Ohren, the ears.

So decline.

das Bett, the bed.
der Daum, the thumb.
der Dorn, the thorn.
das Hemd, the shirt.
der Pfau, the peacock.
das Gliedmaß, the limb.

Practice on the fourth Declension.

Of the ear, Ohr, *n.* ear.
To the throne, Thron, *m.* throne.
To the peacock, Pfau, *m.* peacock.
The eyes, Auge, *n.* eye.
To the eye, ...
Of the neighbour, Nachbar, *m.* neighbour.
Of the state, Staat, *m.* state.
The ..... (N.) .....
The ..... (A.) .....
Of the bed, Bett, *n.* bed.
To the beds, ...
The beds, (A.) .....
To the bed, ...

Of the subject,	Unterthan, *m.* subject.
To the subjects,	.....
To the ornament,	Zierath, *m.* ornament.
To the ornaments,	.....
To the shirt,	Hemd, *n.* shirt.

Observations on the fourth Declension.

1. Of this declension are likewise, der Pſalm, *the psalm*; der Sporn, *the spur*; der Strahl, *the ray*; and some foreign words, as:

der Aſpect, the aspect.	der Impoſt, the impost.
der Affect, the passion.	das Inſect, the insect.
der Diamant, the diamond.	der Rubin, the ruby.
das Epigramm, the epigram.	der Ruin, the ruin, decay, &c.

2. Those nouns taking s in the genitive, having the dative unaltered, and taking n in the plural, are, der Bauer, *the peasant*; *(G.)* des Bauers, *(D.)* dem Bauer; *(Pl.)* die Bauern, so the following:

* das Auge, the eye.	der Pantoffel, the slipper.
das Ende, the end,	der Stachel, the sting.
der Gevatter, the godfather.	der Stiefel, the boot.
der Hader, the quarrel.	der Vetter, the cousin.

der Nachbar, the neighbour, and some foreign words, viz.:

der Barbar, the barbarian.	der Muſkel, the muscle.
der Doctor, the doctor.	der Satir, the satire.
der Paſtor, the pastor.	der Tartar, the Tartar, &c.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension takes es in the genitive, e in the dative singular, and er in all the cases of the plural, except the dative, which takes ern, as:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. der Leib, the body.	*N.* die Leiber, the bodies.
G. des Leibes, of the body.	*G.* der Leiber, of the bodies.
D. dem Leibe, to the body.	*D.* den Leibern, to the bodies.
A. den Leib, the body.	*A.* die Leiber, the bodies.

* Some neuters ending in e, are of this declension.

So decline.

der Geiſt, the spirit.	der *Mann, the man.
der *Ort, the place.	das *Land, the country.
das *Buch, the book.	das *Amt, the office.
das *Blatt, the leaf.	das Bild, the picture.

Practice on the fifth Declension.

To the houses,	Haus, *n.* house.
Of the woods,	Wald, *n.* wood.
The images, (*N.*)	Bild, *n.* image.
The villages, (*A.*)	Dorf, *n.* village.
The glasses, (*N.*)	Glas, *n.* glass.
To the glass,	.....
The monies,	Geld, *n.* money.
The hens,	Huhn, *n.* hen.
Of the houses,	Haus, *n.* house.
To the house,	.....
To the village,	Dorf, *n.* village.
The woods, (*A.*)	*Wald, *n.* wood or forest.
To the woods,	.....
To the books,	*Buch, *n.* book.
The books, (*A.*)	.....
The glass, (*A.*)	*Glas, *n.* glass.

Observations on the fifth Declension.

All nouns of this declension, having a, o, or u, in them, change those vowels into ä, ö, and ü, in the plural. This declension contains some few masculines, but mostly neuters. The masculines are:

der Geiſt, the spirit.	der Rand, the border.
der Gott, the God.	der Reichthum, the riches.
der Irrthum, the error.	der Vormund, the guardian.
der Leib, the body.	der Wald, the wood.
der Ort, the place.	der Wurm, the worm.
der Mann, the man.	

Obs. der Böſewicht, the villain, is also of the 2nd declension.

The neuters are:

das Aas, the carrion, (*pl.* die Aeſer.)	das Kalb, the calf.
das Amt, the office.	das Kind, *the child.*
das Bad, the bath.	das Kleid, *the coat.*
das Band, the ribbon.	das Korn, *the grain.*
das Bild, the picture.	das Kraut, *the herb.*
das Blatt, the leaf.	das Lamm, the lamb.

das Brett, the board.
das Buch, the book.
das Dach, the roof.
das Ding, the thing.
das Dorf, the village.
das Ey or Ei, the egg.
das Fach, the shelf.
das Faß, the barrel.
das Feld, the field.
das Geld, the money.
das Gemach, the apartment.
das Gemüth, the mind.
das Glas, the glass.
das Glied, the limb.
das Grab, the grave.
das Gras, the grass.
das Gut, the estate.
das Haupt, the head.
das Haus, the house.
das Holz, the wood.
das Horn, the horn.
das Huhn, the hen.
das Land, the country.
das Licht, the light.
das Lied, the song.
das Loch, the hole.
das Mahl, the meal.
das Maul, the mouth.
das Nest, the nest.
das Pfand, the pledge.
das Rad, the wheel.
das Reis, the rice.
das Rind, the cattle.
das Schloß, the castle.
das Schwert, the sword.
das Stift, the foundation.
das Stift, is also of the 2d declen.
das Thal, the valley.
das Trümmer, the wreck.
das Tuch, the cloth.
das Volk, the people.
das Wamms, the waistcoat.
das Weib, the woman.
das Wort, the word, and most foreign names, as, das Hospital, oder Spital, *the hospital*; das Parlament, *the parliament*; das Regiment, *the regiment*, &c.

2. The following nouns are of the fifth declension, when taken distributively, and of the second, when taken collectively, as:

Distributively.

das Band, the ribbon.	die Bänder, the ribbons.
der Dorn, the thorn.	die Dörner, the thorns.
das Horn, the horn.	die Hörner, the horns.
das Land, the country.	die Länder, the countries.
das Mahl, the meal.	die Mähler, the meals.
der Ort, the place.	die Oerter, the places.
das Tuch, the cloth.	die Tücher, the linens.
das Wort, the word.	die Wörter, the words.

Collectively.

die Bande, the bonds or fetters.
die Dorne, thorns.
die Horne, different sorts of horns.
die Lande, lands.
die Mahle, times.
die Orte, places.
die Tuche, cloths.
die Worte, words, and some few others.

§ II. *Declension of Proper Names.*

1. Proper names in general take ſ in the genitive, and en or n in the other cases, as:

Sing.	*Sing.*
N. Gottfried, Godfrey.	*N.* Hannibal, Hannibal.
G. Gottfrieds, of Godfrey.	*G.* Hannibals, of Hannibal.
D. Gottfrieden, to Godfrey.	*D.* Hannibaln, to Hannibal.
A. Gottfrieden, Godfrey.	*A.* Hannibaln, Hannibal.

To the latter mode of declining, belong all nouns ending in al, el, il, er, and or, except those which have the accent on the ending, as, Virgil, Valer, &c.

If ever a plural be required, the first class takes only e in all cases, as, (*N.*) Gottfriede, &c. the latter class takes only n in the dative, as, (*D.*) Hannibaln.

* 2. Proper names ending in ſ, ſch, e, a, ſt, x, and z, take ens, or ns, in the genitive, instead of ſ, and en or n, in the other cases, singular and plural; but if the word ends in a, it is dropped in the oblique cases. Examples:

Sing.	*Sing.*
N. Franz, Francis.	*N.* Minerva, Minerva.
G. Franzens, of Francis.	*G.* Minervens, of Minerva.
D. Franzen, to Francis.	*D.* Minerven, to Minerva.
A. Franzen, Francis.	*A.* Minerven, Minerva.

So decline, Leibnitz, Flora, Auguſt, Penelope, Helena, Jehova, &c.

3. Some proper names take simply ſ in the genitive singular, and e in the plural as before observed, as:

Sing.	*Sing.*
N. Böhmen, Bohemia.	*N.* Rom, Rome.
G. Böhmens, of Bohemia.	*G.* Roms, of Rome.
D. Böhmen, to Bohemia.	*D.* zu, in, nach Rom, at, in, or to Rome.
A. Böhmen, Bohemia.	*A.* Rom, Rome.

So decline Schweden, *Sweden*; Indien, *India*; London, &c. and all names of countries, cities, towns, villages, and the

* N.B.—It is the opinion of Adelung, that the English mode of declining proper names would be preferable, which is sometimes adopted. Ex. Jehova's, of Jehovah, instead of Jehovens, &c.

like, as well as most persons' names, &c. so Baumgarten, Abraham, Adam, Cicero, Cato, Xenophon, Josua, Noah, &c. but when proper names are declined with the article, they do not change their terminations.* Examples:

Masculines.

Sing.	*Sing.*
N. der Salomo, Solomon.	*N.* der Virgil, Virgil.
G. des Salomo, of Solomon.	*G.* des Virgil, of Virgil.
D. dem Salomo, to Solomon.	*D.* dem Virgil, to Virgil.
A. den Salomo, Solomon.	*A.* den Virgil, Virgil.

Feminine.

Sing.

N. die Flora, Flora.
G. der Flora, of Flora.
D. der Flora, to Flora.
A. die Flora, Flora.

Observations on the Declension of Proper Names.

1. Proper names may be declined three ways in German.

(a) By means of the article, without any change in the noun, as: die Weisheit des Salomo, *the wisdom of Solomon.* Vide the declension of der Salomo, &c.

(b) After the Latin manner, as: das Leiden Christi, *the sufferings of Christ*; die Geburt Maria, *the birth of (the virgin) Mary.*

(c) After the German manner, as: Ciceros Briefe, *Cicero's letters.*

2. Many Latin and Greek names drop their original endings in German, though not in English, as:

English.	*German.*	*English.*	*German.*
Augustus,	Auguſt.	Socrates,	Socrat.
Lycurgus,	Lycurg.	Diogenes,	Diogen.
Tibullus,	Tibull.	Hippocrates,	Hippocrat.
Epicurus,	Epicur.	Achilles,	Achill.
Democritus.	Democrit.	Propertius.	Properz.
Aristarchus,	Ariſtarch, &c		

But Dominicus, Erasmus, Irenius, Cornelius, Demetrius, Eugenius, Aristoteles, Alcibiades, Anchises and others, retain their endings in German, although not always in English; these words are mostly declined in the Latin form, which is best suited to the grave style. Modern names on the contrary, are commonly declined after the German manner.

* However this mode of declining is not so general as the preceding.

§ III. *Observations on the Plural of Nouns.*

1. There are many nouns which in German and English admit of but one number, having either no singular or no plural. Some of these are the same in both languages, others are different: but generally those nouns which are used only in the singular in English have the same restrictions in German, as:

das Gold, gold.	das Elfenbein, ivory.
das Silber, silver.	die Erde, earth.
das Eisen, iron.	der Staub, dust.
das Kupfer, copper.	das Holz, wood;

and most general and abstract nouns, as: der Ruhm, *glory*, das Vieh, *cattle*, &c.

Of some, the plural may be used to denote the different kinds, as: die Kupfer, *coppers*, die Erden, *earths*, &c.

2. The following words admit of the plural in English, but not in German, as:

der Dank, thanks.	der Tod, death.
der Rath, counsel.	das Ende, the end, or conclusion.
der Verstand, the understanding.	der Empfang, the receipt.
der Lohn, the reward.	der Mund, the mouth.
der Kummer, sorrow.	der Sand, sand.
der Jammer, affliction.	die Gunst, favour.
der Mord, murder.	die Liebe, *(the)* love.
der Zwang, constraint.	die Furcht, fear.
das Leben, life.	das Lob, praise.

The following may sometimes be used in the plural.

das Unglück, the misfortune.	der Anfang, the beginning.
der Zank, the quarrel.	der Unterricht, instruction.
die Flucht, the flight, escape.	der Genuß, the enjoyment, &c.

3. The following words have no singular.

die Gefälle, the taxes.	die Weihnachten, Christmas.
die Einkünfte, the revenue.	die Ostern, Easter.
die Aeltern, the parents.	die Pfingsten, Whitsuntide.
die Leute, the people.	die Gebrüder, the brothers, &c.
die Waffen, the arms.	

4. Those words which express quantity, weight or measure, are seldom used in the plural, even though a numeral adjective precede them, as:

---

* If the plural be required it must be supplied by another word, as; der Dank, Pl. die Danksagungen, from die Danksagung; der Rath, the counsel, Pl. die Rathsversammlungen, from die Rathsversammlung, &c.

zehn Acker, (*not* Aecker) Land, ten acres of land.
vier Buch (*not* Bücher) Papier, four quires of paper.
hundert Fuß (*not* Füße) hoch, a hundred feet high.
zwanzig Dutzend Wein, twenty dozens of wine.
vier Pfund Zucker, four pounds of sugar, &c.

The following are exceptions to this rule:

drei paar Schuhe, three pair of shoes.
ein paar Tage, a few days, &c.,—So
die Elle, the ell; die Meile, the mile, and some few others which must be learnt by practice.

Promiscuous Practice on all the preceding Declensions,

With the German words in alphabetical order, serving not only as a useful vocabulary, but possessing the advantage of having the gender and declension marked, the former by the letters, *m. f. n.* and the latter by the numbers 1, 2 3, 4, 5.

Of the eels,	Aal, *m.* 2. eel.
To the carrion,	*Aas, *n.* 5. carrion.
The evening,	Abend, *m.* 2. evening.
To the abbots,	*Abt, *m.* 2. abbot.
Of the field or acre,	*Acker, *m.* 1. field or acre.
Of the fields,	.....
The shoulders,	Achsel, *f.* 3. shoulder.
Of the nobility,	Adel, *m.* 1. nobility.
To the ape,	Affe, *m.* 3. ape.
To the apes,	.....
Of the altars,	*Altar, *m.* 2. altar.
To the age,	Alter, *m.* 1. age.
Of the antiquities,	*Alterthum, *n.* 5. antiquity.
To the blackbirds,	Amsel, *f.* 3. blackbird.
The offices, (*A.*)	*Amt, *n.* 5. office.
The ants, (*A.*)	Ameise, *f.* 3. ant.
The nurses, (*A.*)	Amme, *f.* 3. nurse.
Of the devotion,	Andacht, *f.* 3. devotion.
The preparations	Anstalt, *f.* 3. preparation.
To the replies,	Antwort, *f.* 3. reply.
Of the labors,	Arbeit, *f.* 3. labor.
To the eyes,	Auge, *n.* 4. eye.
Of the oyster,	Auster, *f.* 3. oyster.
The brooks,	*Bach, *m.* 2. brook.
The path,	Bahn, *f.* 3. path.

Of the ball,	*Ball, *m.* 2. ball.
To the ribbons,	*Band, *n.* 5. ribbon.
To the ideas,	Begriff, *m.* 2. idea.
Of the mountains,	Berg, *m.* 2. mountain.
To the bed,	Bett, *n.* 4. bed.
To the beds,	.....
Of the proofs,	Beweis, *m.* 2. proof.
To the pictures,	Bild, *n.* 5. picture.
Of the pears,	Birn, *f.* 3. pear.
Of the flowers,	Blume, *f.* 3. flower.
To the letters,	Brief, *m.* 2. letter.
The breasts,	Bruſt, *f.* 2. breast.
To the books,	*Buch, *n.* 5. book.
The books,	.....
To the canals,	*Canal, *m.* 2. canal.
To the cardinals,	*Cardinal, *m.* 2. cardinal.
To the roofs,	*Dach, *n.* 5. roof.
Of the badgers,	*Dachs, *m.* 2. badger.
The dikes,	*Damm, *m.* 2. dike.
To the thumbs,	Daumen, *m.* 1. thumb.
Of the swords,	Degen, *m.* 1. sword.
To the poets,	Dichter, *m.* 1. poet.
To the villages,	*Dorf, *n.* 5. village.
To the heirs,	Erbe, *m.* 3. heir.
The eggs, (*N.* and *A.*)	Ey, *n.* 5. egg.
To the fables,	Fabel, *f.* 3. fable.
Of the threads,	*Faden, *m.* 1. thread.
Of the barrels,	*Faß, *n.* 5. barrel.
To the fists,	*Fauſt, *f.* 2. fist.
Of the enemies,	Feind, *m.* 2. enemy.
To the fields,	Feld, *n.* 5. field.
Of the rocks,	Fels, *m.* 3. rock.
To the fetters,	Feſſel, *f.* 3. fetter.
To the fleas,	*Floh, *m.* 2. flea.
Of the plains,	Flur, *f.* 3. plain.
To the rivers,	*Fluß, *m.* 2. river.
The wives,	Frau, *f.* 3. wife.
To the feet,	*Fuß, *m.* 2. foot.
The forks,	Gabel, *f.* 3. fork.
The geese,	*Gans, *f.* 2. goose.
To the guest,	*Gaſt, *m.* 2. guest.
The prayers,	Gebet, *n.* 2. prayer.

Of the dangers,	Gefahr, *f.* 3. danger.
The countries,	Gegend, *f.* 3. country.
The spirits,	Geiſt, *m.* 5. spirit.
Of the money,	Geld, *n.* 5. money.
The ghosts,	Geſpenſt, *n.* 5. ghost.
To the conversation.	Geſpräch, *n.* 2. conversation.
To the limbs.	Glied, *n.* 5. limb.
The Gods (*N.* and *A.*)	*Gott, *m.* 5. God.
The graves,	*Grab, *n.* 5. grave.
Of the count,	Graf, *m.* 3. count.
The property,	*Gut, *n.* 5. property.
The cock,	*Hahn, *m.* 2. cock.
Of the hands,	*Hand, *f.* 2. hand.
The towels,	*Handtuch, *n.* 5. towel.
Of the skins,	*Haut, *f.* 2. skin.
Of the heroes,	Held, *m.* 3. hero.
Of the master,	Herr, *m.* 3. master.
To the wood,	*Holz, *n.* 5. wood.
To the fowl,	*Huhn, *n.* 5. fowl.
Of the hats,	*Hut, *m.* 2. hat.
To the year,	Jahr, *n.* 2, year.
Of the islands,	Inſel, *f.* 3. island.
Of the Jew,	Jude, *m.* 3. Jew.
Of the boy,	Junge, *m.* 3. boy.
To the calves,	*Kalb, *n.* 5. calf.
To the children,	Kind, *n.* 5. child.
Of the churches,	Kirche, *f.* 3. church.
To the coats,	Kleid, *n.* 5. coat.
The cloisters,	*Kloſter, *n.* 1. cloister.
Of the buttons,	*Knopf, *m.* 2. button.
To the heads,	*Kopf, *m.* 2. head.
Of the salmon,	Lachs, *m.* 2. salmon.
To the countries,	*Land, *n.* 5. country.
Of the burdens,	Laſt, *f.* 3. burden.
To the holes,	*Loch, *n.* 5. hole.
Of the maids,	*Magd, *f.* 2. maid.
To the almonds,	Mandel, *f.* 3. almond.
Of the mice,	*Maus, *f.* 2. mouse.
Of the mothers,	*Mutter, *f.* 1. mother.
To the nightingales,	Nachtigall, *f.* 3. nightingale.
Of the fools,	Narr, *m.* 3. fool.
The nuts. (*A.*)	*Nuß, *f.* 2. nut.

Of the places,	*Ort, *m.* 5. place.
To the popes,	*Papſt, *m.* 2. pope.
Of the path,	Pfad, *m.* 2. path.
The plants,	Pflanze, *f.* 3. plant.
Of the jaw,	Rachen, *m.* 1. jaw.
The borders,	*Rand, *m.* 5. border.
Of the ranks,	*Rang, *m.* 2. rank.
The spaces, (*A.*)	*Raum, *m.* 2. space.
The riches, (*N.*)	*Reichthum, *m.* 5. riches.
To the judge,	Richter, *m.* 1. judge.
To the juices,	*Saft, *m.* 2. juice.
The troop,	Schaar, *f.* 3. troop.
Of the shadow,	Schatten, *m.* 1. shadow.
The treasures,	*Schatz, *m.* 2. treasure.
To the ships,	Schiff, *n.* 2. ship.
The shields,	Schild, *n.* 5. shield.
To the serpents,	Schlange, *f.* 3. serpent.
The castles,	*Schloß, *n.* 5. castle.
The debts,	Schuld, *f.* 3. debt.
The swallows,	Schwalbe, *f.* 3. swallow.
Of the soldier,	Soldat, *m.* 3. soldier.
Of the looking-glass,	Spiegel, *m.* 1 looking-glass.
The storks,	*Storch, *m.* 2. stork.
The stockings,	*Strumpf, *m.* 2. stocking.
Of the actions,	That, *f.* 3. action,
To the daughters,	*Tochter, *f.* 1. daughter.
To the dreams,	*Traum, *m.* 2. dream.
The cloths,	*Tuch, *n.* 3. cloth.
Of the virtues,	Tugend, *f.* 3. virtue.
The nations,	*Volk, *n.* 5. nation.
Of the watches,	Uhr, *f.* 3. watch.
To the woods,	*Wald, *m.* 5. wood or forest.
Of the walls,	*Wand, *f.* 2. wall.
Of the women,	Weib, *n.* 5. woman.
Of the worlds,	Welt, *f.* 3. world.
Of the wind,	Wind, *m.* 2. wind.
The wishes,	*Wunſch, *m.* 2. wish.
The worms,	*Wurm, *m.* 2. 5. worm.
Of the numbers,	Zahl, *f.* 3. number.
To the tooth,	*Zahn, *m.* 2. tooth.
To the times,	Zeit, *f.* 3. time.
To the tents,	Zelt, *n.* 2. tent.

Of the circle,	Zirkel, *m.* 1. circle.
The tolls,	*Zoll, *m.* 2. toll.
The aims,	Zweck, *m.* 2. aim.
The onions,	Zwiebel, *f.* 3. onion.

§ IV. *Observations on the Formation of Nouns.*

Many German nouns are derived from other words by the help of certain syllables called affixes, which it is of importance for a learner to know, in order to be able to understand the rules for the gender and declension. The following are the principal endings.

1. chen and lein, are syllables by which diminutives are formed, as: das Söhnchen, *the little son*, from der Sohn, *the son*; das Männchen, *the little man*, from der Mann, *the man*; das Kindlein, *the babe*, from das Kind, *the child*.

2. er denotes persons of the male sex, as: der Bettler, *the beggar* from betteln, *to beg*; der Gärtner, *the gardener*, from der Garten, *the garden*.

3. inn or in denotes persons of the female sex, as: die Fürstinn, *the princess*, from der Fürst, *the prince*; die Königin, *the queen*, from der König, *the king*.

4. e, heit, keit, schaft, thum, denote abstract qualities, as: die Größe, *the greatness*, from groß, *great*; die Kindheit, *the childhood*, from das Kind, *the child*; die Dankbarkeit, *the thankfulness*, from dankbar, *thankful*; die Bekanntschaft, *the acquaintance*, from bekannt, *known*; das Alterthum, *antiquity*, from alt, *old*.

§ V. *General Observations on the Declension of Nouns.*

The German nouns have caused much perplexity to Grammarians in the arrangement of the declensions, owing to the terminations being so singularly varied, that those nouns which agree in the singular, differ in the plural, and consequently admit of different classifications. Adelung and several other German Grammarians have made eight declensions, others have made four, five, &c, and some only one declension. The number five which I have adopted, is probably best adapted for practice. The learner may however be benefitted by a careful perusal of the following observations.

1. The declension of nouns is determined by the ending of the genitive singular and nominative plural: the former being principally in s, or es; n, or en, the latter either unchangeable or taking e, n, en or er.

2. The genitive singular of four declensions out of the five

in in e or es; and those which have es take e in the dative. The third declension takes en or n in all cases except the nominative singular.

3. All feminines are unchangeable in the singular and are of the second and third declensions.

4. The principal part of the nouns, of all genders, falls under the second and third declensions particularly the second.

5. Some nouns differ in their declension according to their signification, as:

Sing.	*Plural.*
der Band, the volume or binding.	die Bände, the volumes.
das Band, the ribbon.	die Bänder, the ribbons.
das Band, the band, fetter.	die Bande, the bands, fetters.
die Bank, the bench.	die Bänke, the benches.
die Bank, the bank.	die Banken, the banks.
der Bär, the bear.	die Bären, the bears.
der Bär, the bar or dam.	die Bäre, the bars or dams.
der Bauer, the peasant.	die Bauern, the peasants.
das Bauer, the cage.	die Bauer, the cages.
der Bogen, the sheet of paper.	die Bogen, the sheets of paper.
der Bogen, the bow.	die Bögen, the bows.
das Gesicht, the vision.	die Gesichte, the visions.
das Gesicht, the face.	die Gesichter, the faces.
der Laden, the shutter.	die Laden, the shutters.
der Laden, the shop.	die Läden, the shops.
der Mensch, man.	die Menschen, men.
das Mensch, the wench.	die Menscher, the wenches.
der Schild, the shield.	die Schilde, the shields.
das Schild, the sign.	die Schilder, the signs.
der Strauß, the ostrich.	die Straußen the ostriches.
der Strauß, the nosegay.	die Sträuße, the nosegays.
der Thor, the fool.	die Thoren, the fools.
das Thor, the gate.	die Thore, the gates.

§ VI. *Observations on the Gender of Nouns.*

The genders of nouns in German are masculine, feminine or neuter.

As a general remark it may be observed, that those nouns which express strength, vigour, energy or activity, are masculine.

If they express what is soft, agreeable, pleasant or tender, they are feminine.

If they do not express any of these things, they are neuter. But neither this general rule, nor any other rules, will be suf-

ficient to distinguish the gender of nouns; yet it may not be improper to make a few remarks on this subject.

1. Of the masculine gender are

a. All proper names of male persons, gods, angels, and spirits, as well as all names expressing any office, dignity, quality, station, or implements used by mechanics, &c, as:

der Löwe, the lion,	a male animal.
der Vater, the father,	a male person.
der König, the king,	the office of a male.
der Bürger, the citizen,	a male relation.
der Mahler, the painter,	the employment of a male.
der Hammer, the hammer,	an instrument for males.
der Raub, (*the*) robbery,	a quality denoting strength.
der Grimm, (*the*) wrath,	a quality denoting strength.
der Knabe, the boy,	a male relation.

Except*

das Messer, the knife,	das Ruder, the oar,

die Leiter, the ladder, &c.

And all diminutives, as: das Söhnchen, the little son; das Männchen, the little man, &c.

b. The names of stones, winds, trees, mountains, fishes, birds,* seasons,† months, days, &c. as:

der Diamant, the diamond.	der Regen, the rain.
der Ost, the east.	der May or Mai, May.
der Ostwind, the eastwind.	der Lachs, the salmon.
der Sommer, the summer.	der Baum, the tree.
der Sonntag, the sunday.	

c. Most nouns ending in en, as:

der Boden, the bottom.	der Magen, the stomach.
der Hafen, the harbour.	der Degen, the sword.

Except all infinitives when used as nouns, which are neuter, as: das Lesen, the reading, das Sehen, the seeing, &c. with some few other nouns, as:

das Almosen, the alms.	das Küssen, the cushion.
das Becken, the bason.	das Lehen, the fee.
das Eisen, the iron.	das Wappen, the coat of arms.
das Füllen, the foal.	das Zeichen, the sign or signal.

* Except die Wachtel, the quail, die Amsel, the blackbird, die Elster, the magpie.

† Das Jahr, the year.

2. Of the feminine gender are:

a. The names of female persons, and female animals, as well as names expressing the dignities, relations, qualities, functions, and implements of art peculiar to the female sex, as;

die Dichterinn, the poetess,	a female poet.
die Frau, the wife,	a female relation.
die Kaiserinn, the empress,	a female's dignity.
die Mutter, the mother,	a female relation.
die Nadel, the needle,	a female's implement of art.
die Sau, the sow,	a female animal.

Except

Frauenzimmer, the lady.	das Weib, the woman.
das Mensch, the wench.	das Weibsbild, the female person.
das Mädchen, the girl.	

b. The names of rivers are feminine, as:

die Oder, the Oder.	die Elbe, the Elbe, &c.

Except

der Rhein, the Rhine.	der Nil, the Nile.
der Mayn, the Maine.	der Jordan, the Jordan.
der Lech, the Lech.	der Euphrat, the Euphrates.
der Necker, the Necker.	der Po, the Po.

c. The names of flowers, fruits, vegetables, &c. as:

die Nuß, the nut.	die Eichel, the acorn.
die Pflaume, the plum.	die Nelke, the gillyflower.
die Birn, the pear.	die Rose, the rose.

Except

der Apfel, the apple.	der Salat, the sallad.
das Kraut, the herb.	der Kohl, the cabbage.
der Rettich, the raddish.	der Spinat, the spinage.

3. Of the Neuter gender are:

a. The names of countries, towns, and villages, as: England London, Kingsland, &c.

Except

die Turkey (or Turkei,) Turkey.
die Wallachey (or Wallachei,) Wallachia.
die Barbarey (or Barbarei,) Barbary.

And other names of places ending in ey or ei as well, as:

die Schweitz, Switzerland.
die Sachsenburg, Saxonburgh.

b. The names of metals, as: das Gold, gold; das Eisen, iron

Except

der Stahl, steel; der Tomback, pinchbeck, der Zink, zink.

c. The names of young animals and diminutive objects, as: das Lamm, the lamb, das Kalb, the calf, das Männchen, the little man, &c.

d. Most collectives, as: das Wild, game; das Heer, the army, das Volk, the people, &c.

e. Most words beginning with ge or ending with thum, as: das Geäder, the veins, das Alterthum, the antiquity, &c.

f. * All infinitives used as substantives, as: das Essen, the eating, das Trinken, the drinking, &c.

g. The letters of the alphabet, as: das A, das B, &c.

Some nouns vary their gender according to their signification, as:

der Band, the volume.
das Band, the ribbon.
der Bauer, the peasant.
das Bauer, the cage.
der Buckel, the hump, back.
die Buckel, the stud, curl.
der Bund, the alliance.
das Bund, the bundle.
der Erbe, the heir.
das Erbe, the inheritance.
der Geißel, the hostage.
die Geißel, the scourge.
der Geschoß, the tax.
das Geschoß, missile.
die Gift, the gift.
das Gift, poison.
der Heide, the heathen.
die Heide, the heath.
der Leiter, the guide.
die Leiter, the ladder.
der Kiefer, the jaw.
die Kiefer, the pine.
die Mandel, the almond.
das Mandel, the number fifteen.
die Mark, the mark, boundary.
das Mark, the marrow.
der Mast, the mast of a ship.
die Mast, the fruit of wild trees as oak, beach, &c.
der Mensch, man.
das Mensch, the wench.
der Messer, the measurer.
das Messer, the knife.
der Mohr, the Moor, (a person.)
das Mohr or Moor, the moor.
der Muth, the courage.
das Muth, the hogshead.
der Reis, the rice.
das Reis, the twig.
der See, the lake.
die See, the sea.
der Stift, a tag.
das Stift, a charitable foundation.
der Thor, the fool.
das Thor, the gate.

* All infinitives in German can be used as substantives.

An Alphabetical Index of most Endings of Nouns, to determine thereby their Genders.

Obs. Though there may be some exceptions to these endings, they are but few.

Masculine.			*Feminine.*		*Neuter.*
ahl.	el.	opf.	acht.	niß.	ach.
ahn.	elm.	ord.	aft.	ucht.	ad.
all.	en.	orn.	ahrt.	ücke.	at.
alm.	er.	ort.	angſt.	uft.	ech.
am.	ich.	oſt.	art,	uld.	eil.
and.	icht.	oß.	at.	uhr.	et.
ang.	ick.	uch.	auſt.	unft.	ier.
ank.	ieb.	uck.	e.	ung.	ir,
anr.	ieg.	ug.	ei.	unſt.	ment.
arm.	ing.	umpf.	eit.	ur.	och.
au.	iſch.	und.	enz.	uſt.	ohr.
auch.	itz.	unk.	ey.	ut.	or.
aum.	ock.	uß.	gend.	uth,	os.
eck.	of.	utz.	ie.		oß.
eig.	ohn.		iſt.		ot.
eim.	olch.		ik.		oth.
eis.	oll.		ion.		thum.
eiß.	on.		iſt.		ück.

The following Table exhibits at one view the endings of Nouns of every Declension in all the Cases, except the Nominative Singular.

Singular.

	1*st. Dec.*	2*d. Dec.*	3*d. Dec.*	4*th. Dec.*	5*th. Dec.*
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	s.	es.	en, *or* n. ens, *or* ns.	es, *or* s.	es.
Dat.	—	e.	en, *or* n.	e.	e.
Acc.	—	—	en, *or* n.	—	—

Plural.

Nom.	—	e.	en, *or* n.	en, *or* n.	er.
Gen.	—	e.	en, *or* n.	en, *or* n.	er.
Dat.	n.	en.	en, *or* n.	en, *or* n.	ern.
Acc.	—	e.	en, *or* n.	en, *or* n.	er.

As it may sometimes be difficult for learners to ascertain by rules and observations, the genders of nouns, and the declensions to which they belong, the following table is added; in which most endings of nouns are alphabetically arranged, by which means the genders and declensions may generally be known.*

In this table it is necessary to observe that the mark, (&c.) is used to point out that most nouns belong to that gender and declension under which it is placed: the exceptions under each gender are distinguished by the omission of this mark, and by the English being printed in Italics.

The numbers 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. point out the declension; and the letters es or s; en or n, denote the endings of the genitive singular, and e or er; en or n the nominative plural.

Obs. Feminines have only the termination of the nominative plural, on account of their having no change in the singular.

The following example will serve to illustrate the rules and show the utility of the table. For instance, if a noun end in *b*, by referring to the table it will be seen that the &c. is under the masculines, consequently most nouns ending in b will be of the masculine gender, second declension, having the genitive singular in es, and nominative plural in e, the exceptions are neuters, and the English is printed in Italics with no &c. under them.

NOUNS IN

Masculines.	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
b. (es, e. 2. Dec.)		(es, er. 5 Dec.)
der Dieb, the thief.		das Grab, *the grave.*
der Hieb, the stroke.		das Kalb, *the calf.*
der Korb, the basket.		das Weib, *the woman.*
&c.		
(es, er. 5.)		
der Leib, *the body.*		

* There would have been but little difficulty, in ascertaining to which declension nouns belong, provided the writers of German Dictionaries, in this country, had followed the plan adopted by Professor Adelung and other German Lexicographers, who have given the terminations of the genitive singular, and nominative plural, where any change of termination is required, in order to show to what declension nouns belong; if this practice be necessary in Germany, surely it is more requisite in other countries.

NOUNS IN-

	Masculines.	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
d.	(* es, e, 2. Dec.) der Freund, the friend. der Hund, the dog. der Sand, the sand. &c.	(e, 2. Dec.) die Hand, *the hand.* die Magd, *the servant.* die Wand, *the wall.* and some few others.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Pferd, *the horse.* das Pfund, *the pound.*
	(en, en, 3. Dec.) der Held, *the hero.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Geduld, *patience.* die Jagd, *the chace.*	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Bad, the bath. das Bild, the image. das Geld, the money. das Glied, the limb. das Land, the land. das Lied, the song. das Rad, the wheel. &c.

* For further particulars, vide the observations on the second declension.

end.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Abend, *the evening.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Tugend, the virtue die Gegend, the region &c.	(es, en. 4. Dec.) das End, *the piece cut off, the end.*
e.	(en, en. 3. Dec.) der Affe, the ape. der Friede, the peace. der Name, the name. der Wille, the will. &c.	(n. 3. Dec.) die Ameise, *the ant.* die Historie, *the history.* and all other feminines in e.	(es, en. 4. Dec.) das Auge, *the eye and some others, particularly collectives.* vide obs. page 10.
f, pf.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Brief, the letter. der Knopf, the button. &c.		(es, e. 4. Dec.) das Schaf, *the sheep.*
ß.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Honig, the honey. der König, the king. &c.		
ung.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Sprung, *the leap.* der Schwung, *the swing.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Zeitung, the news. &c.	

NOUNS IN

Masculines.	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
h. (es. e. 2. Dec.) der Floh, the flea. &c.	(e. 2, Dec.) die Kuh, the cow. &c.	(es. e. 2. Dec.) das Stroh, *the straw.* das Reh, *the doe.* das Vieh, *the beast.*
ch, chs, (es, e 2. Dec.) der Dachs, the badger. der Hauch, the breath. der Luchs, the lynx. &c.		(es, e, 2. Dec.) das Gemach, the room. das Reich, the empire. das Wachs, the wax. &c. (es, er, 5. Dec.) das Buch, *the book.* das Dach, *the roof.* das Loch, *the hole.* das Pech, *the pitch.* das Tuch, *the cloth.*
sch. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Fisch, the fish. &c.		
arch. (en, en, 3. Dec.) der Monarch, the monarch. &c.		
ath. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Rath, *the counsel.* (es, en, 4. Dec.) der Zierath, *the ornament.*	(en. 3, Dec.) die Heirath, the marriage. &c.	
oth, uth.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Noth, the want. die Demuth, humility. &c.	
rth. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Werth, the value. &c.		

NOUNS IN	*Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
ph	(en, en. 3. Dec.) der Philoſoph, the philosopher. &c. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Triumph, *the triumph.*		
k, ck.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Rock, the coat. &c.		(es, e, & er. 2. & 5. D.) das Werk, *the work.* das Volk, *the people.*
ack, ick, uck, ik.	(en, en. 3. Dec.) der Katholik, *the catholic.* (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Blick, *the look.* der Druck, *the pressure.* der Sack, *the bag.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Fabrik, the fabric, and a few others.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Glück, *the luck.* (Glück has no plural.) das Stück, *the part or piece.*
al, all.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Canal, the canal. der Ball, the ball. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Nachtigall, *the nightingale.* die Qual, the torment.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Arſenal, the arsenal. &c. (es, er. 5. Dec.) das Spital, *the hospital.* Thal, *the valley.*

NOUNS IN	*Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
el.	(1) Vide first Dec. der Hammel, *the wether.* &c.*	(en, 3. Dec.) die Achsel, *the shoulder.* &c.	(1) das Achtel, *the eighth.* &c.
	(es, en, 4. Dec.) der Pantoffel, *the slipper.* der Stachel, *the sting.* der Stiefel, *the boot.*		
iel.	(es, e, 2. Dec.) der Federkiel, *the quill.* &c.		(es, e, & er, 2. & 5. D.) das Ziel, *end, aim, term.*
ell.			(es, e, 2. Dec.) das Castell, *the castle.* das Duell, *the duel.* das Fell, *the skin.* &c.
ill, oll.	(es, e, 2. Dec.) der Zoll, *the inch.* &c.		
hl.	(es, e, 2. Dec.) der Pfahl, *the post.* der Stahl, *the steel.* &c.	(en, 3. Dec.) die Zahl, *the number.* die Wahl, *the choice.*	(es, er, 5. Dec.) das Mahl, *the repast, or the meal.*
	(es, en, 4. Dec.) der Strahl, *the ray.*		

* Where &c. is put under each column, the table, in such instances, is of very little use, and the only remedy in such cases, would be to refer to a Dictionary, similar to Adelung's, in which, the genders and declensions are marked.

It is the author's intention to publish (at some future period) a list of all the simple nouns in the German language, with their genders and declensions marked.

NOUNS IN	*Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
eil.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Pfeil, the arrow. der Theil, the part. der Keil, the wedge. &c.		(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Beil, *the axe.*
m.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Baum, the tree. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Form, *the shape.*	
	(es, en. 4. Dec.) der Halm, the straw, (*a single piece of straw.*) der Psalm, the psalm. &c.		
	(1) der Athem, the breath.		
n.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Sohn, the son. &c.		(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Gehirn, *the brain.*
	(es, en, & e. 4. Dec.) der Dorn, *the thorn.* der Sporn, *the spur.*		(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Horn, *the horn.* das Huhn, *the fowl.* das Korn, *the corn.*
an, ann.	(es, e. 2. D.) der Castellan, the keeper of a castle. &c.		
	(es, en. 4. Dec.) der Unterthan, *the subject.*		
	(en, en. 3. Dec.) der Tirann, *the tyrant.*		

NOUNS IN	*Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
en.	(1.) der Boden, the ground. &c.		(1.) das Leben, the life. &c.
on, ion.	(es, en, 4. D.) der Patron, *the patron.* (es, e, 2. Dec.) der Scorpion, *the scorpion.* der Spion, *the spy.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Nation, the nation. die Person, the person. die Religion, the religion. &c.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Bataillon, *the battalion.*
in, inn.	(es, e. 2. D.) der Rubin, the ruby. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Doctorin, the doctess. die Dichterin, the poetess, (and all feminines in inn or in.)	(es, e. 2. Dec. das Bein, *the leg.*
ar.	(es, e, 2. Dec.) der Altar, the altar. &c. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Scholar, the scholar. (es, en. 4. Dec.) der Husar, the hussar. der Nachbar, the neighbour. der Tartar, the tartar. der Ungar, the Hungarian, and most names of countries ending in ar.		(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Formular, *the set form.* das Haar, *the hair.* das Paar, *the pair.*

* Modern writers generally use only in, instead of inn, at the end of feminine nouns.

NOUNS IN *Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
er. (1.) der Vater, the father. &c. (s, n. 4. Dec.) der Bauer, the peasant, (and some names of persons.)	(n. 3. Dec.) die Schweſter, the sister. &c.	(1.) das Laſter, *the vice.* das Wunder, *the miracle.* das Zimmer, *the room.*
hr. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Mohr, the negro. der Vorfahr, the predecessor. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Uhr, the watch, &c.	(es, en. 4. Dec.) das Ohr, the ear. &c. (es, e. 2. Dec.) das Rohr, the reed. &c.
ier.		(es, e, 2. Dec.) das Bier, the beer. das Brevier, breviary, *or abridgement.* das Papier, the paper. das Thier, the animal.
or. (es, en. 4. Dec.) der Profeſſor, the professor. &c. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Caſtor, the castor. der Auditor, the auditor. &c.		(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Thor, *the gate.*
rr. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Herr, the master. der Narr, the fool. &c.		

NOUNS IN *Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
ur. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Schwur, *the swearing.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Spur, the track. &c.	
s. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Fels, *the rock.* (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Krebs, *the crab.* der Hals, *the neck.*	(e, 2. Dec.) die Gans, *the goose.*	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Glas, the glass. das Gras, the grass. &c.
ß, us. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Fuß, the foot. der Vielfraß, the glutton. &c.	(e. 2. Dec.) die Fäulniß, the corruption. die Nuß, the nut. die Maus, the mouse. &c.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Faß, the cask. das Haus, the house. &c. (es, e. 2. Dec.) das Befugniß, *the right.*
t. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Punkt, the point. &c.		(es, er, 5. Dec.) das Amt, the office. das Haupt, the head. das Zelt, the tent, and some others.
at, et, ut. (es, e. 2. D.) der Legat, *the legate.* der Tribut, *the tribute.* der Magnet, *the magnet.* (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Advocat, the lawyer. der Potentat, the potentate, and other names of rank.	(e. 2. Dec.) die Haut, *the skin.* die Braut, *the bride.* (en. 3. Dec.) die That, *the deed.*	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Mandat, the mandate. das Statut, the statute. &c. (es, er. 5. Dec.) das Blatt, the leaf. das Brett, the board. das Gut, the good. das Gebet, the prayer. das Kraut, the herb.

NOUNS IN	*Masculines.*	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
tät.		(en. 3. Dec.) die Qualität, the quality. &c.	
ft.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Duft, *the vapour.* der Saft, *the sap.* der Schaft, *the shaft.*	(e. 2. Dec.) die Kraft, the strength. die Luft, the air. die Vernunft, the sense. die Zunft, the corporation.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Stift, *the institution or foundation.*
	(es, er. 5. Dec.) der Stift, *the peg, or tag.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Freundschaft, the friendship. &c.	
ant, ent.	(en, en. 3. D) der Adjutant, the adjutant. &c.		
	(es, en. 4. Dec.) der Diamant, the diamond.		
	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Orient, the east. der Occident, the west.		
ment.			(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Parlament, the parliament. das Regiment, the regiment. &c.
ct.	(es, en. 4. Dec.) der Affect, the passion. &c.		(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Edict, *the edict.* (es, en. 4. Dec.) das Insect, *the insect.*

NOUNS IN

	Masculines.	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
ſt.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Ballaſt, the ballast. der Dunſt, the vapour. der Papſt, the pope. &c. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Enthuſiaſt, the enthusiast. der Atheiſt, the atheist. &c.	(en, 3. Dec.) die Laſt, the load. die Liſt, the craft. (e. 2. Dec.) die Angſt, the anguish. die Wurſt, the sausage. die Kunſt, the art. &c.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Geſpenſt, *the ghost.*
cht.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Knecht, the servant. &c. (es, er. 5. Dec.) der Böſewicht, *the villain.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Abſicht, the design. die Andacht, *(the)* devotion. die Pflicht, the duty. die Schlacht, the battle. die Sucht, sickness. &c. (e. 2. Dec.) die Macht, *the might.* die Nacht, *the night.*	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Geſchlecht, the gender or genus. das Geſicht, the sight, or face. &c.
ht.		(e. 2. Dec.) die Naht, the seam:	
gt.		(en. 3. Dec.) die Predigt, the sermon. &c.	
dt.		(e. 2. Dec.) die Stadt, the town.	
lt.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) der Anwalt, the attorney. der Spalt, the slit.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Anſtalt, the regulation. die Welt, the world.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Zelt, the tent.

NOUNS IN

Masculines.	*Feminines.*	*Neuters.*
eit. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Streit, *the dispute.*	(en. 3. Dec.) die Zeit, the time. die Grobheit, the coarseness. &c.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Scheit, *the log.*
rt. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Bart, the beard.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Art, the species. die Antwort, the answer. die Fahrt, the passage.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Wort, the word. das Schwert, the sword.
	(en. 3. Dec.) die Spreu, the chaff. &c.	(es, 2. 5. Dec.) das Heu, *the hay.* (Heu has no plural.)
au. (es, en. 4. Dec.) der Pfau, the peacock. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Bau, the building.	(e. 2. Dec.) die Sau, the sow. (en. 3. Dec.) die Frau, the wife. die Schau, the show.	(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Thau, *the rope.*
ey, or ei.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Bettelei, begging. die Schmeichelei, the flattery. &c.	(es, er, 5. Dec.) das Blei, *the lead.* (Blei has no plural.) das Ei, *the egg.*
b, h. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Klotz, the block. der Reverenz, the reverence. (es, en. 4. Dec.) der Prinz, the prince. &c. Vide § page 42.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Miliz, the militia. &c.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Holz, *the wood.* (es, e. 2. Dec.) das Geschütz, *the artillery.* das Salz, *the salt.*

*Recapitulatory Exercises (exemplifying the Rules and Observations on the Nouns,) to be translated into English.**

FIRST LESSON.

Die Hunde jagen die Haſen.

Die Lieder der Nachtigallen ergötzen die Ohren des Menſchen.

Die Abſichten des Menſchen ſtimmen oft nicht mit ſeinen Handlungen überein.

Man nennt das Alter, den Winter des Lebens; und die Jugend, den Frühling des Lebens.

Alle Menſchen lieben das Leben, und ſcheuen den Tod, aber der Weiſe verachtet den Tod.

Die Zeiger an der Uhr, zeigen die Stunden und die Minuten.

Die Mathematik lehrt die Verhältniße der Zahlen, und überhaupt der Größen.

Die Theologie iſt die Lehre von Gott, und der Glückſeligkeit des Menſchen.

der Hund, the dog.
jagen, hunt.
der Haſe, the hare.
das Lied, the song.
die Nachtigall, the nightingale.
ergötzen, delight.
das Ohr, the ear.
der Menſch, man.
die Abſicht, the intention.
oft, often.
ſtimmen nicht überein, do not agree.
mit, with, ſeinen, his.
die Handlung, action.
man nennt, we call.
das Alter, old age.
der Winter, the winter.
das Leben, life.
die Jugend, youth.
der Frühling, the spring.
alle Menſchen, all men.
lieben, love.
das Leben, life.
ſcheuen, abhor.
der Tod, death.
aber, but.
der Weiſe, the wise man.
verachtet, despises.
der Zeiger, the hand.
an, of.
die Uhr, the watch.
zeigen, point to.
die Stunde, the hour.
die Minute, the minute.

* It will be advisable for a scholar on his first going through the Grammar, to pass over the recapitulatory practice.

die Mathematik, the mathematics.
lehrt, teaches, *(teach.)*
das Verhältniß, the proportion.
die Zahl, number.
überhaupt, in general.
die Größe, magnitude.
die Theologie, theology.
iſt, is.
die Lehre, the doctrine
von, of.
Gott, God.
die Glückſeligkeit, happiness.
des Menſchen, man.

SECOND LESSON.

Die neun Muſen ſind die Göttinnen der ſchönen Künſte und Wiſſenſchaften.

Wir haben vier Elemente, das Waſſer, die Erde, die Luft, und das Feuer: das Waſſer dient den Menſchen, den Thieren, den Pflanzen, ja ſelbſt den Metallen zur Nahrung.

Die Erde nährt ebenfalls die Pflanzen.

Die Luft umgiebt den ganzen Erdball.

Die lebendigen Geſchöpfe athmen die Luft ein.

Das Feuer macht die Metalle ſchmelzen.

Das Feuer bringt Wärme hervor.

Die Flamme iſt ein Zeichen des Feuers.

Auf der Oberfläche der Erde wachſen Bäume, Kräuter, und Pflanzen.

Im Frühlinge blühen viele Arten von Blumen, dann ſieht man Roſen, Veilchen, Narciſſen, Hyacinthen, Tulpen, und viele andre Blumen.

neun, nine.
die Muſe, the muse.
ſind, are.
die Göttinn, the Goddess.
ſchönen, fine.
die Kunſt, the art.
die Wiſſenſchaft, the science.
wir haben, we have.
vier, four.
das Element, the element.
das Waſſer, *(the)* water.
die Erde, *(the)* earth.
die Luft, *(the)* air.
das Feuer, *(the)* fire.
dient, serves, *is useful to*
der Menſch, man.
das Thier, the animal.
die Pflanze, the plant.
ja ſelbſt, even.
das Metall, the metal.
zur, as, (for zu der, as.)
die Nahrung, food.
nährt, nourishes.
ebenfalls, in like manner.
umgiebt, surrounds.
ganz, whole
der Erdball, globe.
lebendig, living.
das Geſchöpf, the creature.
athmen ein, breathe in.

macht, makes.
schmelzen, to melt.
bringt hervor, brings forth.
die Wärme, warmth.
die Flamme, the flame.
ist, is.
das Zeichen, the sign.
auf, upon.
die Oberfläche, surface.
wachsen, grow.
der Baum, the tree.
das Kraut, the herb.
die Pflanze, the plant.
im (for in dem), in.
der Frühling, the spring.
blühen, blossom.
viele, many.
die Art, the sort.
die Blume, the flower.
dann, then.
sieht man, we see.
die Rose, the rose.
das Veilchen, the violet.
die Narcisse, the narcissus.
die Hyacinth, the hyacinth.
die Tulpe, the tulip.
andere, other.

In the following exercises, the words which are translated underneath, follow in the order as they ought to stand in the German, and the words inclosed in a parenthesis, are according to the German idiom.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Nouns.

THIRD LESSON.

The dog loves the society of man (*the man.*)
The return of the swallows announces (*the*) spring.
(*The*) horns are the ornament of the stag.
(*The*) cats catch (*the*) mice and (*the*) rats.
The eagle kills (*the*) birds and (*the*) fourfooted animals.
Greatness (*the greatness*) and immortality (*the immortality*) flatter our wishes.
(*The*) sparrows kill the insects.
The whale swallows (*the*) other fish.
The teacher instructs the scholar, and the scholar learns the principles of the teacher.
Praise (*the praise*) belongs to the diligent and blame (*the blame*) to the idle.
(*The*) Apes resemble men (*to the men*).

Dog, Hund, *m.* 2.
loves, liebet.
society, Gesellschaft, *f.* 3. (*Acc.*)
man, Mensch, *m.* 3.
return, Wiederkunft, *f.* 2.
swallow, Schwalbe, *f.* 3.
announces, kündigt an.
the spring, den Frühling.
horns, Geweihe, *n.* 1.
ornament, Zierde, *f.* 3.
stag, Hirsch, *m.* 2.

cat, Katze, *f.* 3.
catch, fangen.
mouse, *Maus, *f.* 2. (*Acc.*)
rat, Ratze, *f.* 3.
eagle, Adler, *m.* 1.
kills, tödtet.
bird, *Vogel, *m.* 1.
fourfooted, vierfüßige.
animal, Thier, *n.* 2. (*Acc.*)
greatness, Größe, *f.* 3.
immortality, Unsterblichkeit, *f.* 3.
wish, *Wunsch, *m.* 2.
sparrow, Sperling, *m.* 2.
kill, tödten.
insect, Insect, *n.* 4.
whale, Wallfisch, *m.* 2.
swallows, verschlingt.
other, andere.
fish, Fisch, *m.* 2.
teacher, Lehrer, *m.* 1.
instructs, unterrichtet.
scholar, Schüler, *m.* 1.
learns, lernt.
principle, *Grundsatz, *m.* 2.
praise, Lob, *m.* 2.
belongs, gebührt.
diligent, Fleißigen, *m.* 3.
blame, Tadel, *m.* 1.
idle, Faulen, *m.* 3.
ape, Affe, *m.* 3.
resemble, gleichen.

FOURTH LESSON.

The quills of (*the*) geese, ravens, and bustards, serve for (*the*) writing, but the quills of (*the*) hens and turkeys are of no such use.

We hold the pen in our (*with the*) hand, and make (*the*) letters with it.

(*The*) letters are the parts of (*the*) syllables, (*the*) syllables the parts of (*the*) words, and (*the*) words the parts of (*the*) speech.

Many objects we cannot see, for instance the soul of (*the*) man, and the thoughts of man; God only knows the thoughts of man.

We know the will of men by their (*the*) actions.

The state erects schools for the benefit of the citizens, and the children of (*the*) citizens.

quill, Federkiel, *m.* 2.
goose, *Gans, *f.* 2.
raven, Rabe, *m.* 3.
bustard, Trappe, *f.* 3.
serve, dienen.
for (*the,*) zum, or zu dem.
writing, Schreiben.
but, aber.
hen, *Henne, *f.* 3.
turkey, *Truthahn, *n.* 5.
are of no such use, taugen nicht dazu.
we hold, wir halten.
pen, Feder, *f.* 3.
with, mit.
hand, *Hand, *f.* 2.
make, machen.
with it, damit.
letter, Buchstabe, *m.* 3.
are, sind.
part, Theil, *m.* or *n.* 2.
syllable, Sylbe, *f.* 3.
word, Wort, *n.* 5.
speech, Rede, *f.* 3.

many, viele.
object, *Gegenſtand, *m.* 2.
we cannot see, können wir nicht ſehen.
for instance, zum Beiſpiel.
the soul, Seele, *f.* 3.
the thought, Gedanke, *m.* 3.
God, Gott, *m.* 5.
only knows, nur kennt.
we know, wir wiſſen.
will, Wille, *m.* 3.
by, aus.
actions, Handlung, *f.* 3.
state, Staat, *m.* 4.
erects, errichtet.
school, Schule, *f.* 3.
for the benefit, zum Nutzen.
citizen, Bürger, *m.* 1.
child, Kind, *n.* 5.

CHAP. IV.

§ I. *Of Adjectives,* (Beiwörter.)

1. Adjectives are sometimes used adverbially, and are then indeclinable, as:

Der Mann iſt gut,	The man is good.
Die Frau iſt gut,	The woman is good.
Das Kind iſt gut,	The child is good.
Die Männer ſind gut,	The men are good.
Der Mann ſchreibt gut,	The man writes well.

2. They are declinable in three different forms, viz. 1stly without any article, 2ndly with the article ein, and 3rdly with the article der.

FIRST FORM.

If no article precedes the adjective, it is declined like the article der, die, das; as,

Singular.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N. guter,	gute,	gutes, good.
G. gutes or* guten,	guter,	gutes or guten, of good.
D. gutem,	guter,	gutem, to good.
A. guten,	gute,	gutes, good.

* Guten instead of gutes in the genitive, is used by the best German writers.

Plural.

For the three Genders.

gute, good.
guter, of good.
guten, to good.
gute, to good.

Guter, without an article and with a masculine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. guter Wein, good wine.	*N.* gute Weine, good wines.
G. guten or gutes Weines, of good wine.	*G.* guter Weine, of good wines.
D. gutem Weine, to good wine.	*D.* guten Weinen, to good wines.
A. guten Wein, good wine.	*A.* gute Weine, good wines.

Guter with a feminine noun is thus declined in the singular only, as:

N. gute Milch, good milk, or some good milk.
G. guter Milch, of good milk.
D. guter Milch, to good milk.
A. gute Milch, good milk.

Weiß, (*white,*) with a neuter noun is thus declined in the singular only, as:

N. weißes Brot or Brod, white bread.
G. weißes or weißen Brotes, of white bread.
D. weißem Brote, to white bread.
A. weißes Brot, white bread.

So decline rother Wein, red wine; dünnes Bier, small beer; ſchwarze Tinte or (Dinte,) black ink; ſchönes Wetter, fine weather.

SECOND FORM.

Adjectives with the indefinite article ein, are thus declined:

Singular.

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
* *N.*	ein guter,	eine gute,	ein gutes.
G.	eines guten,	einer guten,	eines guten.
D.	einem guten,	einer guten,	einem guten.
A.	einen guten,	eine gute,	ein gutes.

Ein guter, with a masculine noun is thus declined;

Singular.

N. ein guter Vater, a good father.
G. eines guten Vaters, of a good father.
D. einem guten Vater, to a good father.
A. einen guten Vater, a good father.

Ein guter, with a feminine noun is thus declined;

Singular.

N. eine gute Mutter, a good mother.
G. einer guten Mutter, of a good mother.
D. einer guten Mutter, to a good mother.
A. eine gute Mutter, a good mother.

Ein guter, with a neuter noun is thus declined:

Singular.

N. ein gutes Weib, a good woman.
G. eines guten Weibes of a good woman.
D. einem guten Weibe, to a good woman.
A. ein gutes Weib, a good woman.

Plural for the three Genders.

N.	gute Väter, good fathers,	Mütter, mothers,	Weiber. women.
G.	guter Väter,	Mütter,	Weiber, of good &c.
D.	guten Vätern,	Müttern,	Weibern, to good &c.
A.	gute Väter,	Mütter,	Weiber, good &c.

So decline, ein weiser Mann, a wise man; eine schöne Frau, a handsome woman; ein kleines Haus, a little or small house; ein warmer Wind, a warm wind.

---

* The plural is formed in the same manner, as without any article. Vide the plural of guter Wein.

THIRD FORM.

Adjectives with the definite article der, are thus declined;

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*	*for the three Gend.*
N. der gute,	die gute	das gute,	die guten.
G. des guten,	der guten,	des guten,	der guten.
D. dem guten	der guten,	dem guten,	den guten.
A. den guten,	die gute,	das gute,	die guten.

Der gute, with a masculine noun, is thus declined:

Singular.

N. der gute Mann, the good man.
G. des guten Mannes, of the good man.
D. dem guten Manne, to the good man.
A. den guten Mann, the good man.

Der gute, with the feminine noun, is thus declined:

Singular.

N. die gute Frau, the good woman.
G. der guten Frau, of the good woman.
D. der guten Frau, to the good woman.
A. die gute Frau, the good woman.

Der gute, with a neuter noun, is thus declined:

Singular.

N. das gute Kind, the good child.
G. des guten Kindes, of the good child.
D. dem guten Kinde, to the good child.
A. das gute Kind, the good child.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder.
The good men, women, children.
G. der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of the good &c.
D. den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to the good. &c.
A. die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, the good &c.

So decline der kleine Knabe, the little boy: die kluge Frau, the prudent woman; das kleine Mädchen, the little girl.

The following Table exhibits, at one view, the Te of the three different Forms of Adjectives.

FIRST FORM, like der, die, das.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	er,	e,	es,	e.
Gen.	es *or* en,	er,	es *or* en,	er.
Dat.	em,	er,	em,	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	es,	e.

SECOND FORM, like ein guter.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	er,	e,	es,	*1st 2nd. e, en.
Gen.	en,	en,	en,	er, en.
Dat.	en,	en,	en,	en, en.
Acc.	en,	e,	es,	e, en.

* When one adjective is used in the plural in the second form, the first terminations are employed; vide the plural of gute Väter, Mütter, Weiber, page 52; but when more adjectives are used, the first adjective takes the first terminations, and the others the second: however Klopstock, and some other writers, use the plural of the first form throughout; vide the plural *gute rothe alte* Weine, page 59.

It may be also observed, that the plural of the first form, is like the plural of the first terminations of the second form.

THIRD FORM, like der gute.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	e,	e,	e,	en.
Gen.	en,	en,	en,	en.
Dat.	en,	en,	en,	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	e,	en.

Promiscuous Practice on the Adjectives and Nouns.

	Adjectives.	*Nouns.*
Of the fine children,	ſchön.	Kind, *n.* 5.
To a fine child,	....	.....
Of happy days,	glücklig.	Tag, *m.* 2.
Of good men,	gut.	*Mann, *m.* 5.
The ignorant people,	unwiſſend.	Leute, *m.* 3.
The liquid air,	flüſſig.	*Luft, *f.* 2.
A timid girl,	furchtſam.	Mädchen, *n.* 1.
The industrious maid,	fleißig.	*Magd, *f.* 2.
An easy work,	leicht.	Arbeit, *f.* 3.
Of hard labor,	ſchwer.	Arbeit, *f.* 3.
The frugal meal,	ſparſam.	Mahlzeit, *f.* 3.
Tall firs,	erhaben.	Fichte, *f.* 3.
Of the hard oak,	hart.	Eiche, *f.* 3.
A shady elm,	ſchattig.	Ulme, *f.* 3.
Of hard iron,	hart.	Eiſen, *n.* 1.
The early lark,	früh.	Lerche, *f.* 3.
An unknown land,	unbekannt.	*Land, *n.* 5.
Of the Trojan hero,	trojaniſch.	Held, *m.* 3.
Of civilized Europe,	geſittet.	Europa, *n.*
To hot Africa,	heiß.	Afrika, *n.*
Rich America,	reich.	Amerika, *n.*

	Adjectives.	*Nouns.*
To large Asia,	groß.	Aſien, *n.*
To the fiery Hecla,	feurig.	Hekla, *m.*
Of the fair Helen,	ſchön.	Helena, *f.*
The chaste Diana,	keuſch.	Diana, *f.*
The geographical miles,	geographiſch.	Meile, *f.* 3.
Terrible thunder,	erſchrecklich.	Donner, *m.* 1.
The Olympic games,	olympiſch.	Spiel, *n.* 2.
Of distant vallies,	entfernt.	*Thal, *n.* 5.
Of fine flowers,	ſchön.	Blume, *f.* 3.
The pious father, (*Acc.*)	fromm.	*Vater, *m.* 1.
To fresh butter,	friſch.	Butter, *f.* 1.
To a red coat,	roth.	Kleid, *n.* 5.
Black bread,	ſchwarz.	Brot, *n.* 2.

Observations on the Declension of Adjectives.

1. Adjectives are declined according to the second form, (viz. like ein guter) when preceded by the personal pronouns ich, *I*; du, *thou*; er, *he*, &c.; after the possessives, mein, *my*; dein, *thy*; ſein, *his*, &c.; and the indefinites, kein, *no*; viel, *many*; wenig, *few*; mehr, *more*; as, ich armer Mann, *I poor man*; mir armen Manne, (nicht armem Manne) *to me poor man*; du gute Seele, *thou good soul*; ihr ehrlichen Leute, *you honest people*; kein ehrlicher Mann, *no honest man*; viel guter Wein, *much good wine*; wenig gutes Brot, *little good bread*; mein eigenes Haus, *my own house*; meines eigenen Hauſes, *of my own house*; meinem eigenen Hauſe, *to my own house*; mit ihrer gütigen Erlaubniß, *with your kind permission*; unſer altes Haus, *our old house*; keine grünen Wälder, *no green woods*; so likewise when several adjectives follow one another, as:

Dein guter alter ehrlicher Vater,	thy good honest old father.
Ein einziger lieber Sohn,	an only dear son.

2. Adjectives are declined after the third form, that is like der gute, when they follow the pronouns;

Alle, all.	jener, that.
beide, both.	ſelbigen, ſelfsame.
dieſer, this.	ſolcher, such.
derjenige, that, he.	mancher, many a one.
derſelbe, the same.	welcher, which or that.
jeder, every.	

The first adjective or pronoun is declined like der. Examples:

Singular.

N. Dieſer fromme Vater, this pious father.
G. Dieſes frommen Vaters, of this pious father.
D. Dieſem frommen Vater, to this pious father.
A. Dieſen frommen Vater, this pious father.

Plural.

N. Dieſe frommen Väter, these pious fathers.
G. Dieſer frommen Väter, of these pious fathers.
D. Dieſen frommen Vätern, to these pious fathers.
A. Dieſe frommen Väter, these pious fathers.

Singular.

N. Mancher kluge Mann, many a prudent man.
G. Um manches guten Vorſatzes willen, on account of many a good purpose.
D. Manchem böſen Menſchen, to many a bad man.
A. Manchen frommen Mann, many a pious man.

So also when many adjectives come together, as:

Singular.

N. Dieſer alte brave Mann, this brave old man.
G. Dieſes alten braven Mannes, of this brave old man.
D. Dieſem alten braven Manne, to this brave old man.
A. Dieſen alten braven Mann, this brave old man.

Plural.

N. Jene ſchönen rothen Blumen, those fine red flowers.
G. Jener ſchönen rothen Blumen, of those fine red flowers.

After alle, *all;* etliche and einige, *some;* manche, *many;* the nominative and accusative plural may end in e, instead of en, as:

N. or *A.* Alle gute Menſchen, all good men.
N. or *A.* Alle übrige fremde Gäſte, all the other strange guests.
N. or *A.* Einige griechiſche Schriftſteller, some Grecian writers.
N. or *A.* Manche wilde Vögel, many wild birds; but the other cases follow the rule, as:

Plural.

G. Aller übrigen fremden Gäſte, of all the other strange guests.
G. Um einiger griechiſchen Schriftſteller willen, for the sake of some Grecian writers.

3. When no article comes before the adjective, it is declined in the first form, like der, die, das, (vide guter); and when indeclinable words precede, whether numerals, adjectives, or adverbs, they have no influence upon the adjective, as:

Etwas guter Wein, some good wine.
Viel friſche Milch, much fresh milk.
Wenig kaltes Waſſer, a little cold water.
Sehr gute Menſchen, very good men.
Vier baare Thaler, four dollars in cash.
Fünf lange Jahre, five long years.
Nach zehn langen Jahren, after ten long years.

But the adjective is declined in the third form, (viz. as with der) when preceded by zwei or drei, these two numerals being declinable in the genitive and dative. Examples:

G. Zweier langen Tage, of two long days.
G. Dreier baaren Thaler, of three dollars in cash.
D. Dreien guten Menſchen, to three good men.

For the sake of euphony, the genitive singular in the first form, takes en instead of es, as:

Folgenden Tages, the following day.
Widrigen Falles, in the contrary case.
Guten Theils, in a great measure.
Seligen Andenkens, of blessed memory.
Geraden Weges, in the straight way.
Hieſigen Ortes, in this place.
Andern Theils, on the other hand.
Gröſten Theils, for the most part.

For the same reason, the m of the dative, is changed into n, when the adjective already ends in m; as, armen (*not* armem,) poor; angenehmen (*not* angenehmem,) pleasant, &c.

4. When several adjectives come together without any article before them, the first only is declined in the first form, like der, die, das, the others in the second form; but some authors decline each adjective in the plural, according to the first form.

Masculine.

Singular.

N. Guter rother alter Wein, good old red wine.
G. Guten or gutes alten rothen Weines, of good old red wine.
D. Gutem rothen alten Weine, to good old red wine.
A. Guten rothen alten Wein, good old red wine.

Plural.

N. Gute rothen alten Weine, or gute rothe alte Weine, good old red wines.
G. Guter rothen alten Weine, or guter rother alter Weine, of good old red wines.
D. Guten rothen alten Weinen, to good old red wines.
A. Gute rothen alten Weine, or gute rothe alte Weine, good old red wines.

So guter weißer Hafer, good white oats.

Feminine.

Singular.

N. Reife ſüße Frucht, ripe sweet fruit.
G. Reifer ſüßen Frucht, of ripe sweet fruit.
D. Reifer ſüßen Frucht, to ripe sweet fruit.
A. Reife ſüße Frucht, ripe sweet fruit.

Plural.

A. Reife ſüßen Früchte, ripe sweet fruits.
G. Reifer ſüßen Früchte, of ripe sweet fruits.
D. Reifen ſüßen Früchten, to ripe sweet fruits.
A. Reife ſüßen, Früchte, ripe sweet fruits.

Neuter.

Singular.

N. Schönes grünes Glas, fine green glass.
G. Schönen grünen Glaſes, of fine green glass.
D. Schönem grünen Glaſe, to fine green glass.
A. Schönes grünes Glas, fine green glass.

Plural.

N. Schöne grünen Gläſer, fine green glasses.
G. Schöner grünen Gläſer, of fine green glasses.
D. Schönen grünen Gläſern, to fine green glasses.
A. Schöne grünen Gläſer, fine green glasses.

So in the plural only.

Masculine.

Plural.

N. Andere guten Menſchen, other good men.
G. Anderer guten Menſchen, of other good men

Feminine.

Plural.

N. Schöne großen Städte, fine large cities.
G. Schöner großen Städte, of fine large cities.

Neuters.

Plural.

N. Schöne großen Häuser, fine large houses.
G. Schöner großen Häuser, of fine large houses.

But there are some deviations from these forms, particularly in the plural, as:

Ganze lange Tage, whole long days.
Lange ganze Tage, long whole days.
Lange halbe Nächte, long half nights.
Schwere volle Becher, heavy full cups.
Eine Reihe wohlklingender deutscher Verse, a string of harmonious German verses, &c. (vide Adelung's Grammar, page 233; and the observation in this Grammar, page 54, and the plural of guter rother alter Wein, page 59.)

5. When two or more defining particles come together before an adjective, each retains its own form of declension, as: viele solche neuen Wörter, many such new words; um vieler solcher neuen Wörter willen, on account of many such new words; alle diese bösen Männer, all these bad men.

6. Adjectives which admit of declension cannot lose their proper endings, hence, schön Wetter, for schönes Wetter, *fine weather*, is not grammatical, but used in conversation; so also, all mein Vermögen, for alles mein Vermögen, *all my property*; manch ehrlicher Mann, for mancher ehrlicher Mann, *many an honest man*.

7. Some adjectives never admit of declension, as: anderthalb, *one and a half*; drittehalb, *two and a half*; allerlei, *all sorts*; mancherlei, *many sorts*; and all compounds in halb and lei or ley. Viel, *much*; wenig, *little*; mehr, *more*, are indeclinable before nouns which are considered as a whole; as, viel Brot, *much bread*; wenig Mühe, *little trouble or pain*; but before plural nouns they are declinable; as, viele Kinder, *many children*; wenige Menschen, *few men*. Ganz, *all*; and halb, *half*, before names of places, are frequently indeclinable, as: ganz Deutschland, *all Germany*: halb Frankreich, *half France*.

8. When two adjectives come together, coupled by the conjunction und, it is usual in familiar discourse to drop the ending

of the first; as, ein roth- und weißes Geſicht, *a red and white face*; ein genüg- und arbeitſamer Menſch, *a contented and industrious man.*

8. Adjectives may be converted into substantives, both in the singular and plural, the nouns being understood, for which they are made to stand; as, der Weiſe, *the wise man*; die Weiſe, *the wise woman*; das Erhabene, *the sublime*; so, der Gelehrte, *the learned man*; die Schöne, *the fair woman*; der Bekannte, *the male acquaintance*; die Bekannte, *the female acquaintance*; der Verwandte, *the male relation*; die Verwandte, *the female relation*; der Höchſte, *the supreme, (the supreme being)*; der Geliebte, *the beloved man*; die Geliebte, *the beloved woman*; der Allmächtige, *the Almighty*; der Bediente, *the servant man.*

§ II. *Comparison of Adjectives.*

The degrees of comparison are the positive, the comparative and the superlative. The comparative is formed by adding r or er, and the * superlative by adding ſt, ſte or eſte to the end of the simple word or positive, as:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
Klein, little;	kleiner, less;	der, die, das kleinſte, the least.
Weiſe, wise;	weiſer, wiser;	der weiſeſte, the wisest.
Dreiſt, bold;	dreiſter, bolder;	der dreiſteſte, the boldest.

So form:

hohl, hollow.	lahm, lame.
rauh, rough.	ſtolz, proud.
blau, blue.	roh, raw.
toll, mad.	fremd, strange.
ſchlecht, bad.	feſt, firm.
ſanft, soft.	zahm, tame.
müde, weary.	ſchlank, slender.

The preceding adjectives do not change their vowels in the comparative and superlative, but most adjectives change the vowels a, o, u, into ä, ö, ü, in the comparative and superlative, as;

---

* The superlative degree is seldom used without the definite article, which must agree in gender, number and case, with the noun to which it refers, as:

das iſt der kleinſte Mann, that is the least man.
das iſt die kleinſte Frau, that is the least woman.
das iſt das kleinſte Kind, that is the least child.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
alt, old;	älter, older;	der, die or das älteſte, the oldest.
lang, long;	länger, longer;	der längſte, the longest.
kurz, short;	kürzer, shorter;	der kürzeſte, the shortest.

So form:

arm, poor.	kalt, cold.
bange, fearful.	klar, clear.
dumm, stupid.	klug, prudent.
grob, coarse.	naß, wet.
groß, great.	ſchwach, weak.
hart, hard.	ſtark, strong.

Some adjectives form their comparisons irregularly, as:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
bald, soon;	eher, sooner;	der, die or das eheſte, the soonest.
gern, willing;	lieber, more willing;	am liebſten, the most willing.
gut, good;	beſſer, better;	der beſte, the best.
hoch, high;	höher, higher;	der höchſte, the highest.
nahe, near;	näher, nearer;	der nächſte, the nearest.
viel, much;	mehr, more;	der meiſte, the most.

The comparatives and superlatives of adjectives are declined like the positive.

Declension of the comparative älter, *older*, with ein, and a masculine noun.

Singular.

N. Ein älterer Mann, an older man.
G. Eines älteren or ältern Mannes, of an older man.
D. Einem älteren or ältern Manne, to an older man.
A. Einen älteren or ältern Mann, an older man.

A feminine noun.

N. Eine ältere Frau, an older woman.
G. Einer älteren or ältern Frau, of an older woman.
D. Einer älteren or ältern Frau, to an older woman.
A. Eine ältere Frau, an older woman.

A neuter noun.

N. Ein älteres Kind, an older child.
G. Eines älteren or ältern Kindes, of an older child.
D. Einem älteren or ältern Kinde, to an older child.
A. Ein älteres Kind, an older child.

Plural for the three Genders, without any Article.

N. Aeltere Männer, Frauen, Kinder, older men, women, children.
G. Aelterer Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of older men, &c.
D. Aeltern Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to older men, &c.
A. Aeltere Männer, Frauen, Kinder, older men, &c.

Declension of the superlative älteſte, with der, and a masculine noun.

Singular.

N. Der älteſte Mann, the oldest man.
G. Des älteſten Mannes, of the oldest man.
D. Dem älteſten Manne, to the oldest man.
A. Den älteſten Mann, the oldest man.

A feminine noun.

N. Die älteſte Frau, the oldest woman.
G. Der älteſten Frau, of the oldest woman.
D. Der älteſten Frau, to the oldest woman.
A. Die älteſte Frau, the oldest woman.

A neuter noun.

N. Das älteſte Kind, the oldest child.
G. Des älteſten Kindes, of the oldest child.
D. Dem älteſten Kinde, to the oldest child.
A. Das älteſte Kind, the oldest child.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die älteſten Männer Frauen, Kinder, the oldest men, women, children.
G. Der älteſten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of the &c.
D. Den älteſten Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to the &c.
A. Die älteſten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, the &c.

So decline.

Ein beſſerer Mann, a better man.
Eine ſchönere Frau, a more beautiful woman.
Ein jüngeres Kind, a younger child.
Der beſte Mann, the best man.
Die ſchönſte Frau, the handsomest woman.
Das jüngſte Kind, the youngest child.
Ein heiterer Tag, a clearer day.
Eine freiere Luft, a freer air,
Ein klügeres Weib, a more prudent woman.
Der heiterſte Tag, the clearest day.
Die freieſte Luft, the freest air.
Das klügſte Weib, the most discreet woman.
Ein jüngerer Bruder, a younger brother.
Das ſicherſte Mittel, the safest means.
Der größte Held, the greatest hero.
Ein höheres Haus, a higher house.
Der längſte Weg, the longest way.
Die breiteſte Straße, the broadest road.

Observations on the Comparison of Adjectives.

1. The e is often dropped in the comparative of adjectives, ending in el, en and er, as:

Positive.	*Comparative.*
edel, noble;	edler, nobler, (for edeler.)
ſicher, safe;	ſichrer, safer, (for ſicherer.)
vollkommen, perfect.	vollkommner, more perfect, (for vollkommener.)

2. Most primitives change their vowels in the comparative and superlative; as, ſtark, *strong*; ſtärker, *stronger*; der ſtärkſte, *the strongest*; kurz, *short*; kürzer, kürzeſte; but the following are exceptions, as well as some others previously noticed: blaß, *pale*; falſch, *false*; gerade, *straight*; hold, *affectionate*; loſe, *loose*; glatt, *smooth*; laß, *lazy*; matt, *faint*; nackt, *naked*; rund, *round*; ſtumpf, *dull*; platt, *flat*; ſatt, *weary*; ſchlaff, *slack*. Derivatives never change their vowels; as, laſterhaft, *vicious*; laſterhafter, *more vicious*; der laſterhafteſte, *most vicious*.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Adjectives.

I.

Die Natur zeigt uns ſchönere Gegenſtände als die Kunſt.

Die bergichten Gegenden ſind angenehmer als die ebenen.

Kleine Fürſten ſind glücklicher als große Könige.

Die Wolle der ſächſiſchen Schaafe iſt feiner als die Wolle der engliſchen Schaafe.

Die Mandeln haben einen feinern Geſchmack als die Nüſſe.

Die unüberwindliche Flotte der Spanier hielt einen außerordentlichen Sturm aus.

Der reichſte Menſch iſt nicht immer der glücklichſte, und der ärmſte iſt nicht immer der unglücklichſte; ſondern der tugendhafteſte iſt der glücklichſte unter den Menſchen.

Die Tugend iſt das höchſte Gut des Menſchen, der größte Menſch aber, hat nicht immer dieſes höchſte Gut, und er iſt daher nicht immer unſrer Achtung der würdigſte.

Die Figur des Zirkels iſt die vollkommenſte unter den geometriſchen Figuren.

die Natur, nature.
zeigt, exhibits.
uns, to us.
ſchön, fine.
der Gegenſtand, object.
als, than.
die Kunſt, art.
bergicht, mountainous.
die Gegend, the countries.
angenehm, pleasant.
die Ebene, the plain.
klein, little.
der Fürſt, the prince.
ſind, are.
glücklich, happy.
groß, great.
der König, the king.
die Wolle, wool.
ſächſiſche, Saxon.
das Schaaf, the sheep.
fein, fine.
engliſch, English.
die Mandel, the almond.
haben, have.
der Geſchmack, the taste.
die Nuß, the nut.
unüberwindlich, invincible.
die Flotte, the fleet.
der Spanier, the Spaniard.
hielt aus, endured.
auſſerordentlich, extraordinary.
der Sturm, the storm.
reich, rich.
Menſch, man.
nicht immer, not always.
unglücklich, unhappy.
ſondern, but.
tugendhaft, virtuous.
glücklich, happy.
arm, poor.
hoch, high.
höchſte, supreme.
das Gut, the good.
aber, but.

hat nicht immer, has not always.
dieſes, this.
daher, therefore.
würdig, worthy.
unſrer, of our.
die Achtung, esteem.
die Figur, the figure.
der Zirkel, the circle.
vollkommen, complete.
unter, among.
geometriſch, geometrical.

SECOND LESSON.

Die Jahre der Jugend ſind die angenehmſten und zugleich die koſtbarſten. Dies iſt die Bemerkung der weiſeſten Menſchen, daher muß der Knabe und der Jüngling dieſe Jahre aufs beſte benutzen, er muß ſeinen möglichſten Fleiß anwenden, um ſich die wichtigſten Kenntniſſe zu erwerben, ſeinen Sitten die möglichſte Politur zu geben, und ſein Herz durch die beſten Maximen zu bilden.

Die feinſte Liſt des Böſewichts, iſt doch nicht der Geradheit des einfältigſten Bauern vorzuziehen.

Der ſchönſte Tag des Winters iſt nicht zu vergleichen mit einem ſchönen Tage des Frühlings.

Derjenige Staat iſt der glücklichſte, den ein weiſer und gerechter Monarch regiert.

In einem ſolchen Staate gelten die gerechteſten Geſetze.

Die erhabenſte Weisheit des berühmteſten Heiden, reicht doch nicht an die göttliche Weisheit Jeſu.

das Jahr, the year.
die Jugend, youth.
angenehm, pleasant.
zugleich, at the same time.
koſtbar, precious.
dies, this.
die Bemerkung, the remark.
weiſe, wise.
daher, therefore.
der Knabe, the boy.
der Jüngling, youth.
muß, must.
aufs beſte benutzen, employ in the best manner.
anwenden, use.
möglichſte, utmost.
Fleiß, assiduity.
um ſich zu erwerben, in order to acquire.
wichtig, important.
die Kenntniſſe, knowledge.
zu geben, to give.
die möglichſte Politur, the greatest polish possible.
ſeinen, his.
die Sitten, the manners.
zu bilden, to improve.
ſein, his.
das Herz, the heart.
durch, by.
die Maxime, the maxim.
fein, subtle.
die Liſt, cunning.
der Böſewicht, villain.

ist doch nicht vorzuziehen, is yet not to be preferred.
die Geradheit, the rectitude.
einfältig, simple.
der Bauer, the peasant.
der Tag, the day.
der Winter, the winter.
der Frühling, the spring.
ist nicht zu vergleichen, is not to be compared.
mit, to.
derjenige, that.
der Staat, state.
gerecht, just.
der Monarch, monarch.
regiert, governs,
ein solcher, such.
das Gesetz, the law.
gelten, are valid.
erhaben, exalted.
die Weisheit, wisdom.
berühmt, celebrated.
der Heide, heathen.
reicht doch nicht an, does not come up to.
göttlich, divine.

THIRD LESSON.

Gold (*the gold*) is the most precious of metals, and yet not to be preferred to the useful iron.

English (*the English*) tin is the best.

(*The*) alabaster is the whitest stone.

Frederic the Second was a great warrior.

A polite man has not always the worth, which an honest man has.

The picture hangs in a (*the*) false light.

Scipio possessed all the virtues (*all virtues*) which are necessary for (*to*) a great commander.

We have not all equal talents.

One (*the one*) has a talent for mechanical labors, another (*the other*) for (*the*) poetry and the like.

The earth has high mountains, deep vallies, level fields, shady woods, and hollow caves.

Mining is a dangerous, troublesome and expensive business; without which however human (*the human*) society in these days cannot easily subsist.

Observe. Make the adjectives of the same gender, number and case as the substantives.

gold, Gold, *n.* 2.
is, ist.
precious, kostbar.
of, unter.
metal, Metall, *n.* 3. (*Dat.*)
and yet not, und doch nicht.
to be preferred, vorzuziehn.
useful, nützlich.
iron, Eisen, *n.* 1.
English, englisch.
tin, Zinn, *n.* 2.
alabaster, Alabaster, *m.* 1.
white, weiß.
stone, Stein, *m.* 2.
Frederic, Friederich.
second, zweite.

was, war.
great, groß.
warrior, Krieger, *m.* 1.
polite, höflich.
man, *Mann, *m.* 5.
has not always, hat nicht immer.
worth, Werth, *m.* 2.
which, den or welchen.
honest, ehrlich.
picture, Gemählde, *n.* 1.
hangs, hängt.
in the, im.
false, falsch.
light, Licht, *n.* 5.
Scipio, Scipio.
possessed, besaß.
all, alle.
virtue, Tugend, *f.* 3.
which, die.
commander, Feldherr, *m.* 3.
we have not, wir haben nicht.
equal, gleich.
talent, Talent, *n.* 2.
talent, Anlage, *f.* 3.
mechanical, mechanisch.
labor, Arbeit, *f.* 3.
for the, zur.
poetry, Dichtkunst.
and the like, und so weiter.
earth, Erde, *f.* 3.
high, *hoch.
mountains, Berg, *m.* 2.
deep, tief.
valley, *Thal, *n.* 5.
shady, schattig.
wood, *Wald, *n.* 5.
cave, Höhle, *f.* 3.
mining, Grubenbau or Bergbau, *m.* 2.
dangerous, gefährlich.
troublesome, mühsam.
expensive, kostspielig.
business, Geschäft, *n.* 2.
without, ohne.
which, welches.
however, doch.
human, menschlich.
society, Gesellschaft, *f.* 3.
in these days, in diesen Tagen.
cannot easily subsist, nicht wohl bestehen kann.

FOURTH LESSON.

The father is more discreet than the son.

The cedar is higher than the willow.

The oak yields us the hardest wood, and is said to attain (*to*) the greatest age of all trees.

God is the most powerful being: therefore he can humble the most exalted man, and make the weakest into the strongest.

Iceland is one of the coldest countries, and those regions are the hottest, which lie under the equator.

The petitions of the poorest citizens ought to be heard.

The oldest persons do not remember such a severe frost.

The longer the better.

This is my youngest son.

That is the tamest bird.

He is the proudest man,

He has the strongest reasons.

father, *Vater, *m.* 1.
discreet, *klug.
than, als.
son, *Sohn, *m.* 2.
cedar, Zeder, *f.* 3.
willow, Weide, *f.* 3.
oak, *Eichbaum, *m.* 2.
yields, liefert.
us, uns.
hard, *hart.
wood, *Holz, *n.* 5.
and is said, und soll.
great, *hoch.
age, Alter, *n.* 1.
of, unter.
all, allen.
tree, *Baum, *m.* 2. *(Dat.)*
to attain to, erreichen.
powerful, mächtig.
being, Wesen.
therefore he can, daher kann er.
exalted, erhaben.
man, Mensch, *m.* 3.
humble, erniedrigen.
weak, *schwach.
into, zum.
strong, *stark.
to make, machen.
Iceland, Island.
cold, kalt.
country, *Land, *n.* 5.
region, Gegend, *f.* 3.
are, sind.
hot, heiß.
which, welche.
under the equator, unter dem Aequator.
lie, liegen.
petition, Bitte, *f.* 3.
poor, *arm.
citizen, Bürger, *m.* 1.
ought to be heard, sollten gehört werden.
old, *alt.
person, Person, *f.* 3.
do remember, erinnern sich.
such a, ein solcher.
severe, *stark.
frost, Frost, *m.* 2.
the, je.
long, *lang.
the, je.
good, gut.
this. dieß.
my, mein.
young, *jung.
that, das.
tame, zahm.
bird, *Vogel, *m.* 1.
he is, er ist.
proud, stolz.
he has, er hat.
strong, *stark.
reason, *Grund, *m.* 2.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ III. The numbers are divided into cardinal, ordinal, proportional, distributive, and collective.

1. The cardinal numbers are as follows:

(Null or Zero, nothing.)
Ein or eins, one.
Zwei or zwey, two.
Drei or drey, three.
Vier, four.
Fünf, five.
Sechs, six.
Sieben, seven.
Acht, eight.
Neun, nine.
Zehen or zehn, ten.
Eilf, eleven.
Zwölf, twelve.
Dreizehn, thirteen.
Vierzehn, fourteen.
Funfzehn, fifteen.

Sechzehn, sixteen.
Siebenzehn, seventeen.
Achtzehn, eighteen.
Neunzehn, nineteen.
Zwanzig, twenty.
Ein und Zwanzig, one and twenty.
Zwei und zwanzig, two and twenty, &c.
Dreißig, thirty.
Ein und dreißig, one and thirty, &c.
Vierzig, forty, &c.
Funfzig, fifty, &c.
Sechzig, sixty, &c.
Siebenzig, seventy, &c.
Achtzig, eighty, &c.
Neunzig, ninety, &c.
Hundert, a hundred.
Hundert und ein or eins, a hundred and one.
Hundert und zwei, a hundred and two, &c.
Zwei hundert, two hundred, &c.
Tausend, a thousand.
Zehn tausend, ten thousand.
Eine Million, one million.
Zwei Millionen, two millions.
Drei Millionen, &c.
Ein tausend acht hundert und vier und zwanzig, 1824.

Some of the cardinal numbers are declinable, when put before substantives, as: ein, eine, ein, one; which is declined like the article ein, a: this numeral may be declined with the definite article before it; as, *Nom.* der eine, die eine, das eine, the one; *Gen.* des einen, der einen, des einen, of the one, &c.; and einer, eine, eines or eins, is declined like der, die, das. * Zwei and Drei, make zweier and dreier, in the genitive, zweien and dreien in the dative: most of the other numerals are declined in the dative only with en, as: vieren, fünfen, &c.

Observations on the cardinal Numbers.

1. Ein is added to the noun; as, ein Mann, *one man*; eine Frau, *one woman*; and in order to distinguish it from the article, it is pronounced with a stronger accent. Einer is used when the noun is understood; as, hier ist einer, *here is one*; (that is one man, or one hat understood) &c.; hier ist eine, *here is one*, (that is one woman) &c. Einmal eins ist eins, *once one is one*. Haben sie ein Messer, *have you a knife*; hier ist eines, *here is one*, (that is one knife.)

2. The numeral adjectives are converted into substantives, by the addition of er, inn or in; as, ein Funfziger, *a man of fifty*; eine Dreißigerin, *a woman of thirty*.

* The cardinal number zwei, *two*, admits of three genders, but is seldom used in modern German; as, *Mas.* zween, *Fem.* zwo, *Neut.* zwei or zwey, *two*.

The ordinal numbers are formed by adding te to the cardinal, except der erſte, *the first*; der dritte, *the third*; but after the number nineteen ſte is added, as:

Der erſte, the first.
Der zweite, the second.
Der dritte, the third.
Der vierte, the fourth.
Der fünfte, the fifth.
Der ſechſte, the sixth.
Der ſiebente, the seventh.
Der achte, the eighth.
Der neunte, the ninth.
Der zehnte, the tenth.
Der elfte or eilfte, the eleventh.
Der zwölfte, the twelfth.
Der dreizehnte, the thirteenth.
Der vierzehnte, the fourteenth.
Der fünfzehnte, the fifteenth.
Der ſechzehnte, the sixteenth.
Der ſiebenzehnte, the seventeenth.
Der achtzehnte, the eighteenth.
Der neunzehnte, the nineteenth.
Der zwanzigſte, the twentieth.
Der ein und zwanzigſte, the one and twentieth.
Der zwei und zwanzigſte, the two and twentieth.
Der drei und zwanzigſte, the three and twentieth.
Der dreißigſte, the thirtieth.
Der ein und dreißigſte, the one &c.
Der vierzigſte, the fortieth.
Der funfzigſte, the fiftieth
Der ſechzigſte, the sixtieth.
Der ſiebenzigſte or ſiebzigſte, the seventieth.
Der achzigſte, the eightieth.
Der neunzigſte, the ninetieth.
Der hundertſte, the hundredth.
Der zwei hundertſte, the two hundredth.
Der drei hundertſte, the three &c.
Der tauſendſte, the thousandth.
Der zwei tauſendſte, the two thousandth.
Der drei tauſendſte, the three &c.

In compound numbers, the last only assumes the shape of an ordinal; as, der tauſend acht hundert und vier und zwanzigſte, the one thousand eight hundred and twenty fourth.

These adjectives may be declined in all forms; 1st with the definite article, as:

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N.	Der zweite,	die zweite,	das zweite, the second.
G.	Des zweiten,	der zweiten,	des zweiten, of the second, &c.

Der andere, *the other*, is used as synonymous with der zweite, where there are only two persons or things spoken of.

2. With the indefinite article, as:

N. Ein zweiter,	eine zweite,	ein zweites,	a second.
G. eines zweiten,	einer zweiten,	eines zweiten,	of a second, &c.

The Germans always say ein und zwanzigſte, *one and twentieth*; zwei und dreißigſte, *two and thirtieth*, and the like; but never as in English, zwanzig erſte, *twenty first*; dreißig zweite, *thirty second*, &c.

Partitive and fractional numbers are formed by a composition of the ordinal numbers, with various words or letters.

1st. With halb, thus;

Anderthalb (for zweitehalb,) one and a half.*
Drittehalb, two and a half.
Viertehalb, three and a half.
Fünftehalb, four and a half.
Sechſtehalb, five and a half.
Siebentehalb or ſiebtehalb, six and a half.
Zehntehalb, nine and a half, &c.

Examples. Vor anderthalb Jahren, *a year and a half ago*; in drittehalb Stunden, *in two hours and a half*; but in speaking of the hour of the day, the Germans say halb eins, *half past twelve*; halb zwei, *half past one*, &c.

2nd. With theil, as;

Das Drittheil, the third or the third part.
Das Viertheil, the quarter or fourth part.
Das Fünftheil, the fifth or fifth part.
Das Viertheil Hundert, or das Virtel Hundert, the quarter of a hundred, &c.

Similar modes of expression are derived from the ordinals, by adding l to the nominative, making the last syllable tel, which is only a contraction of theil; as, from der dritte, *the*

---

* This mode of compounding seldom exceeds zwölftehalb, *eleven and a half.*

third, is formed ein Drittel, *a third part*, or *one third*; from der vierte, ein Viertel, *a fourth part*, or *quarter*. In the same manner,

Ein Fünftel, a fifth, or one fifth.
Ein Sechſtel, $\frac{1}{6}$th.
Ein Zehntel, $\frac{1}{10}$th.
Ein Zwanzigſtel, $\frac{1}{20}$th. &c. So in the plural, as;
Zwei Drittel, two thirds.
Drei Viertel, $\frac{3}{4}$ths.
Vier Siebentel, $\frac{4}{7}$ths. &c. These are regarded as substantives, and of the neuter gender; but theil, when used separately, is masculine.

2. Numerals of proportion and distribution are:

Einfach or einfältig, single.
Zweifach or zweifältig, double.
Dreifach or dreifältig, treble.
Vierfach or vierfältig, fourfold, &c.
Hundertfach, centuple, or a hundred fold.
Tauſendfach, a thousandfold, &c.

Observe. The above numeral adjectives, in fach or fältig may be regularly declined.

Die Hälfte, the half.
*Einmal, once.
Zweimal, twice.
Dreimal, thrice, or three times.
Viermal, four times, &c.
Erſtlich or erſtens, firstly, or in the first place.
Zweitens, or zum andern, secondly.
Drittens, or zum dritten, thirdly.
Viertens, or zum vierten, fourthly, &c.
Einzeln, singly, or ein und ein, one by one.
Zwei und zwei, two and two, or two by two.

* Some of these words are numeral adverbs, but are inserted here on account of their close connexion with adjectives.

Drei und drei, three and three, &c.
Einerlei, of one sort or the same.
Zweierlei, of two sorts, or two different things, &c.
Paarweiſe, in pairs, &c.

3. The collective numbers are:

Ein Paar, a pair, few, or couple.
Ein Dutzend, a dozen.
Eine Mandel, a fifteen, &c.

The English word *time*, or *times*, is to be expressed by the termination *mal, if in composition with other words; as,

Dieſesmal, this time.	Einandermal, another time.
Manchmal, many a time.	Vielmal, many times.
Oftmal, often times.	Wie vielmal, how many times;

and also in multiplying; as, zwei mal zwei ſind vier, twice two are four, (that is literally two times two are four); drei mal drei ſind neun, three times three are nine, &c.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Numerals, &c.

FIRST LESSON.

One and one make two.

Ten times ten make a hundred.

Six thousand six hundred and sixty-six men composed a legion with the Romans.

It is said that in order to be able to write (*the*) Chinese, the common man has occasion to know eighty thousand letters or characters, but the learned (*man*) a hundred and sixty thousand.

Since the birth of Christ, a thousand eight hundred and twenty four years have elapsed.

Germany was divided into ten circles.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus in the fifteenth century.

(*The*) spring commences the twenty-first of March, (*the*) summer the twenty-first of June, (*the*) autumn the twenty-first of September, and (*the*) winter the twenty-first of December.

---

* The word mal in old German signified *time* or *times*.

December is the twelfth month in the year.

Sunday (*the Sunday*) is the first day in the week, (*the*) Monday the second, (*the*) Tuesday the third, (*the*) Wednesday the fourth, (*the*) Thursday the fifth, (*the*) Friday the sixth, (*the*) Saturday the seventh and last.

Vienna the capital of Austria, lies in the sixteenth degree of longitude and forty-eighth degree of latitude.

make, macht.
times, mal.
men, Männer, *m.* 5.
composed with the Romans a legion, machten bei den Römern eine Legion aus.
it is said, man sagt.
that in order to be able to write Chinese, daß um chinesisch schreiben zu können.
common, gemein.
letter, Buchstab, *m.* 3.
to know, kennen.
occasion has, nöthig habe.
but, aber.
learned, gelehrt.
since, seit.
Christ, Christus.
(Vide observations on the declension of proper names.)
birth, Geburt, *f.* 3.
have, sind.
year, Jahr, n. 2.
elapsed, verflossen.
Germany, Deutschland.
was, war.
into, in.
circle, Kreis, *m.* 2.
divided, getheilt.
America, Amerika.
was, wurde.
by, von.
Christopher Columbus. Christoph Colomb.
century, Jahrhundert.
discovered, entdeckt.
spring, Frühling, *m.* 2.
commences, fängt an.
March, März, *m.* 2.
summer, Sommer, *m.* 1.
June, Junius, *m.* (Juni, of June.)
autumn, Herbst, *m.* 2.
September, September, *m.* 1.
winter, Winter, *m.* 1.
December, December, *m.* 1.
in the, im.
Sunday, Sonntag, *m.* 2.
Monday, Montag, *m.* 2.
Tuesday, Dienstag, *m.* 2.
Wednesday, Mittwoche, *f.* 3.
Thursday, Donnerstag, *m.* 2.
Friday, Freitag, *m.* 2.
Saturday, Sonnabend, *m.* 2.
last, letzte.
Vienna, Wien.
capital, Hauptstadt, *f.* 2.
of, von.
Austria, Oestreich.
lies, liegt.
longitude, Länge, *f.* 3.
latitude, Breite, *f.* 3.

SECOND LESSON.

Ferdinand Magellan was the first who sailed round the world, in the year one thousand five hundred and nineteen; his ship came back again, after a voyage of three years and twenty-nine days.

The polar circles are twenty-three degrees and a half (*twenty-three and a half degrees*) distant from each pole.

In regard to the warmth and cold on the earth, five zones have been admitted, (*one has admitted in regard upon the warmth, &c.*)

About two thousand stars have been reckoned visible to the naked eye, (*one has about two thousand visible stars with naked eyes reckoned.*)

We must first learn to count, then to add, thirdly to subtract, fourthly to multiply, and fifthly to divide.

who, der.
round, um.
world, Welt, *f.* 3. *(Acc.)*
sailed, ſchiffte.
in the, im.
year, Jahr, *n.* 2.
ship, Schiff, *n.* 2.
came back again, kam wieder zurück.
after, nach.
voyage, Reiſe, *f.* 3. *(Dat.)*
of, von.
polar circle, Polar Zirkel, *m.* 1.
degree, Grad, *m.* 2. *(Sing.)*
from each, von jedem.
pole, Pol, *m.* 2.
distant, entfernt.
one has, man hat.
in regard to, in Rückſicht auf, *f.* 3.
warmth, Wärme, *f.* 3.
cold, Kälte, *f.* 3.
on, auf.
earth, Erdboden, *m.* 1.
zone, Zone, *f.* 3.
admitted, angenommen.
with, mit.
naked, bloß.
eye, Auge, *m.* 3.
about, etwa, or ungefähr.
visible, ſichtbar.
star, Stern, *n.* 2.
reckoned, gezählt.
we must, man muß.
to count, zählen.
learn, lernen.
then, dann.
to add, addiren.
to subtract, ſubtrahiren.
to multiply, multipliciren.
to divide, dividiren.

CHAP. V.

PRONOUNS, Fürwörter.

There are six kinds of pronouns, viz. personal, possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, and indefinite.

In German as in English there are five personal pronouns, viz. ich, *I*; du, *thou*; er, *he*; ſie, *she*; es, *it*; with their plurals, wir, *we*; ihr, *you*; ſie, *they*.

§ I. The personal pronouns are declined as follows:

First Person.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Ich, I.	*N.* Wir, we.
G. Meiner, of me.	*G.* Unſer, of us.
D. Mir, to me.	*D.* Uns, to us.
A. Mich, me.	*A.* Uns, us.

Second Person.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Du, thou.	*N.* Ihr, you.
G. Deiner, of thee.	*G.* Euer, of you.
D. Dir, to thee.	*D.* Euch, to you.
A. Dich, thee.	*A.* Euch, you.

Third Person.

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Er, he.	ſie, she.	es, it.
G. Seiner, of him.	ihrer, of her.	ſeiner, of it.
D. Ihm, to him.	ihr, to her.	ihm, to it.
A. Ihn, him.	ſie, her.	es, it.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Sie, they, (or Sie, *you.*)
G. Ihrer, of them, (or Ihrer, *of your.*)
D. Ihnen, to them, (or Ihnen, *to you.*)
A. Sie, them, (or Sie, *you.*)

The personal pronouns, when employed as reflectives, are declined in the following manner:

First Person.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	*N.* .....
G. Meiner (mein,) of myself.	*G.* Unſer, of ourselves.
D. Mir, to myself.	*D.* Uns, to ourselves.
A. Mich, myself.	*A.* Uns, ourselves.

Second Person.

Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	*N.* .....
G. Deiner (dein,) of thyself.	*G.* Euer, of yourselves.
D. Dir, to thyself.	*D.* Euch, to yourselves.
A. Dich, thyself.	*A.* Euch, yourselves.

Third Person.

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N.	.....	.....
G. Seiner (ſein,) of himself.	ihrer (ihr) of herself.	ſeiner (ſein,) of itself.
D. Sich, to himself.	ſich, to herself.	ſich, to itself.
A. Sich, himself.	ſich, herself.	ſich, itself.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. .....

G. Ihrer, of themselves.

D. Sich, to themselves.

**A.* Sich, themselves.

§ II. *Possessive Pronouns.*

Possessive pronouns are either conjunctive, or absolute. The conjunctive possessive pronouns are as follow:

Singular.			*Plural.*
Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas. Fem. and Neut.*
Mein,	meine,	mein,	meine, my.
Dein,	deine,	dein,	deine, thy.
Sein,	ſeine,	ſein,	ſeine, his, its.
Ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	ihre, her.
Unſer,	unſere,	unſer,	unſere, our.
Euer,	euere or eure,	euer,	euere, your.
Ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	ihre, their.
Ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	ihre, your.

Observe. These pronouns are declined like the article ein, *(a,)* in the singular and like the adjective gute, *(good,)* in the plural; as,

* These pronouns are used with reflective verbs, to express what we do to ourselves; examples, ich kleide mich, I dress myself; du liebſt dich, thou lovest thyself; er liebt ſich, he loves himself, &c.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*for the three Gend.*
N. Mein,	meine,	mein,	meine, my.
G. Meines,	meiner,	meines,	meiner, of my.
D. Meinem,	meiner,	meinem,	meinen, to my.
A. Meinen,	meine,	mein,	meine, my.

These possessive pronouns are called conjunctive, because they are joined to substantives, with which they must agree, in gender, number, and case. They are declined as follow.

Mein, with a masculine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Mein Vater, my father.	*N.* Meine Väter, my fathers.
G. Meines Vaters, of my father.	*G.* Meiner Väter, of my fathers.
D. Meinem Vater, to my father.	*D.* Meinen Vätern, to my fathers.
A. Meinen Vater, my father.	*A.* Meine Väter, my fathers.

Mein, with a feminine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Meine Mutter, my mother.	*N.* Meine Mütter, my mothers.
G. Meiner Mutter, of my mother.	*G.* Meiner Mütter, of my mothers.
D. Meiner Mutter, to my mother.	*D.* Meinen Müttern, to my mothers.
A. Meine Mutter, my mother.	*A.* Meine Mütter, my mothers.

Mein, with a neuter noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Mein Buch, my book.	*N.* Meine Bücher, my books.
G. Meines Buches, of my book.	*G.* Meiner Bücher, of my books.
D. Meinem Buche, to my book.	*D.* Meinen Büchern, to my books.
A. Mein Buch, my book.	*A.* Meine Bücher, my books.

So decline:

Meine Baſe, *f.* my aunt or cousin.
Sein Vater, *m.* his father.
Deine Mutter, *f.* thy mother.
Seine Mutter, *f.* his mother.
Ihre Mutter, *f.* her mother.
Ihre Mutter, *f.* your mother.
Ihr Vater, *m.* their father.
Ihr Kind, *n.* her child.
Ihr Kind, *n.* your child.
Sein Kind, *n.* his child.
Ihr Vetter, their *male* cousin.
Ihre Couſine, *f.* their *female* cousin.
*Euer Verwandter, *m.* your *male* relation.
Eure Verwandtin, *f.* your *female* relation.
Unſer Bruder, *m.* our brother.
Mein Vetter, *m.* my cousin.
Unſere Schweſter, *f.* our sister.
Ihre Nichte, *f.* their niece.
Ihr Neffe, *m.* their nephew.
Sein Nachbar, *m.* his neighbour.
Seine Nachbarin, *f.* his *female* neighbour.
Ihr Nachbar, *m.* her neighbour.
Ihre Nachbarin, *f.* her neighbour.
Unſer Vaterland, *n.* our country.
Euer Buch, *n.* your book.
Ihr Herz, *n.* your heart.
Ihr Glück, *n.* their fortune.
Ihr Glück, *n.* her fortune.

Possessive Pronouns Absolute.

They are called absolute possessive pronouns, because they stand for some noun, which precedes them, expressed or understood, and, with which they must agree in gender, number and case. They are declined like der gute, in the following manner:

Singular.

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N.	Der meinige,	die meinige,	das meinige, mine.
G.	Des meinigen,	der meinigen,	des meinigen, of mine.
D.	Dem meinigen,	der meinigen,	dem meinigen, to mine.
A.	Den meinigen,	die meinige,	das meinige, mine.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die meinigen, mine.
G. Der meinigen, of mine.
D. Den meinigen, to mine.
A. Die meinigen, mine.

---

* The pronoun, ihr, *m.* ihre, *f.* ihr, *n.* ihre, (*Pl.*) *her, your, their,* agree with the possessor, but the termination must agree with the thing possessed. Euer, is seldom used except to inferiors; and Ihr, when it is used for *your,* is written with a capital.

So decline the following:

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Der deinige,	die deinige,	das deinige, thine.
Der ſeinige,	die ſeinige,	das ſeinige, his, its.
Der ihrige,	die ihrige,	das ihrige, hers.
Der unſrige,	die unſrige,	das unſrige, ours.
Der eurige,	die eurige,	das eurige, yours.
Der ihrige,	die ihrige,	das ihrige, theirs.
Der Ihrige,	die Ihrige,	das Ihrige, yours.

Plural.

Die deinigen, thine.
Die ſeinigen, his, its.
Die ihrigen, hers.
Die unſrigen, ours.
Die eurigen, yours.
Die ihrigen, theirs.
Die Ihrigen, yours.

The substantive Hut, *hat*, with the conjunctive possessive pronoun before, and the absolute possessive pronoun, der meinige, after, is thus declined:

N. Sein Hut und der meinige, his hat and mine.
G. Seines Hutes und des meinigen, of his hat and mine.
D. Seinem Hute und dem meinigen, to his hat and mine.
A. Seinen Hut und den meinigen, his hat and mine.

Plural.

N. Seine Hüte und die meinigen, his hats and mine.
G. Seiner Hüte und der meinigen, of his hats and mine.
D. Seinen Hüten und den meinigen, to his hats and mine.
A. Seine Hüte und die meinigen, his hats and mine.

So decline:

Mein Freund und der ſeinige, my friend and his.
Seine Freundin und die meinige, his *female* friend and mine.
Ihr Freund und der *Ihrige, her friend and yours.

* When Ihr and Ihrige are employed for the second person *your*, they are always written with a capital: Ihr and Ihrige, have three different meanings and are Englished by *her*, *your*, *their*. Euer and eurige, are seldom used, except to servants and people of low condition.

Ihr Vater und der ihrige, your father and hers.
Ihr Bruder und der deinige, their brother and thine.
Mein Bruder und der eurige, my brother and yours.
Meine Schweſter und die ſeinige, my sister and his.
Seine Schweſter und die ihrige, his sister and hers.
Ihre Mutter und die meinige, her mother and mine.
Ihre Mutter und die ihrige, your mother and hers.
Mein Buch und das ſeinige, my book and his.
Sein Vaterland und das Ihrige, his country and yours.
Unſer Vaterland und das ihrige, our country and theirs.
Ihr Vaterland und das unſrige, their country and ours.

The Germans sometimes make use of the following possessive pronouns absolute, instead of the preceding.

Singular.			*Plural*
Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*for the three Genders.*
Meiner,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.
Deiner,	deine,	deines,	deine, thine.
Seiner,	ſeine,	ſeines,	ſeine, his, its.
Ihrer,	ihre,	ihres,	ihre, hers.
Unſer,	unſere,	unſeres,	unſere, ours.
Eurer,	eure,	eures,	eure, yours.
Ihrer,	ihre,	ihres,	ihre, theirs.
		or,	

Der meine, die meine, das meine, die meine, mine.
Der deine, &c. They correspond to the French pronouns, *le mien, le tien*, &c.

These pronouns like the former, are used without a noun, when the same is understood; as, das iſt mein Hut, that is my hat; *no*, it is mine, nein, es iſt meiner, or der meine, or der meinige. The latter mode of expression is most general, *viz.* es iſt der meinige, it is mine.

The pronouns, meiner, *mine*; deiner, *thine*; &c. are declined like guter, gute, gutes; as,

Singular.			*Plural*
Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*for the three Genders.*
N. Meiner,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.
G. Meines,	meiner,	meines,	meiner, of mine.
D. Meinem,	meiner,	meinem,	meinen, to mine.
A. Meinen,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.

So decline, deiner, thine; ſeiner, his, its, &c.

§ III. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

The demonstrative pronouns are those which point out the persons, or things spoken of. They are declined in the following manner; like guter, or the article der.

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N. Dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſes or dieß, this.
G. Dieſes,	dieſer,	dieſes, of this.
D. Dieſem,	dieſer,	dieſem, to this.
A. Dieſen,	dieſe,	dieſes, this.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Dieſe, these.
G. Dieſer, of these.
D. Dieſen, to these.
A. Dieſe, these.

So decline the following:

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*	*Plural.*
Jener,	jene,	jenes, that;	jene, those.
Selbiger,	ſelbige,	ſelbiges,	ſelbige, the same.
Solcher,	ſolche,	ſolches,	ſolche, such.

Dieſer, with a masculine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Dieſer Knabe, this boy.	*N.* Dieſe Knaben, these boys.
G. Dieſes Knaben, of this boy.	*G.* Dieſer Knaben, of these boys.
D. Dieſem Knaben, to this boy.	*D.* Dieſen Knaben, to these boys.
A. Dieſen Knaben, this boy.	*A.* Dieſe Knaben, these boys.

Dieſer, with a feminine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Dieſe Magd, this (*maid*) servant.	*N.* Dieſe Mägde, these servants.
G. Dieſer Magd, of this servant.	*G.* Dieſer Mägde, of these servants.
D. Dieſer Magd, to this servant.	*D.* Dieſen Mägden, to these servants.
A. Dieſe Magd, this servant.	*A.* Dieſe Mägde, these servants.

Dieſer, with a neuter noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Dieſes Kind, this child.	*N.* Dieſe Kinder, these children.
G. Dieſes Kindes, of this child.	*G.* Dieſer Kinder, of these children.
D. Dieſem Kinde, to this child.	*D.* Dieſen Kindern, to these children.
A. Dieſes Kind, this child.	*A.* Dieſe Kinder, these children.

So decline:

Jenes Mädchen, *n.* that girl.	Solche Perſon, *f.* such a person.
Jener Bruder, *m.* that brother.	Jenes Schiff, *n.* that ship.
Dieſes Weib, *n.* this woman.	Dieſes Thor, *n.* this gate.
Dieſe Frau, *f.* this woman or wife.	Jene Frucht, *f.* that fruit.
	Solches Wetter, *n.* such weather.

The demonstrative pronoun der, *that*, is thus declined, like the article der, *the*; except in the genitive case.

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N. Der,	die,	das, that.
G. Deß, or deſſen,	der, or deren,	deß, or deſſen, of that.
D. Dem,	der,	dem, to that.
A. Den,	die,	das, that.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die, those.
G. Derer, or deren, of those.
D. Denen, to those.
A. Die, those.

The pronoun derjenige, *he that*, is thus declined, like der meinige.

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Derjenige,	diejenige,	dasjenige, he, she, it or that.
G. Desjenigen,	derjenigen,	desjenigen, of him, her, it or that.
D. Demjenigen,	derjenigen,	denjenigen, to him, her, it or that.
A. Denjenigen,	diejenige,	dasjenige, him, her, it or that.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Diejenigen, they, or those.
G. Derjenigen, of them, or of those.
D. Denjenigen, to them, or to those.
A. Diejenigen, them, or those.

So decline:

Mas.	*Fem:*	*Neut:*	*Plural.*
Derſelbe,	dieſelbe,	daſſelbe,	dieſelben, the same, or he, she, it.
derſelbige,	dieſelbige,	daſſelbige,	dieſelbigen, the &c.

*Derjenige, with a masculine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Derjenige Baum, that tree.	*N.* Diejenigen Bäume, those trees.
G. Desjenigen Baumes, of that tree.	*G.* Derjenigen Bäume, of those trees.
D. Demjenigen Baume, to that tree.	*D.* Denjenigen Bäumen, to those trees.
A. Denjenigen Baum, that tree.	*A.* Diejenigen Bäume, those trees.

Derjenige, with a feminine noun, is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Diejenige Wand, that wall.	*N.* Diejenigen Wände, those walls.
G. Derjenigen Wand, of that wall.	*G.* Derjenigen Wände, of those walls.
D. Derjenigen Wand, to that wall.	*D.* Denjenigen Wänden, to those walls.
A. Diejenige Wand, that wall.	*A.* Diejenigen Wände, those walls.

* Derjenige is seldom used in conjunction with nouns; it answers to the French celui, *that*; as, die Kurſche des Königs, und diejenige (or die) der Königin, la couronne du roi et celui de la reine, the crown of the king, and *that* of the queen. Der and derjenige are sometimes used as relatives.

Derjenige, with a neuter noun is thus declined:

Sing.	*Plural.*
N. Dasjenige Kreutz, that cross.	*N.* Diejenigen Kreutze, those crosses.
G. Desjenigen Kreutzes, of that cross.	*G.* Derjenigen Kreutze, of those crosses.
D. Demjenigen Kreutze, to that cross.	*D.* Denjenigen Kreutzen, to those crosses.
A. Dasjenige Kreutz, that cross.	*A.* Diejenigen Kreutze, those crosses.

So decline the following:

Derselbe Mann, *m.* the same man.	Dieselbe Tugend, *f.* the same virtue.
Derjenige Mann, *m.* that man.	Dasjenige Buch, *n.* that book.
Diejenige Tugend, *f.* that virtue.	Dasselbe Buch, *n.* the same book.

Observe. There are some invariable pronouns, which are formed by adding selbst, selbsten, or selber, after any of the personal pronouns, &c.; as,

Ich selbst, *or* selbsten, *or* selber, I myself,
Er selbst, ... he himself.
Wir selbst, ... we ourselves.
Gott selbst, ... God himself, &c.

§ IV. *Of Relative Pronouns.*

Relative pronouns relate to some word or phrase going before, which word or phrase is called the antecedent.

They are declined in the following manner:

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N. Der,	die,	das, who, which, or that.
G. Dessen, deß,	deren, der,	dessen, deß, whose, of whom, or of which.
D. Dem,	der,	dem, to whom, or to which.
A. Den,	die,	das, whom, or which.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die, who, which, or that.
G. Deren, whose, of whom, or of which.
D. Denen, den, to whom, or to which.
A. Die, whom, or which.

Welcher, *who*, or *which*, is thus declined:

Singular.

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N.	Welcher,	welche,	welches, who, which, or that.
G.	Welches,	welcher,	welches, of whom, or of which.
D.	Welchem,	welcher,	welchem, to whom, or to which.
A.	Welchen,	welche,	welches, whom, or which.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Welche, who, which, or that.
G. Welcher, of whom, or of which.
D. Welchen, to whom, or to which.
A. Welche, whom, or which.

Wer, *who*; and was, *what*, as relatives, are thus declined:

Sing. and Plural.

Mas. Fem. and Neuter.	*Neuter.*
N. Wer, who, whoever, which, he who, &c.	*N.* Was, what.
G. Weſſen, weß, of whom, of whomsoever.	*G.* Weſſen, weß, of what.
D. Wem, to whom, to whomsoever.	*D.* Wem, to what.
A. Wen, whom, whomsoever.	*A.* Was, what.

Observe: Wer and was, are sometimes relative and sometimes interrogative pronouns. So, *which*, is indeclinable.

Wer, is sometimes Englished by *he who*, as, wer mich liebt, der iſt mein Freund, he who loves me, is my friend. Was, is sometimes Englished by *that which*; as, was ich geſagt habe, iſt wahr, *that which*, or *what* I have said, is true.

§ V. *Of Interrogative Pronouns.*

Interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions.

The interrogative pronouns are, wer? *who?* was? *what!* welcher? *which?* was für? *what?* or was für ein? *what sort of?* They are declined in the following manner:

Singular and Plural.

Mas. Fem. and Neut.	*Neuter.*
N. Wer? who?	*N.* Was? what?
G. Weſſen? weß? whose? or of whom?	*G.* Von was, or wovon? of what?
D. Wem? to whom?	*D.* Zu was, or wozu? to what?
A. Wen? whom?	*A.* Was? what?

Welcher, *which*, though a relative pronoun, is frequently used as an interrogative; it is declined in the following manner:

	Singular.		*Plural*
Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*for the three Gend.*
N. Welcher?	welche?	welches?	welche? which?
G. Welches?	welcher?	welches?	welcher? of which?
D. Welchem?	welcher?	welchem?	welchen? to which?
A. Welchen?	welche?	welches?	welche? which?

Was für ein? what? or what sort of? is thus declined:

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Was für ein?	was für eine?	was für eins? what? or what sort of?
G. Was für eines?	was für einer?	was für eines? of what?
D. Was für einem?	was für einer?	was für einem? to what?
A. Was für einen?	was für eine?	was für eins? what?

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Was für? what? or what sort of?
No genitive.
D. Was für? to what?
A. Was für? what?

§ VI. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are so called, because they refer to things in an indefinite manner, some are numeral;

as, einer, *one*; keiner, *no one*, or *none*, &c.; others distributive; as, jeder, *each, every*, &c.

These pronouns are generally declined like adjectives. Keiner, *no one*, or *none*; is thus declined;

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N. Keiner,	keine,	keines, no one, or neither.
G. Keines,	keiner,	keines, of no one.
D. Keinem,	keiner,	keinem, to no one.
A. Keinen,	keine,	keines, no one.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Keine, none.
G. Keiner, of none.
D. Keinen, to none.
A. Keine, none.

Observe. kein, *no*, is declined like the article ein; as. *(M.)* kein, *(F.)* keine, *(N.)* kein, &c.

So decline the following, like keiner.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Mancher,	manche,	manches, many a one.
Solcher,	ſolche,	ſolches, such.
Einiger,	einige,	einiges, some, or any.
Einziger,	einzige,	einziges, only.
Jeder,	jede,	jedes, every, or each.
Jedweder,	jedwede,	jedwedes, every.
Keiner von beiden,	keine von beiden,	keines von beiden, neither.
*Einer von beiden,	eine von beiden,	eines von beiden, either,
Einer,	eine,	eines, a person, some one, or one.

* Einer von beiden, *either*; and einer, *some one*, or *one*, are indeclinable in the plural.

Plural for the three Genders.

Manche, many, many a one.
Solche, such.
Einige, some, or any.
Einzige, only.
Jede, every, or each.
Jedwede, every.
Keine von beiden, neither.

Beide, *both*, and alle, *all*, are thus declined in the plural number only.

Plural.

N. Beide, both.	*N.* *Alle, all, every.
G. Beider, of both.	*G.* Aller, of all.
D. Beiden, to both.	*D.* Allen, to all.
A. Beide, both.	*A.* Alle, all.

Some of these pronouns, may be declined as adjectives, with ein or der.

Ein jeder, *each*, is thus declined in the singular number only.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N. Ein jeder,	eine jede,	ein jedes, each, or every one.
G. Eines jeden,	einer jeden,	eines jeden, of each.
D. Einem jeden,	einer jeden,	einem jeden, to each.
A. Einen jeden,	eine jede,	ein jedes, each.

Der eine, *the one*, is thus declined:

Singular.

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
N. Der eine,	die eine,	das eine, the one.
G. Des einen,	der einen,	des einen, of the one.
D. Dem einen,	der einen,	dem einen, to the one.
A. Den einen,	die eine,	das eine, the one.

* Alle, when used without a noun, becomes alles.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die einen, the ones.
G. Der einen, of the ones.
D. Den einen, to the ones.
A. Die einen, the ones.

So decline:

Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Ein jedweder,	eine jedwede,	ein jedwedes, every.
Ein andrer,	eine andre.	ein andres, another.
Der andre,	die andre,	das andre, the other.
Ein einziger,	eine einzige,	ein einziges, an only one.
Der einzige,	die einzige,	das einzige, the only one.
Ein einiger,	eine einige,	ein einiges, an only one.
Der einige,	die einige,	das einige, the only one.
Ein jeglicher,	eine jegliche,	ein jegliches, any, every one.

The substantive pronouns, Jemand, *some*, or *any body*: Niemand, *nobody*; Jederman, *every body*: are declined as follow; in the singular only.

N. Jemand, some, or any body.
G. Jemandes, of some, or any body.
D. Jemandem, to some, or any body.
A. Jemanden, some, or any body.

N. Niemand, nobody.
G. Niemandes, of nobody.
D. Niemandem, to nobody.
A. Niemanden, nobody.

N. Jedermann, every body.
G. Jedermannes, of every body.
D. Jedermanne, to every body.
A. Jedermann, every body.

Man, *one*, *we*, *people*, *they*, &c.; like the French pronoun *on*, is used only in the third person singular, and is indeclinable.

---

* Jedweder, is generally used without the article, and is then declined like jeder, or keiner.

Recapitulatory Exercises on all the Pronouns.

FIRST LESSON.

Wir ſind Menſchen und wir ſind ſterblich.

Thoren, die ihr ſeyd, indem ihr hoffet, daß ihr ohne euch Mühe zu geben, gelehrt und weiſe werden könnet.

Socrates ſagte oft zu ſeinen Freunden: mein Leben iſt mir nicht ſo ſchätzbar als die Tugend.

Unſer Körper iſt hinfällig, aber unſre Seele wird ewig leben.

Mein Geſchmack iſt nicht der deinige, und dein Geſchmack iſt nicht der meinige; denn ich finde Vergnügung an Gemählden aus der Niederländiſchen Schule und du an Gemählden aus der Italiäniſchen.

Woher dieſer Unterſchied? da doch ſonſt meine Neigung mit der deinigen beinahe ganz übereinſtimmt.

Ein jeder ſchöpft aus der Quelle ſeiner Leidenſchaften, entweder ſein Glück oder Unglück.

Ich zweifle daß jemand die Menſchen beſſer gekannt habe als Horaz.

Jedes Land hat ſeine Gebräuche.

Die Schwachheit iſt ein Fehler, welchen man ſchwerlich verbeſſert.

Es gibt Fehler welche man ſorgfältig verbirgt.

ſterblich, mortal.
der Thor, the fool.
die ihr ſeyd, as you are.
indem ihr hoffet, to hope.
ohne zu geben, without giving.
euch, yourselves.
die Mühe, trouble.
können werden, can become.
gelehrt, learned.
weiſe, wise.
ſagte oft, often said.
zu, to.
der Freund, the friend.
das Leben, life.
iſt nicht ſo ſchätzbar, is not so valuable.
die Tugend, virtue.
der Körper, the body.
hinfällig, perishable.
aber, but.
die Seele, the soul.
wird ewig leben, will live for ever.
der Geſchmack, the taste.
finde Vergnügen an, am pleased with.
das Gemählde, picture.
aus, (out) of.

niederländiſch, Flemish.
die Schule, school.
italiäniſchen, Italian.
woher, whence.
der Unterſchied, the difference.
da doch, since.
ſonſt, otherwise.
die Neigung, inclination.
beinahe ganz übereinſtimmt, coincides almost entirely.
ſchöpft, draws.
entweder, either.
das Glück oder das Unglück, the good or ill fortune.
aus, from.
die Quelle, source.
die Leidenſchaft, passion.
zweifle, question.
daß, whether.
habe beſſer gekannt, had a greater knowledge of.
Horaz, Horace.
Land, country.
der Gebrauch, the custom.
die Schwachheit, weakness.
der Fehler, fault.
man ſchwerlich verbeſſert, is with great difficulty corrected.
Es giebt, there are.
man, we.
ſorgfältig, carefully.
verbirgt, conceals.

SECOND LESSON.

I know him. He knows them. She knows us. You know her. They know them. He gives it to them. We give it to him. She gives it to me. They give it to us. Tell it to him. He told it to them. We laugh at them. Take pity on (*of*) me. He is ashamed (*shames himself*) of thee. We remember (*ourselves of*) you. There are ten of us. There are six of them. Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. I ascribe it to myself. He was not master of himself. When thy days are dark, then thy false friends depart from thee, but thy true friends forsake thee not.

That is not thy friend, it is mine.
They gave it not to my friend, but to thine.
They gave it not on account of your desert, but of ours.
That is not thy lot but mine. I mean this house.
This is the man (*this man is it*) of whom I speak.
Thou must do this, but not leave that undone.
This is his own estate.
He does as those people of the torrid zone, who shoot arrows at the sun.
Who is the most estimable among men? The most virtuous and discreet man.
What (*which*) man can promise himself constant good fortune?
Which season is the pleasantest?

know, kenne, him, *(Acc.)*
knows, kennt.
you know, ihr kennet.
they—know, kennen.
gives, giebt.
give, geben.
tell, ſage.
told, ſagte.
laugh at, auslachen.
take pity, erbarmet euch.
ashamed, ſchämt.
remember, erinnern.
shalt, ſollſt.
neighbour, Nachbar.
as, als.
ascribe, ſchreibe—zu.
was, war.
of himself, von ſich.
when, wenn.
day, der Tag, *m.* 2.
dark, dunkel.
are, ſind.
then, dann.
depart, weichen—ab.
false, falſch.
friend, Freund, *m.* 2.
from, von.
thee, *(Dat.)* but, aber.
true, wahr.
forsake, verlaſſen.
that, daß.
gave, gaben.
on account of, um.
desert, Verdienſt, *m.* 2.
sake, Willen.
of, um.
lot, Loos, *n.* 2.
mean, meine.
speak, rede.
must, mußt.
this, *(Acc. Neut.)* dieß.
do, thun.
but, aber.
that, das.
not leave, nicht laſſen.
estate, Gut, *n.* 5.
does, macht es.
as, wie.
people, Volk, *n.* 5.
torrid, heiß.
zone, Zone, *f.* 3.
arrow, Pfeil, *m.* 2.
at, gegen.
sun, Sonne, *f.* 3.
to shoot, abſchießen.
estimable, ſchätzbar.
among, unter.
virtuous, tugendhaft.
discreet, vernünftig.
can, kann.
himself, *(Dat.)* constant, beſtändig.
happiness, Glück, *n.* 2.
promise, verſprechen.
season, Jahrzeit, *f.* 3.
pleasant, angenehm.

THIRD LESSON.

The Graces were goddesses; to whom men were indebted for refinement of manners, for beauty and elegance, all which (*which all*) were the effects of their power.

The Fates were called Parcæ; to them was assigned a spindle, upon which they spun the thread of life.

We cannot console ourselves for being deceived by our friends, and yet we are often contented to be so by ourselves.

Apply thyself to virtue, for this will never forsake thee.

Whoever is not diligent in his youth, will not know how to employ himself in his manhood.

Who did (*has done*) that? his brother or your sister. His sister and mine.

Which house do you mean?

For what book are you looking?

Who will get the prize? my cousin or his.

(*The*) Magistrates must be just towards every one, even towards their enemies.

Put these coins again in their places.

I know no one who is so happy as he.

We must give to every one his own.

graces, Grazie, *f.* 3.
goddess, Göttin, *f.* 3.
men were indebted for, verdankte man.
refinement, Verfeinerung, *f.* 3.
manner, Sitte, *f.* 3.
beauty, Schönheit, *f.* 3.
elegance, Anstand, *m.* 2.
which all, welches alles.
were, waren.
effect, Wirkung, *f.* 3.
of, von.
power, *Macht, *f.* 2.
fate, Schicksal, *n.* 2.
Parcæ, Parzen.
were assigned, legte man bei.
spindle, Spinnrocken, *m.* 1.
upon, auf, which, (*Dat. Masc.*)
thread, *Faden, *m.* 1.
life, Leben, *n.* 1.
spun, spannen.
we can, wir können.
ourselves, uns.
not console, nicht trösten.
by, von.
our, unser, (*Dat.*)
enemy, Feind, *m.* 2.
for being deceived, betrogen zu seyn.
and yet, und doch.
we are, sind wir.
contented, zufrieden.
so, es.
by ourselves, durch uns selbst.
to be, zu seyn.
apply, befleißige.
virtue, Tugend, *f.* 3.
this, (*Fem.*) will, wird.
thee, dir.
never, nie.
forsake, verlassen.
is not, nicht—ist.
in, in; his. (*Fem. Dat.*)
youth, Jugend, *f.* 3.
will not know, wird nicht wissen.
manhood, das männliche Alter. (*Dat.*)
how to employ himself, wie sich zu beschäftigen.
has, hat.
that, das.
done, gethan.
house, *Haus, *n.* 5.
do you mean, meinen Sie.
are you looking for, suchen Sie.
will, wird.
prize, Preis, *m.* 2.
get, davon tragen.
cousin, Vetter, *m.* 1.
magistrate, Obrigkeit, *f.* 3.
must, muß.
towards, gegen.
every one, jederman.
even, selbst, (*Acc.*)
just be, gerecht seyn.
put, leget.
coin, Münze, *f.* 1.
again, wieder.
in, auf; their, (*Acc.*)
place, *Platz, *n.* 2.

know, kenne.	to every one, jedem.
happy, glücklich.	his own, das Seinige.
is, iſt.	give, geben.
we must, man muß.	

CHAP. IV.

Division of Verbs.

Verbs are divided into regular and irregular, and then again into auxiliary, active, passive, neuter, compound, reflective, and impersonal.

Verbs are regular when the simple tenses are formed by the same general termination, in each tense, and retain their original letters in the infinitive, except, en, or n, at the end, which is changed into te, in the first person singular of the imperfect tense; and into t at the end, and * ge at the beginning of the verb, for the past participle; as,

Inf.	*Pres. Ind.*	*Imp.*
Lieben, to love.	ich liebe.	ich liebte.

Participle.

†Geliebt, or geliebet.

Verbs are irregular when their terminations, as well as some of their original letters are varied; as,

Inf.	*Pres. Ind.*	*Imp.*	*Participle.*
Singen, to sing.	ich ſinge.	ſang.	geſungen.

The verbs ich habe, *I have;* ich bin, *I am;* ich werde, also Englished *I am*: are called auxiliary, or helping verbs, because they help to conjugate other verbs in some of their tenses.

---

* It is to be observed that most participles of the irregular, as well as the regular verbs, begin with ge, but there is this difference, that the participles of the irregulars mostly terminate in en.

† When the infinitive begins with the syllables be, emp, ent, er, ver, zer, or ge, then ge is omitted before the participles, except in gegeben, *given*; gebetet, *prayed for*; and some others.

An active verb expresses that sort of action, which passes over to an object; as, if we say, er liebet, *he loves;* we must add, or mean, he loves his child, or something else. A passive verb, on the contrary, expresses the suffering, or the receiving of an action. The passive verb in German is formed by, ich werde, (*Englished I am;*) and the perfect participle; as, ich werde gelobt, *I am praised.*

A verb neuter, simply expresses existence; as, ich bin, *I am;* existence in a particular state; as, ich ſtehe, *I stand;* or an action which does not pass over to an object; as, ich gehe, *I go;* ich falle, *I fall;* ich laufe, *I run.*

A compound verb is that which is compounded of a verb and a preposition, adverb, adjective, or substantive, &c.; as, vornehmen, *to intend;* großthun, *to boast;* dankſagen, *to thank,* &c.

* A verb is called reflective, when its subject and object are the same; as, ich liebe mich, *I love myself.*

A verb is called impersonal, when the agent, or nominative is unknown, or considered as such. This unknown agent is expressed in English, by the word *it,* and in German by es; as, es regnet, *it rains.*

§ I. AUXILIARY VERBS.

1. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, Seyn, *to be.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*	*Part. Perf.*
Pres. Seyn, to be.	Seyend, being.	geweſen, been.
Pret. Geweſen ſeyn, to have been.		

Present.

Indicative. *Singular.*	Subjunctive. *Singular.*
Ich bin, I am.	Ich ſey, I may be.
Du biſt, thou art.	Du ſeyſt, thou mayst be.
†Er, ſie, or es iſt, he, she, or it is.	Er ſey, he may be.

* Properly speaking there is no reflective verb, but there are many verbs which reflect upon the agent.

† Er, ſie, or es, may be used before any verb, (except impersonals) in the third person singular, throughout all the tenses.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ſind, we are.	Wir ſeyn, we may be.
Ihr ſeyd, you are.	Ihr ſeyd, you may be.
Sie ſind, they are.	Sie ſeyn, they may be.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich war, I was.	Ich wäre, I might be.
Du warſt,(or wareſt,) thou wast.	Du wäreſt, thou mightst be.
Er war, he was.	Er wäre, he might be.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir waren, we were.	Wir wären, we might be.
Ihr waret, you were.	Ihr wäret, you might be.
Sie waren, they were.	Sie wären, they might be.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich bin geweſen, I have been.	Ich ſey geweſen, I may have been.
Du biſt geweſen, thou hast been.	Du ſeyſt geweſen, thou mayst have been.
Er iſt geweſen, he has been.	Er ſey geweſen, he may have been.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ſind geweſen, we have been.	Wir ſeyn geweſen, we may have been.
Ihr ſeyd geweſen, you have been.	Ihr ſeyd geweſen, you may have been.
Sie ſind geweſen, they have been.	Sie ſeyn geweſen, they may have been.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich war geweſen, I had been.	Ich wäre geweſen, I might have been.
Du warſt geweſen, thou hadst been.	Du wäreſt geweſen, thou mightst have been.
Er war geweſen, he had been.	Er wäre geweſen, he might have been.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir waren geweſen, we had been.	Wir wären geweſen, we might have been.
Ihr waret geweſen, you had been.	Ihr wäret geweſen, you might have been.
Sie waren geweſen, they had been.	Sie wären geweſen, they might have been.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde ſeyn, I shall, or will be.	Ich werde ſeyn, I shall, or will be.
Du wirſt ſeyn, thou wilt be.	Du werdeſt ſeyn, thou wilt be.
Er wird ſeyn, he will be.	Er werde ſeyn, he will be.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden ſeyn, we shall, or will be.	Wir werden ſeyn, we shall, or will be.
Ihr werdet ſeyn, you will be.	Ihr werdet ſeyn, you will be.
Sie werden ſeyn, they will be.	Sie werden ſeyn, they will be.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde geweſen ſeyn, I shall, or will have been.	Ich werde geweſen ſeyn, I shall, or will have been.
Du wirſt geweſen ſeyn, thou wilt have been.	Du werdeſt geweſen ſeyn, thou wilt have been.
Er wird geweſen ſeyn, he will have been.	Er werde geweſen ſeyn, he will have been.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden geweſen ſeyn, we shall, or will have been.	Wir werden geweſen ſeyn, we shall, or will have been.
Ihr werdet geweſen ſeyn, you will have been.	Ihr werdet geweſen ſeyn, you will have been.
Sie werden geweſen ſeyn, they will have been.	Sie werden geweſen ſeyn, they will have been.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde ſeyn, I should, or would be.	Ich würde geweſen ſeyn, I should, or would have been.
Du würdeſt ſeyn, thou wouldst be.	Du würdeſt geweſen ſeyn, thou wouldst have been.
Er würde ſeyn, he would be.	Er würde geweſen ſeyn, he would have been.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden ſeyn, we should, or would be.	Wir würden geweſen ſeyn, we should, or would have been.
Ihr würdet ſeyn, you would be.	Ihr würdet geweſen ſeyn, you would have been.
Sie würden ſeyn, they would be.	Sie würden geweſen ſeyn, they would have been.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Sey (du,) be, or be thou.	Laſſet uns ſeyn, let us be.
Sey (er,) be he, or let him be.	Seyd (ihr,) be, or be you.
	Seyn ſie, let them be, or be they.
	Seyn Sie, be, or be you.

Practice on the Auxiliary Verb, Seyn, *to be.*

This verb, as well as all others, may be conjugated in four forms; that is,

Affirmatively. Ich bin, I am.

Negatively. Ich bin nicht, I am not.

Interrogatively. Bin ich? am I?

Negatively interrogatively. Bin ich nicht? am I not?

So likewise through all the tenses, as in the following exercise:

PRES. IND. Art thou? Is he not? We are not. Are they not? They are not. Are you not? You are. Are we not?

IMP. Was I? Thou wast not. It was not. She was. Were we? Were we not? Were you not? You were not. Were they?

PERF. I have been. Have I been? I have not been. Have I not been? Hast thou been? She has been. Has she not been? It has been. He has not been. Have we been? Have you not been? They have been. They have not been. Have they not been?

PLUP. Had I been? I had not been. Thou hadst been. She had not been. Had he not been? Had he been? You had not been. They had not been. Had they been? Had they not been? We had not been. Had we not been?

1st. FUT. I shall not be. Wilt thou not be? He will be. Will she not be? It will not be. You will be. Will you not be? Shall we be? We shall not be. They will not be. Will they not be?

48029

2nd. FUT. Shall I not have been? Wilt thou not have been? He will have been. Will she not have been? It will not have been. We shall have been. Shall we not have been? You will not have been. Will they not have been?

COND. SIMPLE *and* COMP. Should I be? Wouldst thou not be? It would be. Would she not be? He would not be. We should not be. Would you not be? You would not be. Would they not be? They would not be. I should not have been. Would it not have been? Should we not have been? We should not have been. Would you not have been? They would not have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. I may not be. Thou mayst be. It may not be. He may not be. We may be. You may not be. They may not be.

IMP. I might not be. She might be. It might not be. We might not be. You might be. They might not be.

PERF. I may not have been. Thou mayst have been. He may have been. It may have been. We may not have been. You may have been. They may not have been.

PLUP. I might not have been. Thou mightst have been. She might not have been. We might have been. You might have been. They might not have been.

1st. FUT. I shall not be. Thou wilt be. He will not be. It will be. We shall not be. You will not be. They will not be.

2nd. FUT. I shall not have been. She will have been. We shall not have been. You will not have been. They will not have been.

IMPERATIVE.

Be (*thou*). Let him be. Let him not be. Let us not be. Be, *or* do you be. Do not be (*you.*) Let them not be.

II. *Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb,* Haben, *to have.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*	*Part. Perf.*
Pres. Haben, to have. *Pret.* Gehabt haben, to have had.	Habend, having.	Gehabt, had.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe, I have.	Ich habe, I may have.
Du haſt, thou hast.	Du habeſt, thou mayst have.
Er, ſie, or es hat, he, she, or it has.	Er, or ſie habe, he, or she may have.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir haben, we have.	Wir haben, we may have.
Ihr habt, or habet, you have.	Ihr habet, you may have.
Sie haben, they have.	Sie haben, they may have.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte, I had.	Ich hätte, I might have.
Du hatteſt, thou hadst.	Du hätteſt, thou mightst have.
Er hatte, he had.	Er hätte, he might have.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hatten, we had.	Wir hätten, we might have.
Ihr hattet, you had.	Ihr hättet, you might have.
Sie hatten, they had.	Sie hätten, they might have.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gehabt, I have had.	Ich habe gehabt, I may have had.
Du haſt gehabt, thou hast had.	Du habeſt gehabt, thou mayst have had.
Er hat gehabt, he has had.	Er habe gehabt, he may have had.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir haben gehabt, we have had.	Wir haben gehabt, we may have had.
Ihr habt, or habet gehabt, you have had.	Ihr habet gehabt, you may have had.
Sie haben gehabt, they have had.	Sie haben gehabt, they may have had.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gehabt, I had had.	Ich hätte gehabt, I might have had.
Du hatteſt gehabt, thou hadst had.	Du hätteſt gehabt, thou mightst have had.
Er hatte gehabt, he had had.	Er hätte gehabt, he might have had.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hatten gehabt, we had had.	Wir hätten gehabt, we might have had.
Ihr hattet gehabt, you had had.	Ihr hättet gehabt, you might have had.
Sie hatten gehabt, they had had.	Sie hätten gehabt, they might have had.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde haben, I shall, or will have.	Ich werde haben, I shall, or will have.
Du wirſt haben, thou wilt have.	Du werdeſt haben, thou wilt have.
Er wird haben, he will have.	Er werde haben, he will have.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden haben, we shall, or will have.	Wir werden haben, we shall, or will have.
Ihr werdet haben, you will have.	Ihr werdet haben, you will have.
Sie werden haben, they will have.	Sie werden haben, they will have.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall, or will have had.	Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall, or will have had.
Du wirſt gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.	Du werdeſt gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.
Er wird gehabt haben, he will have had.	Er werde gehabt haben, he will have had.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden gehabt haben, we shall, or will have had.	Wir werden gehabt haben, we shall, or will have had.
Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.	Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.
Sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.	Sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

Conditional.

Ind. and Sub.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde haben, I should, or would have.	Ich würde gehabt haben, I should, or would have had.
Du würdeſt haben, thou wouldst have.	Du würdeſt gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had.
Er würde haben, he would have.	Er würde gehabt haben, he would have had.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden haben, we should, or would have.	Wir würden gehabt haben, we should, or would have had.
Ihr würdet haben, you would have.	Ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would have had.
Sie würden haben, they would have.	Sie würden gehabt haben, they would have had.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Habe du, have, or have thou.	Laſſet uns haben, let us have.
Habe er, have he, or let him have.	Habt, or habet ihr, have you, or do you have.
	Haben ſie, have they, or let them have.
	Haben Sie, have you, or do you have.

Practice on the Auxiliary Verb, Haben, *to have.*

PRES. IND. Have I? Have I not? He has not. Hast thou? She has not. Have we? We have not. You have not. Have they? They have not. Have they not?

IMP. Had I? He had. Had she not? Had we not? Had you not? They had. Had they not?

PERF. Have I had? Hast thou not had? Has he not had? Have you not had? She has not had. Have they not had? We have not had. Have they had? They have not had. Have they not had?

PLUPERFECT. I had not had. Had I not had? Hadst thou had? She had not had. Had he not had? Had we had? They had not had. They had had. Had they not had?

1st. FUT. Shall I not have? Wilt thou have? I will not have. We shall not have. Will you not have? You will not have.

2nd. FUT. He will have had? They will not have had. Will they not have had? We shall have had. Will you not have had?

COND. SIMPLE. Should I have? Thou wouldst not have. Would he not have? We would not have. Should we have? Should we not have? You would not have. Would you not have? They would not have. Would they not have?

COND. COMP. I should not have had. Would he not have had? We should not have had. Would you have had? They would not have had.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. I may have. I may not have. Thou mayst not have. We may have. We may not have. They may have. They may not have.

IMP. Thou mightst not have. Hadst thou not. *Had we. Had we not. Had you not. Had they not. They might not have.

PERF. Thou mayst not have had. We may not have had. You may have had. They may not have had.

PLUP. I might not have had. Thou mightst have had. He might have had. He might not have had. We might not have had. They might not have had.

IMPER. Have (thou). Let us have. Have you. Have they, or let them have.

III. *The Irregular and Auxiliary Neuter Verb,* Werden, *to become.*

Infinitive.	*Participle Pres.*
Pres. Werden, to become.	Werdend, becoming.
Perf. Geworden ſeyn, to have become.	Ein Werdender, one who becomes.

Perf. Participle.

Pres. Geworden, become.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde, I become.	Ich werde, I may become.
Du wirſt, thou becomest.	Du werdeſt, thou mayst become.
Er, ſie, or es wird, he, she, or it becomes.	Er, ſie, or es werde, he, she, or it may become.

* *Had we*, is not interrogative, but has the same meaning as, *if we had*, in the subjunctive mood.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden, we become.	Wir werden, we may become.
Ihr werdet, you become.	Ihr werdet, you may become.
Sie werden, they become.	Sie werden, they may become.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich wurde, or ward, I became.	Ich würde, I might become.
Du wurdeſt, or wardſt, thou becamest.	Du würdeſt, thou mightst become.
Er wurde, or ward, he became.	Er würde, he might become.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir wurden, we became.	Wir würden, we might become.
Ihr wurdet, you became.	Ihr würdet, you might become.
Sie wurden, they became.	Sie würden, they might become.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich bin geworden, I have become.	Ich ſey geworden, I may have become.
Du biſt geworden, &c.	Du ſeyſt geworden, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich war geworden, I had become.	Ich wäre geworden, I might have become.
Du wareſt geworden, &c.	Du wäreſt geworden, &c.

First Future.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde werden, I shall become.	Ich werde werden, I shall become.
Du wirſt werden, &c.	Du werdeſt werden, &c.

Second Future.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde geworden ſeyn, I shall have become.	Ich werde geworden ſeyn, I shall have become.
Du wirſt geworden ſeyn, &c.	Du werdeſt geworden ſeyn, &c.

Conditional; Simple.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde werden, I should, or would become.	Wir würden werden, we should, or would become.
Du würdeſt werden, &c.	Ihr würdet werden, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde geworden ſeyn, I should have become.	Wir würden geworden ſeyn, we should, or would have become.
Du würdeſt geworden ſeyn, &c.	Ihr würdet geworden ſeyn, &c.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Werde, or werde du, become (*thou.*)	Werdet (ihr,) become (*you.*)
Werde er, let him become.	Werden Sie, become (*you.*)
	Werden ſie, let them become.

Practice on the auxiliary, Werden.

Pres. Ind. Does he become? Does she not become? Thou dost not become. Do we become? Do you not become? They do not become.

Obs. Ich werde, &c. when used as an auxiliary verb, is Englished by *I am, I shall, I will, I grow*; and the perfect participle as an auxiliary becomes worden, instead of geworden.

IMP. I did not become. Did it not become? Did we become? She became. She did not become. Did we not become? Did you not become? They did not become.

PERF. I have become. Have I not become? Hast thou not become? She has not become. Have we not become? Have you not become? Have they become?

PLUP. I had become. Had I become? Had I not become? I had not become? Hadst thou become? He had not become. Had she not become? Had we become? Had you not become? They had become. They had not become. Had they become? Had they not become?

FIRST FUT. Shall I become? Shall we become? Wilt thou become? Wilt thou not become? He will become. She will not become. Will you become? They will not become.

SECOND FUT. I shall have become. Will he have become? Shall we have become? You will not have become. Will they have become? They will not have become. Will they not have become?

COND. SIMPLE. Should I become? Wouldst thou become? It would become. Should he not become? We should not become. Would you become? They would not become.

COND. COMP. I should have become. Would it have become? Should we have become? We should not have become. Would you not have become? You would have become. Would they have become?

PRES. SUB. I may not become. She may not become. Thou mayst become. He may not become. We may not become. They may become.

IMP. I might become. Thou mightst become. She might not become. We might not become. You might become. They might not become.

PERF. I may have become. He may not have become. You may have become. They may not have become.

PLUP. Thou mightst have become. She might not have become. It might not have become. You might have become. They might not have become.

IMPERAT. Become thou. Become (*you*) not. Become they, or let them become. Let them not become.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Auxiliaries.

FIRST LESSON.

Die Griechen ſind die Lehrer vieler Völker geweſen, und haben erſt ſpät aufgehört es zu ſeyn.

Die Römer können ſich nicht rühmen es geweſen zu ſeyn, denn ſie waren die Schüler der Griechen.

Die Eigenliebe iſt der größte von allen Schmeichlern; ſie iſt die Verführerin vieler Menſchen geweſen, und wird es noch von vielen ſeyn, die nicht auf ihrer Hut ſind.

Wir ſind ihren Verführungen immer ausgeſetzt, und wir müſſen ſie daher immer fliehen.

Wenn wir einmal von ihr verführt worden ſind, ſo iſt es ſchwer uns ihrer Herrſchaft zu entziehen.

Als Hannibal von Scipio überwunden worden war, ſo fragte ihn Scipio, wer nach ſeiner Meinung wohl der größte Feldherr wäre? Hannibal nannte den Alexander. Wer iſt aber wohl nach dem Alexander der größte Held geweſen? Hannibal ſagte, daß es Pyrrhus ſey! Wer aber der dritte? Hannibal erwiderte, ich bin es.

O ihr Spieler, welche Verſchwender eures Gutes, eurer Zeit, und eurer Kräfte ſeyd ihr! Glaubet mir, ihr werdet nie glücklich ſeyn! Ihr würdet es aber ſeyn können, wenn ihr weiſer ſeyn wolltet. Es iſt nicht der Ort durch den wir weiſer und vollkommen werden, ſondern es hängt von unſerm Willen ab, ob wir es werden wollen, und dann können wir es an jedem Orte werden.

der Grieche, the Greek.
der Lehrer, the teacher.
viele, many.
das Volk, the nation.
aufgehört, ceased.
erſt ſpät, but lately.
die Römer, the Romans.
können ſich nicht rühmen, cannot boast.
es zu ſeyn, of being so.
denn, for.
der Schüler, scholar.
die Eigenliebe, self-love.
von, of.

der Schmeichler, the flatterer.
Verführerin, seducer.
vieler, of many.
wird seyn, will be.
von vielen, of many.
die, who.
sind nicht, are not.
auf, upon.
Hut, guard.
immer, always.
ausgesetzt, exposed.
die Verführung, seduction.
müssen, must.
daher, therefore.
fliehen, flee, or shun.
wenn, when.
einmal, once.
verführt, seduced.
schwer, difficult.
uns zu entziehen, to disengage ourselves.
die Herrschaft, dominion.
als, when.
überwunden worden war, was conquered.
von, by.
fragte, asked.
nach, in.
die Meinung, the opinion.
der Feldherr, commander.
nannte, named.
der Held, the hero.
sagte, said.
erwiderte, replied.
ich bin es, it is I.
der Spieler, the gamester.
der Verschwender, the squanderer.
das Geld, the money.
die Zeit, the time.
die Kraft, the power.
glaubet, believe.
glücklich, happy.
würdet können, might.
es, so.
Ort, place.
durch, by.
weise, wise.
vollkommen, perfect.
sondern, but.
hängt ab, depends.
von, upon.
der Wille, the will.
ob, whether.
es werden wollen, will become so.
dann können wir, then we can.
an, in.
jedem, every.

SECOND LESSON.

Hast thou been lame?
Was she not a sincere friend?
Switzerland is a mountainous country.
The people have been long free.
We have not all equal talents.
Have they had equal advantages?
If he had always had the understanding which he now has, he would not have been so proud.
Who is not mortal? There is no man who is not mortal.
Thou art a man, and consequently art frail.
Should any one be envious? Would he not then be unhappy? Be not therefore envious; if you wish not to be unhappy.
Had he been contented, he would have been happy.

Many have had the greatest possessions, and yet have been unhappy, because they were not contented.

Become first contented, and then you may hope to be happy.

Observe. Put the participles and infinitives of the German to the end of the sentence.

lame, lahm.
sincere, aufrichtig.
Switzerland, die Schweiz.
mountainous, bergig.
country, *Land, *n.* 5.
people, *Volk, *n.* 3.
free, frei.
equal, gleich.
advantage, Vortheil, *n.* 2.
if, wenn.
understanding, Verstand, *m.* 2.
had had, gehabt hätte.
proud, stolz.
mortal, sterblich.
man, Mensch, *m.* 3.
consequently, folglich.
frail, hinfällig.
should, sollte.
any one, jemand.
envious, neidisch.
be, seyn.
then, dann.
unhappy, unglücklich.
not be, nicht seyn.
therefore, daher.
if you wish not to be, wenn du nicht seyn willst.
contented, zufrieden.
many, viele, *f.* 3.
possession, Besitzung, *f.* 3.
yet, doch.
because, weil.
not contented were, nicht zufrieden waren.
become, sey.
first, erst.
may you, magst du.
hope, hoffen.
happy, glücklich.
to be, zu seyn.

THIRD LESSON.

Alexander said, were I not Alexander, I should wish to be Diogenes.

The Romans had in the commencement kings, afterwards consuls, and lastly emperors.

Scarcely any (*almost no*) empire of the world has had so mean an (*a so mean*) origin, and has become so great as the Roman empire.

If Scipio had not been so great a general, Carthage would not (*so would Carthage not*) have been conquered by him.

How happy would every one have been, if all men had been what they should have been.

How much happier we should be than we are at present, if we had no inordinate passions.

The taste of the Romans was (*has been*) never so refined as that of the Greeks: this arose from their being imitators.

The cultivated Romans had also mostly been in Greece, and had brought with them from thence knowledge and taste.

said, sagte.	him (*Dat.*)
should wish, möchte gern.	conquered been, erobert worden.
Roman, Römer, *m.* 1.	how, wie.
in the commencement, Anfangs.	much, viel.
	at present, jetzt.
king, König, *m.* 2.	inordinate, unordentlich.
afterwards, nachher.	passion, Leidenschaft, *f.* 3.
lastly, zuletzt.	taste, Geschmack, *m.* 2.
emperor, Kaiser, *m.* 1.	refined, verfeinert; that, (*Mas.*)
almost, beinahe.	Greek, Grieche, *m.* 3.
empire, Reich, *n* 2.	came thence, kam daher.
world, Welt, *f.* 3.	imitator, Nachahmer, *m.* 1.
mean, geringe.	cultivated, gebildet.
origin, Ursprung, *m.* 2.	also, auch.
as, als.	mostly, mehrentheils.
Roman, römisch.	Greece, Griechenland.
general, Feldherr, *m.* 3.	brought with them, mit gebracht.
Carthage, Carthago.	from thence, von da.
by, von.	knowledge, Kenntniß, *f.* 2. (*Pl.*)

---

§ 11. The following verbs, Wollen, Müssen, Können, Sollen, &c. are generally used in German as in English, being sometimes auxiliary and sometimes principal verbs.

Observe. The use of the following verbs will be best understood by the examples. *Vide page* 128, &c.

Conjugation of the Verb Wollen, *to be willing.*

Inf.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Wollen, to be willing.	Wollend, willing.
Pret. Gewollt haben, to have been willing, or to have willed.	

Part. Past or Perf.

Gewollt, willed, or been willing.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich will, I will.	Ich wolle, I may be willing.
Du willst, thou wilt.	Du wollest, thou mayst &c.
Er will, he will.	Er wolle, he may &c.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir wollen, we will.	Wir wollen,
Ihr wollet, or wollt, &c.	Ihr wollet, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich wollte, I would.	Ich wollte, I might be willing.
Du wollteſt, &c.	Du wollteſt, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir wollten, we would.	Wir wollten, we &c.
Ihr wolltet, &c.	Ihr wolltet, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gewollt, I have been willing.	Ich habe gewollt, I may have been willing.
Du haſt gewollt, &c.	Du habeſt gewollt, &c.
Plural.	*Plural*
Wir haben gewollt, we &c.	Wir haben gewollt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gewollt, I had been willing.	Ich hätte gewollt, I might have been willing.
Du hatteſt gewollt, &c.	Du hätteſt gewollt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde wollen, I shall be willing.	Ich werde wollen, I shall be willing.
Du wirſt wollen, &c.	Du werdeſt wollen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have been willing.	Ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have been willing.
Du wirſt gewollt haben, &c.	Du werdeſt gewollt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde wollen, I should be willing.	Ich würde gewollt haben, I should, or would have been willing.
Du würdeſt wollen, &c.	Du würdeſt gewollt haben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden wollen, we should be willing.	Wir würden gewollt haben, we should, or would have been willing.
Ihr würdet wollen, &c.	Ihr würdet gewollt haben, &c.

No imperative.

Conjugation of the Verb, Müſſen, *to be obliged.*

Inf.	*Part. Prcs.*
Prcs. Müſſen, to be obliged.	No present part.
Pret. Gemußt haben, to have been obliged.	

Part. Perf.

Gemüßt, obliged.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich muß, I am obliged, or I must.	Ich müſſe, I may be obliged.
Du mußt, thou must, &c.	Du müſſeſt, thou &c.
Er, (ſie) muß, he, or she &c.	Er, or ſie müſſe, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir müſſen, we are obliged, &c.	Wir müſſen, &c.
Ihr müſſet, or müßt, &c.	Ihr müſſet, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich mußte, I was obliged.	Ich müßte, I might be obliged.
Du mußteſt, thou &c.	Du müßteſt, thou &c.
Er mußte, &c.	Er müßte, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir mußten, we were obliged.	Wir müßten, we might be obliged.
Ihr mußtet, &c.	Ihr müßtet, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gemußt, I have been obliged.	Ich habe gemußt, I may have been obliged.
Du haſt gemußt, &c.	Du habeſt gemußt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gemußt, I had been obliged.	Ich hätte gemußt, I might have been obliged.
Du hatteſt gemußt, &c.	Du hätteſt gemußt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde müſſen, I shall be obliged.	Ich werde müſſen, I shall be obliged.
Du wirſt müſſen, &c.	Du werdeſt müſſen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gemußt haben, I shall have been obliged.	Ich werde gemußt haben, I shall have been obliged.
Du wirſt gemußt haben, &c.	Du werdeſt gemußt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde müssen, I should be obliged.	Ich würde gemußt haben, I should, or would have been obliged.
Du würdest müßen, thou wouldst be obliged.	Du würdest gemußt haben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden müssen, we should be obliged.	Wir würden gemußt haben, we should, or would have been obliged.
Ihr würdet müssen, you would be obliged.	Ihr würdet gemußt haben, &c.

No imperative.

The negative of the verb, können, to be able.

Infinitive. *Participle.*

[illegible]

Present.

Du kannst, thou canst.	Du könnest, thou &c.
Er, or sie kann, he, or she can.	Er, or sie könne, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir können, we can.	Wir können, we may be able.
Ihr könnet, or könnt, you can.	Ihr könnet, you &c.
Sie können, they can.	Sie können, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich konnte, I could, or I was able.	Ich könnte, I might be able.
Du konnteſt, thou couldst, &c.	Du könnteſt, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gekonnt, I have been able.	Ich habe gekonnt, I may have been able.
Du haſt gekonnt, &c.	Du habeſt gekonnt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gekonnt, I had been able.	Ich hätte gekonnt, I might have been able.
du hatteſt gekonnt, &c.	Du hätteſt gekonnt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde können, I shall be able.	Ich werde können, I shall be able.
Du wirſt können, &c.	Du werdeſt können, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gekonnt haben, I shall have been able.	Ich werde gekonnt haben, I shall have been able.
Du wirſt gekonnt haben, &c.	Du werdeſt gekonnt haben, &c.

Conditional; Simple.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde können, I should be able.	Wir würden können, we should be able.
Du würdeſt können, thou wouldst &c.	Ihr würdet können, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde gekonnt haben, I should have been able.	Wir würden gekonnt haben, we should, or would have been able.
Du würdeſt gekonnt haben, &c.	Ihr würdet gekonnt haben, &c.

Conjugation of the Verb Sollen, *to be obliged.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Sollen, to be obliged.	Sollend, being obliged.
Pret. Geſollt haben, to have been obliged.	

Part. Perf.
Geſollt, been obliged.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich ſoll, I shall, or I must.	Ich ſolle, &c.
Du ſollſt, or ſollt, thou shalt &c.	Du ſolleſt, &c.
Er, or ſie ſoll, he, or she shall, &c.	Er, or ſie ſolle, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ſollen, we shall.	Wir ſollen, &c.
Ihr ſollet, or ſollt, you shall.	Ihr ſollet, &c.
Sie ſollen, they shall.	Sie ſollen, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich ſollte, I should.	Ich ſollte, &c.
Du ſollteſt, &c.	Du ſollteſt, &c.

---

* It is impossible to translate these German verbs literally through all the tenses.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ſollten, we should.	Wir ſollten, &c.
Ihr ſolltet, &c.	Ihr ſolltet, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe geſollt, * I should have, or I ought to have.	Ich habe geſollt, &c.
Du haſt geſollt, &c.	Du habeſt geſollt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte geſollt, I had been obliged.	Ich hätte geſollt, &c.
Du hatteſt geſollt, &c.	Du hätteſt geſollt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde ſollen, I shall be obliged.	Ich werde ſollen, &c.
Du wirſt ſollen, &c.	Du werdeſt ſollen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde geſollt haben, &c.	Ich werde geſollt haben, &c.
Du wirſt geſollt haben, &c.	Du werdeſt geſollt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde ſollen, &c.	Ich würde geſollt haben, &c
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden ſollen, &c.	Wir würden geſollt haben, &c.

No imperative.

* Ich habe geſollt, alſo ſignifies in English, I have been obliged, I have been commanded, or ordered; I have been forced.

Conjugation of the Verb *Mögen, *to be willing, to be able, to like, to be permitted.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*	*Part. Perf.*
Pres. Mögen.	Mögend.	Gemocht.
Pret. Gemocht haben.		

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Singular.	*Singular.*
Ich mag, I may.	Ich möge, I may.
Du magſt, thou mayst.	Du mögeſt, &c.
Er, ſie, or es mag, he, she, or it may.	Er, ſie, or es möge, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir mögen, we may.	Wir mögen, we may.
Ihr möget, or mögt, you may.	Ihr möget, &c.
Sie mögen, they may.	Sie mögen, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich mochte, I might.	Ich möchte, I might.
Du mochteſt, &c.	Du möchteſt, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir mochten, we might.	Wir möchten, &c.
Ihr mochtet, &c.	Ihr möchtet, &c.

* These verbs are defective in English, and cannot be translated throughout, unless they are used in composition. Vide their application, pages 130, &c.

Perfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
*Ich habe gemocht, &c.	Ich habe gemocht, &c.
Du haſt gemocht, &c.	Du habeſt gemocht, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gemocht, &c.	Ich hätte gemocht, &c.
Du hatteſt gemocht, &c.	Du hätteſt gemocht, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde mögen, &c.	Ich werde mögen, &c.
Du wirſt mögen, &c.	Du werdeſt mögen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gemocht haben, &c.	Ich werde gemocht haben, &c.
Du wirſt gemocht haben, &c.	Du werdeſt gemocht haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde mögen, &c.	Ich würde gemocht haben, &c.
Du würdeſt mögen, &c.	Du würdeſt gemocht haben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden mögen, &c.	Wir würden gemocht haben, &c.
Ihr würdet mögen, &c.	Ihr würdet gemocht haben, &c.

No imperative.

* The English of ich habe gemocht, is, I have liked.

Conjugation of the Verb Dürfen, *to dare.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Dürfen, to dare.	Dürfend, daring.
Pret. Gedurft haben, to have dared.	

Part. Perf.
Gedurft, dared.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich darf, I dare.	Ich dürfe, I may dare.
Du darfſt, thou darest.	Du dürfeſt, &c.
Er, or ſie darf, he, or she dares.	Er, or ſie dürfe, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir dürfen, we dare.	Wir dürfen, &c.
Ihr dürfet, &c.	Ihr dürfet, &c.

Imperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich durfte, I durst.	Ich dürfte, I might dare.
Du durfteſt, thou durst.	Du dürfteſt, &c.
Er durfte, he durst.	Er dürfte, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir durften, we durst.	Wir dürften, &c.
Ihr durftet, &c.	Ihr dürftet, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gedurft, I have dared.	Ich habe gedurft, I may have dared.
Du haſt gedurft, &c.	Du habeſt gedurft, &c.

Pluperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gedurft, I had dared.	Ich hätte gedurft, I might have dared.
Du hatteſt gedurft, &c.	Du hätteſt gedurft, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde dürfen, I shall dare.	Ich werde dürfen, I shall dare.
Du wirſt dürfen, thou wilt dare, &c.	Du werdeſt dürfen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gedurft haben, I shall have dared.	Ich werde gedurft haben, I shall have dared.
Du wirſt gedurft haben, thou wilt have dared, &c.	Du werdeſt gedurft haben, thou wilt have dared, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde dürfen, I should dare.	Ich würde gedurft haben, I should have dared.
Du würdeſt dürfen, thou wouldst dare, &c.	Du würdeſt gedurft haben, thou wouldst have dared, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden dürfen, we should dare.	Wir würden gedurft haben, we should have dared.
Ihr würdet dürfen, you would dare, &c.	Ihr würdet gedurft haben, you would have dared, &c.

No imperative.

Conjugation of the Verb Laſſen, *to let, or permit.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Laſſen, to let.	Laſſend, letting.
Pret. Gelaſſen haben, to have let.	

Part. Perf.
Gelaſſen, let.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich laſſe, I let.	Ich laſſe, I may let.
Du läſſeſt, or läßt, thou letteſt.	Du laſſeſt, &c.
Er läſſet, or läßt, he lets.	Er laſſe, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir laſſen, we let.	Wir laſſen, we may let.
Ihr laſſet, or laßt, you let.	Ihr laſſet, &c.
Sie laſſen, they let.	Sie laſſen, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich ließ, I let, or did let.	Ich ließe, I might let.
Du ließeſt, thou didst let.	Du ließeſt, &c.
Er ließ, he let, or did let.	Er ließe, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ließen, we let, or did let.	Wir ließen, we might let.
Ihr ließet, you let.	Ihr ließet, &c.
Sie ließen, they let.	Sie ließen, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gelaſſen, I have let.	Ich habe gelaſſen, I may have let.
Du haſt gelaſſen, &c.	Du habeſt gelaſſen, &c.

Pluperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gelaſſen, I had let.	Ich hätte gelaſſen, I might have let.
Du hatteſt gelaſſen, &c.	Du hätteſt gelaſſen, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde laſſen, I shall or will let.	Ich werde laſſen, I shall let.
Du wirſt laſſen, thou wilt let, &c.	Du werdeſt laſſen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gelaſſen haben, I shall have let.	Ich werde gelaſſen haben, I shall have let.
Du wirſt gelaſſen haben, thou wilt have let, &c.	Du werdeſt gelaſſen haben, thou wilt have let, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde laſſen, I should let.	Ich würde gelaſſen haben, I should have let.
Du würdeſt laſſen, thou wouldst let, &c.	Du würdeſt gelaſſen haben, thou wouldst have let, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden laſſen, we should let.	Wir würden gelaſſen haben, we should have let.
Ihr würdet laſſen, you would let, &c.	Ihr würdet gelaſſen haben, you would have let, &c.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Laß du, let thou, or do thou let.	Laſſet ihr, let you, or do you let.
Laſſe er, let him.	Laſſen ſie, let them.

The following examples and observations are intended to illustrate the application of the preceding verbs, Wollen, Müſſen, Können, ꝛc.

1. Wollen, to will, to be willing, to intend, desire, wish, want.

EXAMPLES.

Wollen Sie ſpatzieren gehen? will you take a walk?

Ich will ſpatzieren gehen, I will take a walk.

Er will fliegen, aber hat keine Flügel, he wishes to fly, but has no wings.

Wollten, or wollen Sie wohl die Güte haben? would, or will you have the kindness?

Ich wollte gerne gehen, I should wish to go.

Ich will zu Fuße gehen, I will go on foot.

Ich will zu Fuße reiſen, I will travel on foot.

Ich wollte daß wir gehen ſollten, I was for our going.

Wie viel Geld wollt ihr? how much money do you want?

Observe. Ich will, *I will*, infinitive wollen: this verb is used when desire, will, or inclination is implied. And werden is used to denote futurity; as,

Es wird bald regnen, it will soon rain.

Ich werde reden, I shall speak.

Observe. Will, originally signified *inclination*; *shall*, originally signified *necessity*. The Germans use werden, when simple futurity is to be expressed; in which case, *shall* and *will* lose their original meanings; in the first person, *shall* is a sign of the simple future; *will* is so in the second and third. In all other cases, *shall* and *will* have the original acceptation, and nearly correspond to the German wollen and ſollen.

---

2. Müſſen, to be obliged, forced, &c.

Ich muß es thun, I must do it, I am to do it, I am obliged to do it.

Man muß es thun, we, they, people, one, &c. must do it, or ought to do it.

Ich muß mich waſchen, I must wash myself.

Was muß ich trinken? what must I drink?

Alle Menſchen müſſen ſterben, all men must die.
Ihr müſſet nicht immer böſe ſeyn, you must not always be angry.
Das muß ſo ſeyn und nicht anders, that must be so and not otherwise.
Sie müſſen ihn fragen, you must ask him.

Observe. Ich muß, generally corresponds to the English *must*, and exactly corresponds to the French *il faut*, and to the Italian *bisogna*.

---

3. Können, to be able, to have power, to be possible, to know.

Ich kann nicht glauben, I cannot believe.
Ich kann es nicht thun, I cannot do it, I am unable to do it.
Sie können das thun wenn Sie wollen, you may do that if you like.
Er kann weder leſen noch ſchreiben, he can neither read nor write.
Ich kann ſehr wohl ſehen, I can see very well.
Können Sie Franzöſiſch? do you know French?
Können Sie leſen ohne Brillen? can you read without spectacles?
Ich konnte es nicht ſehen, I could not see it.
Ich hätte es thun können, I could have done it.
Ich kann mich irren, I may be mistaken.
Es kann ſo ſeyn, it may be so.
Vielleicht kann er mir helfen, perhaps he may help me.
Ich konnte ihn nicht verſtehen, I could not understand him.
Können Sie heute zu mir kommen? can you come to me to-day?

---

4. Sollen, to be obliged, &c.

Soll ich es haben? shall I have it? or am I to have it?
Du ſollſt das thun, thou shalt do it, thou art to do it.
Sie ſollen ſchreiben, you shall write, you are to write.
Ich ſoll dahin gehen, I shall go there, (*or thither.*)

Was ſoll das heißen? what does that mean? what do you mean?

Es ſoll an nichts fehlen, there shall be nothing wanting.

Er ſoll nicht arbeiten, it is said he does not labour.

Ich ſollte wohl dahin gehen, I should go there.

Es ſoll ſich zugetragen haben, it is said to have happened.

Soll ich es thun oder nicht? am, or ought I to do it, or not? shall I do it, or not?

Der König ſoll angekommen ſeyn, the king is said to be arrived.

Die franzöſiſche Flotte ſoll geſchlagen worden ſeyn, the French fleet is said to have been beaten.

Wenn er morgen ſterben ſollte, if he should die to-morrow.

Das ſollte mir Leid thun, I should be sorry for it.

Wenn das ſo ſeyn ſollte, if that should be so.

Sollte ſich das Wetter ändern, ſo wollen wir ausgehen, should the weather change, we will go out.

5. Mögen, to be willing, to be able, to like.

Ich mag das nicht, I do not like that.

Ich mag nicht, I will not.

Nein, ich mag es nicht, no, I do not like it.

Ich möchte gern wiſſen, I should like to know.

Ich möchte es wohl thun, I should like to do it.

Ich möchte wohl etwas davon haben, I should like to have some part of it.

Ich fürchte es möchte geſchehen, I am afraid it should, or might happen.

Es mag ſeyn, it may be; let it be so.

Es mag ſeyn wie es will, be it as it will.

Ich möchte gern, I would fain; I should like.

Lieber mögen, to like better.

Ich möchte lieber, I had rather; I would rather.

Er mag lachen, er mag weinen, ich verbiete es ihm nicht, he may laugh, he may cry, I do not forbid it him.

Es möchte ſich ereignen, it might happen.

Es möchte regnen, it might rain.
Möge er lange leben, may he live long.
Möge es der Himmel geben, may heaven grant it.
Wer mag deine Wunder erzählen? who can, or is able to recount thy wonders?
Ich mag es nicht thun, I do not like to do it.
Mögen Sie Wein? do you like wine?
Ich mag dieſen Wein nicht, I do not like this wine.
Ich mag nichts mehr trinken, I do not like to drink any more.

6. Dürfen, to dare, to have permission, to be allowed, to be able, &c.

Ich darf es nicht, I dare not do it, I have not permission to do it.
Thue es, wenn du darfſt, do it, if you dare.
Ich darf es thun, I am allowed to do it, I am not persuaded from doing it.
Sie dürfen es nicht thun, you are not allowed to do it, you are prevented from doing it.
Darf ſie kommen? dare she come? is she permitted to come?
Darf ich fragen? may I ask?
Wenn ich ſo ſagen darf, if I may say so.
Es dürfte vielleicht wahr ſeyn, it might perhaps be true.
Es dürfte wohl geſchehen, it might well happen.
Du darfſt es nur fordern, you need only ask for it.
Es dürfte alsdann nicht nothwendiger Weiſe der Fall ſeyn, it needs not, then, necessarily be the case.

7. Laſſen, to let, to permit, &c.

Laſſen Sie mich gehen, let me go.
Laſſen Sie ihn kommen, let him come.
Das läßt ſich nicht thun, that is not to be done.
Laßt ſehen, or laßt uns ſehen, let us see.

Laſſen Sie ſich etwas erzählen, I come to tell you what, or let me tell you something, or may I &c.

Ich habe mir ſagen laſſen, I have been told.

Er fängt wieder an wo er es gelaſſen hat, he begins again where he left off.

Einen über etwas laſſen, to intrust one with.

Das läßt ſich nicht thun, that is not to be done.

Es läßt ſich niemand weder hören noch ſehen, there is nobody to be seen, nor heard.

Sein Thun und Laſſen, his acts, and his omissions.

Promiscuous Practice on the preceding Verbs.

FIRST LESSON.

Wir können uns bewegen, wenn wir wollen; und dieſe Bewegung iſt ein Zeichen des Lebens.

Der Menſch kann nicht alles, was er will; nur Gott hat die Macht, alles zu können was er will.

Wenn der Menſch alles könnte, was er wollte; ſo würde alles durch einander gehen.

Ich muß nicht, wenn ich nicht will.

Er fängt wieder an, wo er es gelaſſen hat.

Paris ſoll eine ſchöne Stadt ſeyn.

Ich kann nicht begreifen, wer er ſeyn mag.

Sagen Sie was Sie wollen. Wenn ich ſo ſagen darf.

Er müſſe leben und glücklich ſeyn.

Ich wollte gerne gehen. Wollen Sie gehen?

Ich will an einen meiner Freunde ſchreiben.

Ich möchte wiſſen, wo mein Bruder das Schreibzeug hingeſtellt hat.

Soll ich mit Ihnen gehen? Laſſet ihn herein kommen.

So viel Geld darf ich nicht wagen.

bewegen, move.
wenn, if.
wollen, will.
die Bewegung, motion.

das Zeichen, sign.
das Leben, life.
kann nicht alles thun, cannot do every thing.
nur, (*but*,) only.
die Macht, power.
wenn, if.
so würde alles durch einander gehen, every thing would be in disorder.
er fängt wieder an, he begins again.
Paris soll seyn, Paris is said to be.
Ich kann nicht begreifen, I cannot imagine.
wer er, who he.
seyn mag, may be.
sagen, say.
so sagen darf, may say so.
er müsse leben, may he live.
glücklich, happy.
ich wollte gerne, I should wish, or like,
an, to.
schreiben, to write.
wissen, to know.
wo, where.
hingestellt hat, has put.
das Schreibzeug, the inkstand.
wagen, risk.
Geld, money.

SECOND LESSON.

He could, would, must, might, should, ought to have done it.

Er hätte das thun können, wollen, müssen, mögen, sollen, dürfen.

Practice on the preceding Verbs.

He could not have paid all his debts, if I had helped him.

He should not have told all he knew of the matter.

They should not have made laws, only to (*in order to*) violate them.

They must have been very stupid, not to (*if they have not*) have understood it.

You might (*could*) have spoken to him in a more civil manner.

I should have wished to have seen it, (*I had it see may.*)

They would not have allowed it, if they had known it before.

They ought not to have given him that liberty, (*ought him that liberty not given have.*)

debt, Schuld, *f.*
to pay, bezahlen.
to help, helfen.
to tell, sagen.
to know, wissen.
of, von.
matter, Sache, *f.*
to make, machen.
law, Gesetz, *n.*
to violate, verletzen.

stupid, dumm.
to understand, verſtehen.
to speak, ſprechen.
in, auf.
civil, artig.
manner, Weiſe, *f.*
may, mögen.
allowed, erlaubt.
before, ehe.
ought, ſollten.
liberty, Freiheit, *f.*

---

§ III. *Of Regular Active Verbs.*

In German as in English, there is but one conjugation of regular verbs, which has the terminations te, in the imperfect; and t, or et, in the participle, with ge before it.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb Lieben, *to love.*

Inf.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Lieben, to love.	Liebend, loving.
Pret. Geliebt, or geliebet haben, to have loved.	

Part. Perf.
Geliebt, loved.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich liebe, I love, do love, or am loving.	Ich liebe, I may love.
Du liebſt, or liebeſt thou lóvest, dost love, or art loving.	Du liebeſt, thou mayst love.
Er, ſie, or es liebt, or liebet, he, ſhe, or it loves, does love, or is loving.	Er liebe, he may love.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir lieben, we love, do love, or are loving.	Wir lieben, we may love.
Ihr liebt, or liebet, you love.	Ihr liebet, you may love.
Sie lieben, they love.	Sie lieben, they may love.

Imperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich liebte, I loved, or did love.	Ich liebete, I might love.
Du liebteſt, thou lovedst.	Du liebeteſt, thou mightst love.
Er liebte, he loved.	Er liebete, he might love.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir liebten, we loved.	Wir liebeten, we might love.
Ihr liebtet, you loved.	Ihr liebetet, you might love.
Sie liebten, they loved.	Sie liebeten, they might love.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe geliebt, or geliebet, I have loved.	Ich habe geliebt, I may have loved.
Du haſt geliebt, thou hast loved.	Du habeſt geliebt, thou mayst have loved.
Er hat geliebt, he has loved.	Er habe geliebt, he may have loved.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir haben geliebt, we have loved.	Wir haben geliebt, we may have loved.
Ihr habt geliebt, you have loved.	Ihr habet geliebt, you may have loved.
Sie haben geliebt, they have loved.	Sie haben geliebt, they may have loved.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte geliebt, I had loved.	Ich hätte geliebt, I might have loved.
Du hätteſt geliebt, thou hadst loved.	Du hätteſt geliebt, thou mightst have loved.
Er hatte geliebt, he had loved.	Er hätte geliebt, he might have loved.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hatten geliebt, we had loved.	Wir hätten geliebt, we might have loved.
Ihr hattet geliebt, you had loved.	Ihr hättet geliebt, you might have loved.
Sie hatten geliebt, they had loved.	Sie hätten geliebt, they might have loved.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde lieben, I shall, or will love.	Ich werde lieben, I shall, or will love.
Du wirst lieben, thou wilt love.	Du werdest lieben, thou wilt love.
Er wird lieben, he will love.	Er werde lieben, he will love.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden lieben, we shall, or will love.	Wir werden lieben, we shall, or will love.
Ihr werdet lieben, you will love.	Ihr werdet lieben, you will love.
Sie werden lieben, they will love.	Sie werden lieben, they will love.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde geliebt haben, I shall have loved.	Ich werde geliebt haben, I shall have loved.
Du wirst geliebt haben, thou wilt have loved.	Du werdest geliebt haben, thou wilt have loved.
Er wird geliebt haben, he will have loved.	Er werde geliebt haben, he will have loved.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden geliebt haben, we shall have loved.	Wir werden geliebt haben, we shall have loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt haben, you will have loved.	Ihr werdet geliebt haben, you will have loved.
Sie werden geliebt haben, they will have loved.	Sie werden geliebt haben, they will have loved.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde lieben, I should, or would love.	Ich würde geliebt haben, I should have loved.
Du würdeſt lieben, thou wouldst love.	Du würdeſt geliebt haben, thou wouldst have loved.
Er würde lieben, he would love.	Er würde geliebt haben, he would have loved.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden lieben, we should, or would love.	Wir würden geliebt haben, we should have loved.
Ihr würdet lieben, you would love.	Ihr würdet geliebt haben, you would have loved.
Sie würden lieben, they would love.	Sie würden geliebt haben, they would have loved.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Liebe (du,) love (*thou.*)	Laſſet uns lieben, let us love.
	Liebet, liebt (ihr,) or Lieben Sie, love *you*, or do you love.
Liebe er, love he, or let him love.	Lieben ſie, love they, or let them love.

So decline, Loben, to praise; Glauben, to believe.

Observations on the Formation of Regular Verbs.

All the tenses are formed from the infinitive, which always terminates in en; as, lieben, *to* love; glauben, to believe, &c.; except when this termination is preceded by l, or r, then the e is frequently omitted; as, lächeln, to smile; hinbern, to hinder; instead of lächelen, hinderen.

The following Table exhibits the terminations of the Regular Verbs.

Present.

	Indicative.			Subjunctive.		
	1. *Per.*	2. *Per.*	3. *Per.*	1. *Per.*	2. *Per.*	3. *Per.*
S.	e.	ſt, or eſt.	t.	e.	eſt.	e.
Pl.	en.	t, or et.	en.	en.	et.	en.

Imperfect.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
S. *	te.	teſt.	te.	ete.	eteſt.	ete.
Pl.	ten.	tet.	ten.	eten.	etet.	eten.

Imperative.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
—	e.	e.	en.	et, or t.	en.

Infinitive.	Participle.
Present. en.	*Present,* vnd.
	Preterite, ge—et, or t.

* The perfect and plaperfect tenses are formed by the corresponding tenses of the verb haben, and the perfect participle; but some neuter verbs, of a particular description, take ſeyn instead of haben; the first future and simple conditional, are formed by werden and the present infinitive; the second future and compound of the conditional, by werden and the preterite infinitive.

Practice on the Regular Verbs.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

I esteem,	achten, to esteem.
Thou dost not labor,	arbeiten, to labor.
He banishes,	bannen, to banish.
We do not move,	bewegen, to move.
Do you build?	bauen, to build.
Do they not fear?	befürchten, to fear.

Imperfect.

I requested,	begehren, to request.
Thou didst not beg,	betteln, to beg.
Did it gleam?	ſtrahlen, to gleam.
We bled,	bluten, to bleed.
Did you form?	bilden, to form.
They did not borrow,	borgen, to borrow.

Perfect.

Have I not invented?	erdichten, to invent.
Hast thou suffered want?	darben, to suffer want.
He has served,	dienen, to serve.
It has not threatened,	drohen, to threaten.
Has she failed?	fehlen, to fail.
We have questioned,	fragen, to question.
You have not felt,	fühlen, to feel.
Have they not doubled?	doppeln, to double.

Pluperfect.

I had not ended,	endigen, to end.
Thou hadst fettered,	feſſeln, to fetter.
Had she borne?	dulden, to bear.
Had he not listened?	horchen, to listen.
We had not believed,	glauben, to believe.
Had you rubbed?	reiben, to rub.
Had they not spelt?	buchſtabieren, to spell.

First and second Future.

Shall I not smile?	lächeln, to smile.
Wilt thou not have improved?	beſſern, to improve.
It will not drop,	tropfen, to drop.
She will have cleansed,	reinigen, to cleanse.
We shall not have mixed,	miſchen, to mix.
You will have whetted,	wetzen, to whet.
Will they have lighted?	leuchten, to light.

Conditional; simple and compound.

Should I not have stretched?	dehnen, to stretch.
Wouldst thou not lead?	führen, to lead.
Would she not have polished?	poliren, to polish.
We would have sharpened,	ſchärfen, to sharpen.
You would not have quenched,	löſchen, to quench.
They would have spared,	miſſen, to spare.

Subjunctive.

Present and Imperfect.

I may not weaken,	ſchwächen, to weaken.
Thou mayst not inherit,	erben, to inherit.
He may conquer,	erobern, to conquer.
She might explain,	erklären, to explain.
We might not hear,	hören, to hear.
You may hunt,	jagen, to hunt.
They might hew,	hauen, to hew.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

I may not have hoped,	hoffen, to hope.
Thou mightst have buttoned,	knöpfen, to button.
He may have learnt,	lernen, to learn.
She might not have loved,	lieben, to love.
We might have denied,	läugnen, to deny.
You may have lived,	leben, to live.
They might have mentioned,	melden, to mention.

Future and Conditional.

I shall mitigate,	mildern, to mitigate.
Thou wilt mean,	meinen, to mean.
He will not envy,	neiden, to envy.
She would profit,	nützen, to profit.
We should not plant,	pflanzen, to plant.
You will polish,	poliren, to polish.
They will prove,	prüfen, to prove.

Imperative.

Do not rob,	rauben, to rob.
Reckon,	rechnen, to reckon.
Paint they, or let them paint,	schildern, to paint.

---

§ IV. *Conjugation of the Irregular Verb* Sehen, *to see.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Sehen, to see.	Sehend, seeing; or ein Sehender, one who is seeing.
Pret. Gesehen haben, to have seen.	

Part. Perf.

Gesehen, seen.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich sehe, I see.	Ich sehe, I may see.
Du siehst, or siehst, thou seest.	Du sehest, thou mayst see.
Er sieht, he sees.	Er sehe, he may see.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir sehen, we see.	Wir sehen, we may see.
Ihr sehet, you see.	Ihr sehet, you may see.
Sie sehen, they see.	Sie sehen, they may see.

Imperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich ſah, I saw.	Ich ſähe, I might see.
Du ſaheſt, or ſahſt, thou sawest.	Du ſäheſt, thou mightst see.
Er ſah, he saw.	Er ſähe, he might see.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ſahen, we saw.	Wir ſähen, we might see.
Ihr ſahet, you saw.	Ihr ſähet, you might see.
Sie ſahen, they saw.	Sie ſähen, they might see.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe geſehen, I have seen.	Ich habe geſehen, I may have seen.
Du haſt geſehen, thou hast seen.	Du habeſt geſehen, thou mayst have seen.
Er hat geſehen, he has seen.	Er habe geſehen, he may have seen.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir haben geſehen, we have seen.	Wir haben geſehen, we may have seen.
Ihr habet, or habt geſehen, you have seen.	Ihr habet geſehen, you may have seen.
Sie haben geſehen, they have seen.	Sie haben geſehen, they may have seen.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte geſehen, I had seen.	Ich hätte geſehen, I might have seen.
Du hatteſt geſehen, thou &c.	Du hätteſt geſehen, thou &c.
Er hatte geſehen, he, &c.	Er hätte geſehen, he, &c.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hatten geſehen, we had seen.	Wir hätten geſehen, we might have seen.
Ihr hattet geſehen, you &c.	Ihr hättet geſehen, you, &c.
Sie hatten geſehen, they, &c.	Sie hätten geſehen, they, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde ſehen, I shall see.	Ich werde ſehen, I shall see.
Du wirſt ſehen, thou wilt see.	Du werdeſt ſehen, thou wilt see.
Er wird ſehen, he will see.	Er werde ſehen, he will see.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden ſehen, we shall see.	Wir werden ſehen, we shall see.
Ihr werdet ſehen, you will see.	Ihr werdet ſehen, you will see.
Sie werden ſehen they will see.	Sie werden ſehen, they will see.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde geſehen haben, I shall have seen.	Ich werde geſehen haben, I shall have seen.
Du wirſt geſehen haben, thou wilt have seen.	Du werdeſt geſehen haben, thou wilt have seen.
Er wird geſehen haben, he, &c.	Er werde geſehen haben, he, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden geſehen haben, we shall have seen.	Wir werden geſehen haben, we shall have seen.
Ihr werdet geſehen haben, you will have seen.	Ihr werdet geſehen haben, you will have seen.
Sie werden geſehen haben, they, &c.	Sie werden geſehen haben, they, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde ſehen, I should see.	Ich würde geſehen haben, I should have seen.
Du würdeſt ſehen, thou wouldst see.	Du würdeſt geſehen haben, thou wouldst have seen.
Er würde ſehen, he would see.	Er würde geſehen haben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden ſehen, we should see.	Wir würden geſehen haben, we should have seen.
Ihr würdet ſehen, you would see.	Ihr würdet geſehen haben, you would have seen.
Sie würden ſehen, they would see.	Sie würden geſehen haben, they, &c.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Sieh, or ſiehe (du,) see (*thou.*)	Sehet (ihr,) see (*ye*, or *you*,) or ſehen Sie, see (*ye*, or *you.*)
Seh er, let him see.	Sehen ſie, let them see.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Irregular Verbs form four Divisions.

FIRST DIVISION.

Verbs in this division take te in the imperfect, and t in the participle; with some changes in the root; as,

Inf. Brennen, to burn.	*Part.* Gebrannt, burnt.
Ind. Pres. Ich brenne, &c.	*Imperf.* Ich brannte, &c.
Subj. Pres. Ich brenne, &c.	*Imperf.* Ich brennete, or brännte, &c.

So form:

Kennen, to know.
Nennen, to call, or name.
Rennen, to run.
Senden, to send.
Wenden, to turn.

Inf. Bringen, to bring. *Part.* Gebracht, brought.
Ind. Pres. Ich bringe, &c. *Imperf.* Ich brachte, &c.
Sub. Imperf. Ich brächte, &c.

Inf. Denken, to think. *Part.* Gedacht, thought.
Ind. Pres. Ich denke, &c. *Imperf.* Ich dachte, &c.
Sub. Imperf. Ich dächte, &c.

Inf. Dürfen, to dare. *Part.* Gedurft, dared.
Ind. Pres. Ich darf, du darfſt, er darf. *Plural.* Wir dürfen, ihr dürfet, ſie dürfen. *Imperf.* Ich durfte, &c.
Sub. Pres. Ich dürfe, &c. *Imperf.* Ich dürfte, &c.

Inf. Wiſſen, to know. *Part.* Gewußt, known.
Ind. Pres. Ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß. *Plural.* Wir wiſſen, ihr wiſſet, &c. *Imperf.* Ich wußte, &c.
Sub. Pres. Ich wiſſe, &c. *Imperf.* Ich wüßte, &c.

SECOND DIVISION.

First Class.

These verbs have a in the infinitive and participle, ie in the imperfect; the vowel a changed into ä, or ae in the second and third persons singular; as,

Inf. Blaſen, to blow. *Part.* Geblaſen, blown.
Ind. Pres. Ich blaſe, du bläſeſt, er bläſet, or bläſt. *Plural.* Wir blaſen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich blies, &c.
Sub. Imperf. Ich bliefe. *Imper.* Blaſe, &c.

So form:

Braten, to roast.
Fallen, to fall.
Halten, to hold.
Laſſen, to let.
Laufen, to run.
Rathen, to advise.
Schlafen, to sleep.

Hauen, to hew, makes hieb in the imperfect.

Hangen, to hang; fangen, to catch; take i instead of ie in the imperfect. Falzen, to fold; ſalzen, to salt; ſpalten, to split, are regular except in the participle.

Second Class.

These verbs have a in the infinitive and participle; u in the imperfect; the vowel changed as before.

Inf. Graben, to dig. *Part.* Gegraben, dug.

Ind. Pres. Ich grabe, du gräbeſt, er gräbt; wir graben, &c. *Imp.* Ich grub, &c.

Sub. Pres. Ich grabe. *Imperf.* Ich grübe, &c.

So form:

Backen, to bake.	Schaffen, to create.
Fahren, to go, to move.	Tragen, to carry.
Laden, to load.	Wachſen, to grow.
Schlagen, to beat.	Waſchen, to wash.

Mahlen, to paint, is regular; but mahlen, to grind, is irregular.

Third Class.

These verbs have e in the infinitive and participle, and take a in the imperfect, &c.; as,

Inf. Eſſen, to eat. *Part.* Gegeſſen, eaten.

Ind. Pres. Ich eſſe, du iſſeſt, er iſſet, or ißt; wir eſſen, ihr eſſet, ſie eſſen. *Imperf.* Ich aß, du aßeſt, er aß; wir aßen, &c. *Sub. Pres.* Ich eſſe. *Imperf.* Ich äße. *Imper.* Iß, &c.

So form:

Freſſen, to devour, or eat.	Treten, to tread.
Geben, to give.	Vergeſſen, to forget.
Meſſen, to measure.	

Sehen, to see; leſen, to read; take ie instead of i, in the indicative present and imperative; so likewise geſchehen, to happen, in the present; but it is seldom used in the imperative. Geneſen, to recover, is regular in the indicative present.

THIRD DIVISION.

In this division the imperfect and participle have the same vowel.

First Class.

These verbs have ei in the infinitive, and i in the imperfect and participle; as,

Inf. Sich befleißen, to apply, to be diligent. *Part.* Befliſſen, applied. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich befliß, &c.

So form:

Beißen, to bite.	Schleichen, to sneak.
Erbleichen, to grow pale.	Schmeißen, to fling.
Gleichen, to equal.	Streichen, to stroke.
Greifen, to seize.	Weichen, to yield.
Reißen, to tear.	

Some double the consonant of the root; as,

Inf. Keifen, to chide. *Part.* Gekiffen, chidden *Ind. Imperf.* Kiff, &c.

So form:

Gleiten, to glide.	Pfeifen, to whistle.
Greifen, to seize.	*Schleifen, to grind.
Kneifen, to pinch; or,	Schreiten, to stride.
Kneipen, to pinch.	Streiten, to contend.
Reiten, to ride.	

Leiden, to suffer, and ſchneiden, to cut, change the d of the infinitive into tt; as, *Imperf.* Litt, &c. *Part.* Gelitten, suffered, &c.

Some take ie instead of i; as,

Inf. Bleiben, to remain. *Part.* Geblieben, remained. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich blieb, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bleibe, &c.

* Schleifen, to drag, is regular.

So form:

Gedeihen, to prosper.	Schreiben, to write.
Leihen, to lend.	Schreien, to cry.
Meiden, to avoid.	Schweigen, to be silent.
Preiſen, to praise.	Steigen, to mount.
Reiben, to rub.	Treiben, to drive.
Scheinen, to appear.	Weiſen, to show.
Scheiden, to part.	Zeihen, to accuse of.

Second Class.

These verbs have ie, or i, and sometimes ů, in the infinitive, o in the imperfect and participle: ô in the imperfect subjunctive; as,

Inf. Betriegen, or betrügen, to deceive. *Part.* Betrogen, deceived. *Ind. Pres.* Ich betriege, du betriegeſt, er betriegt, (ich betrüge, du betrügſt, er betrügt,) &c. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich betrog, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich betröge, &c. *Imper.* Betriege, in poetry betrüge.

So form:

*Biegen, to bend. †*Part.* Gebogen.	Lügen, to lie.
Biethen, or bieten, to bid.	Riechen, to smell.
Fliegen, to fly.	Schieben, to push, shove.
Fliehen, to flee.	Schießen, to shoot.
Fließen, to flow.	Schliefen, to slip.
Frieren, to freeze.	Schließen, to shut.
Gebiethen, to command.	Sprießen, to sprout, shoot.
Genießen, to enjoy.	Stieben, to rise, to fly rapidly.
Gleißen, to glisten.	Triegen, to cheat.
Glimmen, to glimmer.	Verlieren, to lose.
Klimmen, to climb.	Verwirren, to confuse.
Klieben, to cleave.	Wiegen, to weigh.
Kriechen, to creep.	Ziehen, to draw.

* Some few, which have ie in the infinitive, change the ie in the second and third persons of the present indicative into eu in poetry, and in a higher style of writing; as, *Ind. Pres.* du beugſt, (instead of du biegſt,) or beugt, (instead of er biegt.)

† These verbs (like most others) take the augment ge for the participle; as, *Inf.* Biegen, to bend. *Part.* Gebogen, bent.

Sieden, to boil, changes the d into tt; as,
Ind. Imperf. Ich ſott, &c. *Part.* Geſotten.

Third Class.

These verbs have e, ä, or ö, in the infinitive, i in the second and third persons singular of the present, o in the imperfect and participle: ö in the imperfect subjunctive, i in the imperative; as,

Inf. Fechten, to fight. *Part.* Gefochten.
Ind. Pres. Ich fechte, du fichſt, er ficht; wir fechten, &c.
Imperf. Ich focht.
Subj. Imperf. Ich föchte, &c. *Imper.* Ficht, (or fechte.)

So form:

*Bellen, to bark.	Scheren, to shear.
Dreſchen, to thresh.	Schmelzen, to melt.
Erlöſchen, to extinguish.	Schwellen, to swell.
Flechten, to plait.	Verlöſchen, to expire.
Quellen, to spring.	

The following neither change in the present indicative, nor in the imperative.

Bewegen, to move.	Melken, to milk.
Erwägen, to weigh or consider.	Pflegen, to nurse.
	Schwären, to fester.
Gären, to ferment.	Schwören, to swear.
Heben, to heave.	Wägen, to weigh.

FOURTH DIVISION.

In this division the infinitive, imperfect and participle, have different vowels.

* Bellen, is regular in low German.

First Class.

These verbs have e in the infinitive, i in the second and third persons of the present indicative, a in the imperfect: o in the participle, ä, or ü in the imperfect subjunctive, and i in the imperative; as,

Inf. Bergen, to conceal. *Part.* Geborgen, concealed.
Ind. Pres. Ich berge, du birgſt, er birgt; wir bergen, &c.
Imperf. Ich barg, &c.
Sub. Imperf. Ich bärge, &c. *Imper.* Birg.

So form:

Brechen, to break.	Sprechen, to speak.
Erſchrecken, to frighten.	Treffen, to hit.
Stechen, to stab.	Nehmen, to take; makes nimm in the imperative.

The following verbs have either* ö, or ä in the subjunctive; as,

Gelten, to be worth. *Imperf. Subj.* Gölte, or gälte.

So form:

Berſten, to burst.	Schelten, to scold.
Gebähren, to bear, or bring forth.	Stehlen, to steal.

The following verbs change the ä into ü; as,

Helfen, to help. *Imperf. Subj.* Hülfe, (or hälfe.)

So form:

Sterben, to die.	Werben, to sue for.
Verbergen, to conceal.	Werden, to become.
Verderben, to spoil.	Werfen, to throw.

Second Class.

These verbs have i in the infinitive, a in the imperfect indicative, ö in the imperfect subjunctive, and o in the participle; as,

* The vowels, a, o, u, in the imperfect indicative, are generally changed into ä, ö, ü respectively, in the imperfect subjunctive.

Inf. Rinnen, to run, to drop. *Part.* Geronnen, run. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich rann, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich rönne, or ränne.

So form:

Beginnen, to begin.	Schwimmen, to swim.
Beſinnen, to bethink.	Sinnen, to think, or meditate.
Gewinnen, to gain.	Spinnen, to spin.

But most verbs that have the infinitive in i, have the imperfect subjunctive in ä; as,

Inf. Binden, to bind. *Part.* Gebunden, bound.
Ind. Imper. Ich band, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bände, &c.

So form:

Dringen, to press.	Schwingen, to swing.
Empfinden, to perceive.	Singen, to sing.
Finden, to find.	Sinken, to sink.
Gelingen, to succeed.	Springen, to spring.
Klingen, to sound.	Stinken, to stink.
Ringen, to wrestle.	Trinken, to drink.
Schlingen, to swallow.	Winden, to wind.
Schwinden, to disappear.	Zwingen, to force.

Schinden, to flea, takes ü instead of ä in the imperfect subjunctive; as,

Subj. Imperf. Ich ſchünde, &c. so also dingen, to bargain, but it is generally regular.

The following Verbs come under no particular Rule.

Inf. Bitten, to pray. *Part.* Gebeten, prayed.
Ind. Imperf. Ich bat, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich bäte.

Erſchallen, to resound. *Part.* Erſchollen, resounded
Ind. Imperf. Ich erſcholl, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich erſchölle, &c.

Gehen, to go. *Part.* Gegangen, gone.

Heißen, to bid. *Part.* Geheißen, bidden. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich hieß, &c.

Kommen, to come. *Part.* Gekommen, come. *Ind. Pres.* Ich komme, du kömmſt, er kömmt. *Imp.* Ich kam, &c. *Subj.* Ich käme. *Imperf.* Komm.

Liegen, to lie. *Part.* Gelegen, lain. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich lag, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich läge.

Rufen, to call. *Part.* Gerufen, called. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich rief, &c.

Saufen, to drink. *Part.* Geſoffen, drunk. *Ind. Pres.* Ich ſaufe, du ſäufſt, er ſäuft; wir ſaufen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich ſoff, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich ſöffe, &c. *Imper.* Sauf.

Saugen, to suck. *Part.* Geſogen, sucked. *Ind. Pres.* Ich ſauge, du ſäugſt, er ſäugt; wir ſaugen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich ſog, &c. *Subj. Ind.* Ich ſöge, &c. *Imperf.* Sauge.

Schrauben, to screw. *Part.* Geſchroben, screwed. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich Schrob, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich ſchrobe, &c.

Seyn, to be. *Part.* Geweſen, been. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich war, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich wäre, &c. (*see the auxiliaries, page* 97.)

Sitzen, to sit. *Part.* Geſeſſen, sat. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich ſaß, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich ſäße, &c.

Stehen, to stand. *Part.* Geſtanden, stood. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich ſtand, &c. *Subj.* Ich ſtände, (or ſtünde,) &c.

Stoßen, to thrust. *Part.* Geſtoßen, thrust. *Ind. Pres.* Ich ſtoße, du ſtößeſt, er ſtößt; wir ſtoßen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich ſtieß, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich ſtieße, *Imper.* Stoß.

Thun, to do, or to make. *Part.* Gethan, done, or made. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich that, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich thäte, &c.

Infinitive.	*Present.* *Indicative.*	*Imperfect.* *Indicative.*	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Participle.*
B.					
Backen, to bake.	ich backe, du bäckſt, er bäckt, I bake, thou bakest, he bakes.	ich buck, or backte, I baked.	ich bücke, I might bake	backe(du,)bake or do thou bake	gebacken, baked.
Bedingen, to contract.	ich bedinge, du bedingſt, er bedingt.	ich bedung	ich bedünge	bedinge	bedungen.
Befehlen, to command.	ich befehle, du befiehlſt, er befiehlt.	ich befahl	ich beföhle	befiehl	befohlen.
Befleißen, (ſich *reflective*) to study, or apply oneself.	ich befleiße, du befleißeſt, er befleißt.	ich befliß	ich befliſſe	befleiß	befliſſen.
Beginnen, to begin.	ich beginne, &c.	ich begann, or begonnte	ich begänne, or begönnte	beginne	begonnen.
Beißen, to bite.	ich beiße, &c.	ich biß	ich biſſe	beiß, or beiße	gebiſſen.
Bergen, to conceal.	ich berge, du birgſt, er birgt.	ich barg	ich bärge, or bürge	birg, or birge	geborgen.
Berſten, to burst.	ich berſte, du berſteſt, or birſteſt, er berſtet, or birſt.	ich barſt, or borſt	ich bärſte, or börſte	birſt, or berſte	geborſten.
Beſinnen, (ſich *reflective*) to recollect.	ich beſinne, du beſinnſt, &c.	ich beſann	ich beſänne	beſinn	beſonnen.
Betriegen, or, betrügen, to cheat, or to deceive.	ich betriege, du betriegſt, er betriegt, or ich betrüge, du betrügſt, er betrügt.	ich betrog	ich betröge	betriege, or betrüge	betrogen.

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Participle.
Bewegen, to move, to induce.	ich bewege, &c.	ich bewog	ich bewöge	bewege	bewogen.
Biegen, to bend, to bow.	ich biege, &c.	ich bog	ich böge	biege	gebogen.
Bieten, to bid, to offer.	ich biete, &c.	ich bot	ich böte	biete	geboten.
Binden, to bind.	ich binde, &c.	ich band	ich bände	binde	gebunden.
Bitten, to beg, to ask	ich bitte, &c.	ich bat	ich bäte	bitte	gebeten.
Blasen, to blow.	ich blase, du bläsest, er bläset, or bläst	ich blies	ich bliese	blase	geblasen.
Bleiben, to remain.	ich bleibe, &c.	ich blieb	ich bliebe	bleibe, or bleib	geblieben.
Bleichen, to bleach.	ich bleiche, &c.	ich blich	ich bliche	blich	geblichen.
Braten, to roast.	ich brate, du bratest, er bratet, (or ich brate, du brätst, er brät.)	ich bratete, or briet	ich bratete, or briete	brate, or brat	gebraten.
Brechen, to break.	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht	ich brach	ich bräche	brich	gebrochen.
Brennen, to burn.	ich brenne, &c.	ich brannte	ich brennete, or brännte	brenne	gebrannt.
Bringen, to bring.	ich bringe, &c.	ich brachte	ich brächte	bringe	gebracht.
D					
Denken, to think.	ich denke, &c.	ich dachte	ich dächte	denke	gedacht.
Dingen, to bargain, to hire.	ich dinge, &c.	ich dung	ich dünge	dinge	gedungen.
Dreschen, to thresh	ich dresche, du drischest, er drischt	ich drasch, or drosch	ich dräsche, or ich drösche	drisch	gedroschen.

Dringen, to press, to urge.	ich dringe, &c.	ich drang, or drung	ich dränge, or drünge	gedrungen.
Dürfen, to dare.	ich darf, du darfst, er darf, wir dürfen	ich durfte	ich dürfte	gedurft.
E				
Empfangen, to receive.	ich empfange, du empfängst, er empfängt	ich empfing	ich empfinge	empfange empfangen.
Empfehlen, to recommend.	ich empfehle, du empfiehlst, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl, or empfohl	ich empföhle	empfiehl empfohlen.
Empfinden, to feel, to perceive	ich empfinde, &c.	ich empfand	ich empfände	empfind empfunden.
Entrinnen, to escape.	ich entrinne, &c.	ich entrann	ich entränne	entrinn entronnen.
Erbleichen, to grow pale.	ich erbleiche, &c.	ich erblich	ich erbliche	erbleiche erblichen.
Erküren, to choose.	ich erküre, &c.	ich erkor	ich erköre	erküre erkoren.
Erlöschen, to extinguish, or to become extinct.	ich erlösche, du erlöschest, or erlischest, er erlöscht, or erlischt	ich erlosch	ich erlösche	erlisch erloschen.
Erschallen, to resound	ich erschalle, &c.	ich erscholl	ich erschälle	erschalle, or erschall erschollen.
Erschrecken, to frighten	ich erschrecke, du erschrickst, er erschrickt	ich erschrak	ich erschräke	erschrick erschrocken.
Essen, to eat	ich esse, du issest, er isset, or ißt	ich aß	ich äße	iß gegessen.
F				
Fahren, to ride, to go.	ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	ich führe	fahre gefahren.
Fallen, to fall	ich falle, du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel	ich fiele	falle, or fall gefallen.
Fangen, to catch	ich fange, du fängst, er fängt	ich fing	ich finge	fange gefangen.
Fechten, to fight	ich fechte, du fichst, er ficht	ich focht	ich föchte	fecht, or ficht gefochten.

	Present	Imperfect.			
Infinitive.	*Indicative.*	*Indicative.*	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Participle.*
Finden, to find	ich finde, &c.	ich fand	ich fände	finde	gefunden.
Flechten, to plait, to twist	ich flechte, du flichst, er flicht	ich flocht	ich flöchte	flicht	geflochten.
Fliegen, to fly	ich fliege, du fliegst, er fliegt	ich flog	ich flöge	fliege	geflogen.
Fliehen, to flee, to run away	ich fliehe, &c.	ich floh	ich flöhe	fliehe, or flieh	geflohen.
Fließen, to flow	ich fließe, &c.	ich floß	ich flösse	fließe, or fließ	geflossen.
Fressen, to eat, devour	ich fresse, du frissest, er frisset, or frißt	ich fraß	ich fräße	friß	gefressen.
Frieren, to freeze	ich friere, &c.	ich fror	ich frore	friere	gefroren.
G					
Gähren, to ferment	ich gähre, du gährst, er gährt	ich gohr	ich göhre	gähre	gegohren.
Gebären, to bring forth	ich gebäre, du gebärst, (or gebierst) er gebärt, (or gebiert)	ich gebar	ich gebäre, or gebore	gebäre, or gebier	geboren.
Geben, to give	ich gebe, du giebst, er giebt	ich gab	ich gäbe	gieb	gegeben.
Gebieten, to command	ich gebiete, &c.	ich gebot	ich geböte	gebiete	geboten.
Gedeihen, to prosper	ich gedeihe, &c.	ich gedieh	ich gediehe	gedeih	gedeihen.
Gefallen, to please	ich gefalle, du gefällst, er gefällt	ich gefiel	ich gefiele	gefalle	gefallen.
Gehen, to go, to walk	ich gehe, &c.	ich ging	ich ginge	gehe, or geh	gegangen.
Gelingen, to succeed	ich gelinge, &c.	ich gelang	ich gelänge	gelinge	gelungen.
Gelten, to be worth, to cost	ich gelte, du giltst, er gilt	ich galt	ich gälte, or gölte	gilt	gegolten.
Genesen, to recover (from illness)	ich genese, &c.	ich genas	ich genäse	genese	genesen.

Genießen, to enjoy	ich genieße, &c.	ich genoß	ich genösse	genieß	genossen.
Geschehen, to happen	es geschieht	es geschah	es geschähe	geschehe	geschehen.
Gewinnen, to gain, to win	ich gewinne, &c.	ich gewann	ich gewönne, or gewänne	gewinne	gewonnen.
Gießen, to pour, to spill	ich gieße, &c.	ich goß	ich gösse	gieße, or gieß	gegossen.
Gleichen, to resemble	ich gleiche, &c.	ich glich	ich gliche	gleiche	geglichen.
Gleiten, to glide	ich gleite, &c.	ich glitt	ich glitte	gleite	geglitten.
Glimmen, to shine, to glimmer	ich glimme, &c.	ich glomm	ich glömme	glimm	geglommen.
Graben, to dig	ich grabe, du gräbst, er gräbt	ich grub	ich grübe	grabe	gegraben.
Greifen, to seize, to grasp	ich greife, &c.	ich griff	ich griffe	greife, or greif	gegriffen.
H					
Haben, to have	ich habe, du hast, er hat	ich hatte	ich hätte	habe	gehabt.
Halten, to hold	ich halte, du hältst, er hält	ich hielt	ich hielte	halte, or halt	gehalten.
Hangen, to hang	ich hange, du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	ich hinge	hange	gehangen.
Hauen, to hew	ich haue, du haust, er haut	ich hieb	ich hiebe	haue, or hau	gehauen.
Heben, to heave	ich hebe, du hebst, er hebt	ich hob	ich höbe, or hübe	hebe	gehoben.
Heißen, to bid	ich heiße, du heißest, er heißt	ich hieß	ich hieße	heiße, or heiß	geheißen.
Helfen, to help	ich helfe, du hilfst, er hilft	ich half	ich hulfe	hilf	geholfen.
K					
Keifen, to chide	ich keife, &c.	ich kiff	ich kiffe	keife, or keif	gekiffen.
Kennen, to know	ich kenne, &c.	ich kannte	ich kennete	kenne	gekannt.
Kleben, to cleave	ich klebe, &c.	ich klob	ich klöbe	klebe	geklobe.
Klimmen, to climb	ich klimme, &c.	ich klomm	ich klömme	klimme	geklommen.

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect. Indicative.	Imperfect. Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Participle.
Klingen, to sound	ich klinge, &c.	ich klang	ich klänge	klinge	geklungen.
Kneifen, or Kneipen, to pinch	ich kneife, or kneipe, &c.	ich kniff, or knipp	ich kniffe, or knippe	kneife, or kneipe	gekniffen, or gekneippen.
Kommen, to come	ich komme, du kommſt, &c.	ich kam	ich käme	komm	gekommen.
Können, to be able	ich kann, du kannſt, er kann	ich konnte	ich könnte	——	gekonnt.
Kriechen, to creep	ich kriech, du kriechſt, &c.	ich kroch	ich kröche	krieche, or kriech	gekrochen.
L					
Laden, to load	ich lade, du ládeſt, or ládſt, er ládet, or ládt	ich lud	ich lüde	lade	geladen.
Laſſen, to let	ich laſſe, du láſſeſt, er láſſet, or er láßt	ich ließ	ich ließe	laſſe, or laß	gelaſſen.
Laufen, to run	ich laufe, du läufſt, er läuft	ich lief	ich liefe	laufe, or lauf	gelaufen.
Leiden, to ſuffer	ich leide, &c.	ich litt	ich litte	leide	gelitten.
Leihen, to lend	ich leihe, &c.	ich lieh	ich liehe	leihe	geliehen.
Leſen, to read	ich leſe, du lieſeſt, er lieſt	ich las	ich läſe	lies	geleſen.
Liegen, to lie down	ich liege, &c.	ich lag	ich läge	liege	gelegen.
Lügen, to lie, to utter a falſehood	ich lüge, &c.	ich log	ich löge	lüge	gelogen.
M					
*Mahlen, to grind	ich mahle, du mahleſt, er mahlt	ich mahlte	ich mahlete	mahle	gemahlen.
Meiden, to avoid	ich meide, &c.	ich mied	ich miede	meide	gemieden.

* Mahlen, to paint, is regular.

Melken, to milk	*ich melke, du melkst, er melkt, or du milkst, er milkt*	*ich molk*	*ich mölke*	*melke, or milk.*	*gemolken.*
Messen, to measure	ich messe, du misself, er misset, or mißt	ich maß	ich mäße	miß	gemessen.
Mißfallen, to displease	ich mißfalle, du mißfällst, er mißfällt	ich mißfiel	ich mißfiele	mißfalle	mißfallen.
Mögen, to be willing to be able, to like	ich mag, du magst, er mag	ich mochte	ich möchte	möge	gemocht.
Müssen, to be obliged	ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müssen, &c.	ich mußte	ich müßte	——	gemußt.
N.					
Nehmen, to take.	ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	ich nähme	nimm	genommen.
Nennen, to name.	ich nenne, &c.	ich nannte	ich nennete	nenne, or nenn	genannt.
P.					
Pfeifen, to whistle	ich pfeife, &c.	ich pfiff	ich pfiffe	pfeife, or pfeif.	gepfiffen.
Pflegen, to cherish	ich pflege, &c.	ich pflog	ich pflöge	pflege	gepflogen.
Preisen, to extol, to praise	ich preise, &c.	ich pries	ich priese	preise	gepriesen.
Q.					
Quellen, to spring forth, to gush, *(of fluids)*	ich quelle, du quillst, er quillt	ich quoll	ich quölle	quelle, or quill.	gequollen.
R.					
Rathen, to advise	ich rathe, du räthst, er räth	ich rieth	ich riethe	rathe, or rath.	gerathen.
Reiben, to rub	ich reibe, &c.	ich rieb	ich riebe	reibe	gerieben.
Reißen, to tear	ich reiße, &c.	ich riß	ich risse	reiße, or reiß	gerissen.
Reiten, to ride	ich reite, &c.	ich ritt	ich ritte	reite, or reit	geritten.
Rennen, to run	ich renne, &c.	ich rannte, or rennte	ich rennete	renne	gerannt.

Present.		Imperfect.			
Infinitive.	*Indicative.*	*Indicative.*	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Participle.*
Riechen, to smell	ich rieche, &c.	ich roch	ich röche,	rieche, or riech	gerochen.
Ringen, to wrestle	ich ringe, &c.	ich rang	ich ränge	ringe	gerungen.
Rinnen, to run, to drop, *(of fluids)*	ich rinne, &c.	ich rann	ich ränne, or rönne	rinne	geronnen.
Rufen, to call	ich rufe, &c.	ich rief	ich riefe	rufe	gerufen.
S.					
Saufen, to drink hard, to tipple	ich ſaufe, du ſäuſt, er ſäuft	ich ſoff	ich ſöffe	ſaufe, or ſauf	geſoffen.
Saugen, to suck	ich ſauge, du ſaugſt, er ſaugt	ich ſog	ich ſöge	ſauge	geſogen
Schaffen, to create	ich ſchaffe, du ſchaffſt, &c.	ich ſchuf	ich ſchüfe	ſchaffe, or ſchaff	geſchaffen
Scheiden, to separate, to part	ich ſcheide, &c.	ich ſchied	ich ſchiede	ſcheide	geſchieden
Scheinen, to appear, to shine	ich ſcheine, &c.	ich ſchien	ich ſchiene	ſcheine	geſchienen
Schelten, to scold, to chide	ich ſchelte, du ſchiltſt, er ſchilt	ich ſchalt	ich ſchälte	ſchilt	geſcholten
Scheren, to shear	ich ſchere, du ſcherſt, er ſchert	ich ſchor	ich ſchöre	ſchere	geſchoren.
Schieben, to push, to shove	ich ſchiebe, du ſchiebſt, er ſchiebt	ich ſchob	ich ſchöbe	ſchiebe, or ſchieb	geſchoben.
Schießen, to shoot	ich ſchieße, &c.	ich ſchoß	ich ſchöſſe	ſchieße, or ſchieß	geſchoſſen.
Schinden, to slay	ich ſchinde, &c.	ich ſchund	ich ſchünde	ſchinde	geſchunden.
Schlafen, to sleep	ich ſchlafe, du ſchläfſt, er ſchläft	ich ſchlief	ich ſchliefe	ſchlafe, or ſchlaf	geſchlafen.

Schlagen, to beat, to strike	ich schlage, du schlägst, er schlägt	ich schlug	ich schlüge	schlage	geschlagen.
Schleichen, to sneak	ich schleiche, &c.	ich schlich	ich schliche	schleiche	geschlichen.
Schleifen, to grind, to sharpen	ich schleife, &c.	ich schliff	ich schliffe	schleife	geschliffen.
Schleißen, to split, to slit	ich schleiße, &c.	ich schliß	ich schlisse	schleiße	geschlissen.
Schließen, to shut, to lock up	ich schließe, &c.	ich schloß	ich schlösse	schließe	geschlossen.
Schlingen, to sling	ich schlinge, &c.	ich schlang	ich schlänge	schlinge	geschlungen.
Schmeißen, to throw	ich schmeiße, &c.	ich schmiß	ich schmisse	schmeiße	geschmissen.
Schmelzen, to melt	ich schmelze, du schmilzest, &c.	ich schmolz	ich schmölze	schmelz, or schmilz	geschmolzen.
Schneiden, to cut	ich schneide, &c.	ich schnitt	ich schnitte	schneide	geschnitten.
Schrauben, to screw	ich schraube, &c.	ich schrob	ich schröbe	schraube	geschroben.
Schreiben, to write	ich schreibe, &c.	ich schrieb	ich schriebe	schreibe	geschrieben.
Schreien, to cry	ich schreie, &c.	ich schrie	ich schrie	schreie	geschrien.
Schreiten, to stride	ich schreite, &c.	ich schritt	ich schritte	schreite	geschritten.
Schwären, to fester, to suppurate	ich schwäre, &c.	ich schwor	ich schwöre	schwäre	geschworen.
Schweigen, to be silent	ich schweige, &c.	ich schwieg	ich schwiege	schweige	geschwiegen.
Schwellen, to swell	ich schwelle, du schwillst, er schwillt	ich schwoll	ich schwölle	schwelle	geschwollen.
Schwimmen, to swim	ich schwimme, &c.	ich schwamm	ich schwämme	schwimme	geschwommen.
Schwinden, to vanish	ich schwinde, &c.	ich schwand	ich schwände	schwinde	geschwunden.
Schwingen, to swing	ich schwinge, &c.	ich schwang	ich schwange	schwinge	geschwungen.

	Present.	Imperfect.			
Infinitive.	*Indicative.*	*Indicative.*	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Participle.*
Schwören, to swear	ich schwöre, &c.	ich schwor, or schwur	ich schwöre, or schwüre	schwöre	geschworen.
Sehen, to see	ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht	ich sah	ich sähe	siehe, or sieh	gesehen.
Senden, to send	ich sende, &c.	ich sandte	ich sendete	sende	gesandt.
Seyn, to be	ich bin, du bist, er ist	ich war	ich wäre	sey	gewesen.
Sieden, to boil	ich siede, &c.	ich sott	ich sötte	siede	gesotten.
Singen, to sing	ich singe, &c.	ich sang	ich sänge	singe	gesungen.
Sinken, to sink	ich sinke, &c.	ich sank	ich sänke	sinke	gesunken.
Sinnen, to think, to meditate	ich sinne, &c.	ich sann	ich sänne	sinne	gesonnen.
Sitzen, to sit	ich sitze, &c.	ich saß	ich säße	sitze	gesessen.
Sollen, to be obliged	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	ich sollte	ich sollte	——	gesollt.
Speyen, or speien, to spit	ich speye, &c.	ich spie	ich spie	speye, or spey	gespien.
Spinnen, to spin	ich spinne, &c.	ich spann	ich spänne	spinne	gesponnen.
Spleißen, to split, or to cleave	ich spleiße, &c.	ich spliß	ich splisse	spleiße	gesplissen.
Sprechen, to speak	ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ich spräche	sprich	gesprochen.
Sprießen, to sprout	ich sprieße, &c.	ich sproß	ich sprösse	sprieße	gesprossen.
Springen, to spring, to leap	ich springe, &c.	ich sprang	ich spränge	springe	gesprungen.
Stechen, to sting, to prick	ich steche, du stichst, er sticht	ich stach	ich stäche	stich	gestochen.

Stecken, to stick	ich stecke, &c.	ich steckte, or stak	ich steckte, or stäke	gesteckt.
Stehen, to stand	ich stehe, &c.	ich stand, or stund	ich stände, or stünde	gestanden.
Stehlen, to steal	ich stehle, du stiehlst, er stiehlt	ich stahl	ich stähle	stiehl	gestohlen.
Steigen, to mount, to ascend	ich steige, &c.	ich stieg	ich stiege	steige, or steig	gestiegen.
Sterben, to die	ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	ich stürbe	stirb	gestorben.
Stieben, to dust, to scatter	ich stiebe, &c.	ich stob	ich stöbe	stieb, or stiebe	gestoben.
Stinken, to stink	ich stinke, &c.	ich stank	ich stänke	stinke	gestunken.
Stoßen, to push	ich stoße, du stößest, er stößt	ich stieß	ich stieße	stoße, or stoß	gestoßen.
Streichen, to stroke, to slide along	ich streiche, &c.	ich strich	ich striche	streiche	gestrichen.
Streiten, to strive, to contend	ich streite, &c.	ich stritt	ich stritte	streite	gestritten.

T.

Thun, to do	ich thue, du thust, er thut	ich that	ich thäte	thue, or thu	gethan.
Tragen, to carry	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt	ich trug	ich trüge	trage	getragen.
Treffen, to hit	ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft	ich traf	ich träfe	triff	getroffen.
Treiben, to drive	ich treibe, &c.	ich trieb	ich triebe	treibe	getrieben.
Treten, to tread	ich trete, du trittst, er tritt	ich trat	ich träte	tritt	getreten.
Trügen, to deceive	ich trüge, &c.	ich trog	ich tröge	triege	getrogen.
Trinken, to drink	ich trinke, &c.	ich trank	ich tränke	trinke, or trink	getrunken.

V.

Verbergen, to conceal	ich verberge, du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg	ich verbärge	verbirg	verborgen.

	Present.	Imperfect.			
Infinitive.	*Indicative.*	*Indicative.*	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative*	*Participle.*
Verbieten, to forbid	ich verbiete, &c.	ich verbot	ich verböte	verbiete	verboten.
Verbleichen, to fade	ich verbleiche, &c.	ich verblich	ich verbliche	verbleiche	verblichen.
Verderben, to spoil, to corrupt	ich verderbe, du verdirbst, er verdirbt	ich verdarb	ich verdärbe	verdirb	verdorben.
Verdrießen, to offend	es verdrießt, &c. *only used in the 3d. per.*	es verdroß	es verdrösse	verdrieße	verdrossen.
Vergessen, to forget	ich vergesse, du vergissest, er vergißt	ich vergaß	ich vergäße	vergiß	vergessen.
Vergleichen, to compare	ich vergleiche, &c.	ich verglich	ich vergliche	vergleiche	verglichen.
Verlassen, to leave	ich verlasse, du verlässest, er verläßt	ich verließ	ich verließe	verlaß	verlassen.
Verlieren, to lose	ich verliere, &c.	ich verlor	ich verlöre	verliere	verloren.
Verlöschen, to extinguish	ich verlösche, &c.	ich verlosch	ich verlösche	verlösche	verloschen.
Vermeiden, to avoid	ich vermeide, &c.	ich vermied	ich vermiede	vermeide	vermieden.
Verwirren, to perplex, to confound	ich verwirre, &c.	ich verwirrte, or ich verworr	ich verwirrete, or ich verwörre	verwirre	verwirret, or verworren.
Verzeihen, to forgive	ich verzeihe, &c.	ich verzieh	ich verziehe	verzeih	verziehen.
W.					
Wachsen, to grow	ich wachse, du wächsest, er wächst	ich wuchs	ich wüchse	wachse	gewachsen.
Wägen, or Wiegen, to weigh	ich wiege, du wiegst, er wiegt, or ich wäge, du wägst, er wägt	ich wog	ich wöge	wäge	gewogen.
Waschen, to wash	ich wasche, du wäschest, er wäscht	ich wusch	ich wüsche	wasche	gewaschen.
Weichen, to yield	ich weiche, &c.	ich wich	ich wiche	weiche	gewichen.

Weiſen, to show	ich weiſe, &c.	ich wies	ich wieſe	weiſe	gewieſen.
Werben, to sue for, to enroll	ich werbe, du wirbſt, er wirbt	ich warb	ich wärbe	wirb	geworben.
Werden, to become	ich werde, du wirſt, er wird	ich ward	ich würde	werde	geworden.
Werfen, to throw	ich werfe, du wirfſt, er wirft	ich warf	ich wärfe	wirf	geworfen.
Winden, to wind, to turn	ich winde, &c.	ich wand	ich wände	winde	gewunden.
Wiſſen, to know	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	ich wußte	ich wüßte	wiſſe	gewußt.
Wollen, to be willing to wish	ich will, du willſt, er will; wir wollen, &c.	ich wollte	ich wollte	wolle	gewollt.
Z.					
Zeihen, to accuse of	ich zeihe, &c.	ich zieh	ich ziehe	zeihe	geziehen.
Ziehen, to draw, to pull	ich ziehe, &c.	ich zog	ich zöge	ziehe, or zieh	gezogen.
Zwingen, to force, to compel	ich zwinge, &c.	ich zwang	ich zwänge	zwinge	gezwungen.

Obs. The following Verbs are regular if they are used as Actives, and irregular if they are used as Neuters.

	Present.	*Imperfect.*			
Infinitive.	*Indicative.*	*Indicative.*	*Subjunctive.*	*Imperative.*	*Participle.*
Regular Active	ich erſchrecke, I frighten	ich erſchreckte	ich erſchreckete	erſchrecke	erſchrecket.
Irreg. Neuter	ich erſchrecke, I am frightened	ich erſchrak	ich erſchräke	erſchrick	erſchrocken.
Reg. Active	ich ſcheide, I separate	ich ſcheidte	ich ſcheidete	ſcheide	geſcheidet.
Irreg. Neuter	ich ſcheide, I depart	ich ſchied	ich ſchiede	ſcheide	geſchieden.
Reg. Active	ich ſchmelze, I melt	ich ſchmelzte	ich ſchmelzete	ſchmelze	geſchmelzet.
Irreg. Neuter	ich ſchmelze, I am melted, or I melt	ich ſchmolz	ich ſchmölze	ſchmilz	geſchmolzen.
Reg. Active	ich ſchweige, I silence	ich ſchweigte	ich ſchweigete	ſchweige	geſchweiget.
Irreg. Neuter	ich ſchweige, I am silent	ich ſchwieg	ich ſchwiege	ſchweige	geſchwiegen.
Reg. Active	ich verderbe, I spoil	ich verderbte	ich verderbete	verderbe	verderbet.
Irreg. Neuter	ich verderbe, I perish	ich verdarb	ich verdärbe	verdirb	verdorben.
Reg. Active	ich weiche, I soften	ich weichte	ich weichete	weiche	geweichet.
Irreg. Neuter	ich weiche, I give way, or yield	ich wich	ich wiche	weiche	gewichen.

The following are also to be distinguished.

Saugen, to suck, *irreg.*	Säugen, to suckle, *regular.*
Schwimmen, to swim, *ir.*	Schwemmen, to wash away, *reg.*
Sinken, to sink, *ir.*	Senken, to sink, to let down, *reg.*
Springen, to spring, *ir*	Sprengen, to sprinkle, *reg.*
Trinken, to drink, *ir.*	Tränken, to drink, *reg.*

Promiscuous practice on the Irregular Verbs.

Indicative.

Present.	Infinitive.
I know,	wiſſen.
Do I dare?	dürfen.
I must not,	müſſen.
Can I not?	können.
Thou fallest,	fallen.
Dost thou catch?	fangen.
Thou dost not hold,	halten.
Dost thou not hang?	hängen.
He must,	müſſen.
Can he?	können.
He does not let,	laſſen.
Does he not sleep?	ſchlafen.
She advises,	rathen.
Does she go?	fahren.
She does not dig,	graben.
Does she not strike?	ſchlagen.
It grows,	wachſen.
Does it see?	ſehen.
It does not eat,	eſſen.
Does it not happen?	geſchehen.
We give,	geben.
Do we step?	treten.
We do not forget,	vergeſſen.
You read,	leſen.
Do you measure?	meſſen.
You do not hew,	hauen.
Do you not carry?	tragen.
They see,	ſehen.
Do they remain?	bleiben.
They do not seize,	greifen.
They do not go?	gehen.

Imperfect.	Infinitive.
I might,	mögen.
Did I eat?	eſſen.
I did not dig,	graben.

Imperfect.	Infinitive.
Did I not step?	treten.
Thou remainedst,	bleiben.
Didst thou lend?	leihen.
Thou didst not avoid,	meiden.
Didst thou not fight?	fechten.
He moved,	bewegen.
Did he heave, or lift?	heben.
He did not conceal,	bergen.
Did he not take?	nehmen.
He commanded,	befehlen.
Did she speak?	ſprechen.
She did not write,	ſchreiben.
Did she not praise?	preiſen.
It bit,	beißen.
Did it glide?	gleiten.
It did not drive,	treiben.
Did it not bark?	bellen.

Perfect.	Infinitive.
I have begun.	beginnen.
Hast thou spoken?	ſprechen.
Has he not deceived?	betriegen.
She has not fled,	fliehen.
It has not flowed,	fließen.
We have not sheared,	ſcheren.
Have you not broken?	brechen.
They have not recommended,	empfehlen.

Pluperfect.	Infinitive.
I had not stolen,	ſtehlen.
Hadst thou commanded?	befehlen.
He had valued,	gelten.
She had not given,	geben.
Had it not begun?	beginnen.
He had helped,	helfen.
We had prayed, or begged,	bitten.
You had called,	heißen.
Had they not thrust?	ſtoßen.

First and second Future.

I shall lose,	verlieren.
I shall have lost,	.....

Wilt thou shoot?	ſchießen.
Wilt thou have shot?	.....
He will win,	gewinnen.
Will he not have won?	.....
She will spin,	ſpinnen.
Will she not have spun?	.....
It will boil,	ſieden.
It will have boiled,	.....
We shall see,	ſehen.
We shall have seen,	.....
You will not grow,	wachſen.
You will not have grown,	.....
They will rub,	reiben.
Will they not have rubbed?	.....

Conditional; Simple and Compound.

I should not seize,	greifen.
I should not have seized,	.....
Wouldst thou bend?	biegen.
Wouldst thou have bent?	.....
He would beat,	ſchlagen.
He would have beaten,	.....
She would drink,	trinken.
She would have drank,	.....
It would not sink,	ſinken.
Would it not have sunk?	.....
Should we sue for?	werben.
We should not have sued for it,	.....
You would throw,	werfen.
You would have thrown,	.....
They would perceive,	empfinden.
Would they not have perceived?	.....

Imperative.

Read (*thou,*)	leſen.
Give,	geben.
Take,	nehmen.
Do not step,	treten.
Eat, or do you eat,	eſſen.
Do not forget,	vergeſſen.
Let him come,	kommen.
Let him not give,	geben.

Let us go,	gehen.
Speak, or do you speak,	ſprechen.
Let them enjoy,	genießen.
Do not speak,	ſprechen.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may fall,	fallen.
I may not be able,	können.
Thou mayst not,	mögen.
Thou must,	müſſen.
He may be willing,	wollen.
We may beat,	ſchlagen.
They may not bear,	tragen.

Imperfect.

I might dig,	graben.
I might not die,	ſterben.
Thou mightst break,	brech'en.
Thou mightst not command,	befehlen.
He might conceal,	bergen.
She might not help,	helfen.
It might eat,	eſſen.
It might not sting,	ſtechen.
We might not lose,	verlieren.
You might not creep,	kriechen.
They might not confuse,	verwirren.
They might not spoil,	verderben.

---

§ V. *Conjugation of a regular Passive Verb.*

PASSIVE VERBS, regular and irregular, are formed from the actives, and are conjugated throughout in all their tenses, with the auxiliary werden, (*Englished, to be*;) added to the participle; as, ich werde geliebt, I am loved; ich werde geſehen, I am seen.

Conjugation of the Regular Passive Verb Geliebt werden, *to be loved.*

Inf.	*No Part. Pres.*	*Participle.*
Pres. Geliebt werden, to be loved.		Geliebt worden, been loved.
Perf. Geliebt, worden ſeyn, to have been loved.		

INDICATIVE; Present.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt, I am loved.
Du wirſt geliebt, thou art loved.
Er, ſie, or es wird geliebt, he, she, or it is loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt, we are loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt, you are loved.
Sie werden geliebt, they are loved.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Ich wurde, or ward geliebt, I was loved.
Du wurdeſt geliebt, thou wast loved.
Er wurde geliebt, he was loved.

Plural.

Wir wurden geliebt, we were loved.
Ihr wurdet geliebt, you were loved.
Sie wurden geliebt, they were loved.

Perfect.

Singular.

Ich bin geliebt worden, I have been loved.
Du biſt geliebt worden, thou hast been loved.
Er iſt geliebt worden, he has been loved.

Plural.

Wir ſind geliebt worden, we have been loved.
Ihr ſeyd geliebt worden, you have been loved.
Sie ſind geliebt worden, they have been loved.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Ich war geliebt worden, I had been loved.
Du warſt geliebt worden, thou hadst been loved.
Er war geliebt worden, he had been loved.

Plural.

Wir waren geliebt worden, we had been loved.
Ihr waret geliebt worden, you had been loved.
Sie waren geliebt worden, they had been loved.

First Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt werden, I shall, or will be loved.
Du wirſt geliebt werden, thou wilt be loved.
Er wird geliebt werden, he will be loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt werden, we shall, or will be loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt werden, you will be loved.
Sie werden geliebt werden, they will be loved.

Second Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt worden ſeyn, I shall have been loved.
Du wirſt geliebt worden ſeyn, thou wilt have been loved.
Er wird geliebt worden ſeyn, he will have been loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt worden ſeyn, we shall have been loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt worden ſeyn, you will have been loved.
Sie werden geliebt worden ſeyn, they will have been loved.

Conditional; Simple.

Singular.

Ich würde geliebt werden, I should, or would be loved.
Du würdeſt geliebt werden, thou wouldst be loved.
Er würde geliebt werden, he would be loved.

Plural.

Wir würden geliebt werden, we should, or would be loved.
Ihr würdet geliebt werden, you would be loved.
Sie würden geliebt werden, they would be loved.

Conditional; Compound.

Singular.

Ich würde geliebt worden ſeyn, I should have been loved.
Du würdeſt geliebt worden ſeyn, thou wouldst have &c.
Er würde geliebt worden ſeyn, he would have been loved.

Plural.

Wir würden geliebt worden ſeyn, we should have been loved.
Ihr würdet geliebt worden ſeyn, you would have been loved.
Sie würden geliebt worden ſeyn, they would have been loved.

Imperative.

Singular.

2. Werde (du) geliebt, be thou loved.
3. Werde er geliebt, let him be loved.

Plural.

1. Laſſet uns geliebt werden, let us be loved.
2. Werdet (ihr) geliebt, be ye, or you loved; or Werden Sie geliebt, be you loved, or do you be loved.
3. Werden ſie geliebt, let them be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt, I may be loved.
Du werdeſt geliebt, thou mayst be loved.
Er werde geliebt, he may be loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt, we may be loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt, you may be loved.
Sie werden geliebt, they may be loved.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Ich würde geliebt, I might be loved.
Du würdeſt geliebt, thou mightst be loved.
Er würde geliebt, he might be loved.

Imperfect.

Plural.

Wir würden geliebt, we might be loved.
Ihr würdet geliebt, you might be loved.
Sie würden geliebt, they might be loved.

Perfect.

Singular.

Ich ſey geliebt worden, I may have been loved.
Du ſeyſt geliebt worden, thou mayst have been loved.
Er ſey geliebt worden, he may have been loved.

Plural.

Wir ſeyn geliebt worden, we may have been loved.
Ihr ſeyd geliebt worden, you may have been loved.
Sie ſeyn geliebt worden, they may have been loved.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Ich wäre geliebt worden, I might have been loved.
Du wäreſt geliebt worden, thou mightst have been loved.
Er wäre geliebt worden, he might have been loved.

Plural.

Wir wären geliebt worden, we might have been loved.
Ihr wäret geliebt worden, you might have been loved.
Sie wären geliebt worden, they might have been loved.

First Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt werden, I shall, or will be loved.
Du werdeſt geliebt werden, thou wilt be loved.
Er werde geliebt werden, he will be loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt werden, we shall, or will be loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt werden, you will be loved.
Sie werden geliebt werden, they will be loved.

Second Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt worden ſeyn, I shall have been loved.
Du werdeſt geliebt worden ſeyn, thou wilt have been loved.
Er werde geliebt worden ſeyn, he will have been loved.

Second Future.

Plural

Wir werden geliebt worden ſeyn, we shall have been loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt worden ſeyn, you will have been loved.
Sie werden geliebt worden ſeyn, they will have been loved

Conjugation of the Irregular Passive Verb ſehen, *to see.*

Inf.	*Participle Pret.*
Pres. Geſehen werden, to be seen.	Geſehen worden, been seen.
Pret. Geſehen worden ſeyn, to have been seen.	Ein Geſehener, one who has been seen.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde geſehen, I am seen.	Ich werde geſehen, I may be seen.
Du wirſt geſehen, thou art seen, &c.	Du werdeſt geſehen, thou mayst, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden geſehen, we are seen, &c.	Wir werden geſehen, we may be seen, &c.

Imperfect.

Ich wurde geſehen, I was seen, &c.	Ich würde geſehen, I might be seen, &c.

Perfect.

Ich bin geſehen worden, I have been seen, &c.	Ich ſey geſehen worden, I may have been seen, &c.

Pluperfect.

Ich war geſehen worden, I had been seen, &c.	Ich wäre geſehen worden, I might have been seen, &c.

First Future.

Ich werde geſehen werden, I shall be seen, &c.	Ich werde geſehen werden, I shall be seen, &c.

Second Future.

Ich werde geſehen worden ſeyn, I shall have been seen, &c.	Ich werde geſehen worden ſeyn, I shall have been seen, &c.

Conditional; Simple.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde geſehen werden, I should be seen, &c.	Wir würden geſehen werden, we should be seen, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde geſehen worden ſeyn, I should have been seen, &c.	Wir würden geſehen worden ſeyn, we should have been seen, &c.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Werde du geſehen, be thou seen.	Werdet ihr geſehen, be you seen; or, werden Sie geſehen, be you seen.
Werde er geſehen, let him be seen.	Werden ſie geſehen, let them be seen.

Practice on the Passive Verbs Regular and Irregular.

Indicative present.

Am I not praised?	Loben, to praise.
Is it not lost?	Verlieren, to lose.
Are they not rubbed?	Reiben, to rub.

Imperfect.

Was I not beaten?	Schlagen, to beat.
We were not taught,	Lehren, to teach.
Were you not hired?	Miethen, to hire.
They were read,	Leſen, to read.

Perfect.

I have been chosen,	wählen, to choose.
Thou hast been blamed,	tadeln, to blame.
He has been bitten,	beißen, to bite.
We have been carried,	tragen, to carry.
You have not been punished,	ſtrafen, to punish.
Have they been laden?	laden, to load.

Pluperfect.

Had I not been advised?	rathen, to advise.
Thou hadst been created,	ſchaffen, to create.
Had it been measured?	meſſen, to measure.
We had been hindered,	hindern, to hinder.
They had not been given,	geben, to give.

Futures.

I shall be weakened,	ſchwächen, to weaken.
Shall we not be seized?	greifen, to seize.
Will they not be washed?	waſchen, to wash.
You will have been seen,	ſehen, to see.
Will they not have advised?	rathen, to advise.

Conditionals.

Should I not be shunned?	meiden, to shun.
He would not be revenged,	rächen, to revenge.
Would it not be stolen?	ſtehlen, to steal.
Should we not have been caught?	fangen, to catch.
You would not have been hidden,	bergen, to hide.
They would not have been begun,	beginnen, to begin.

---

§ VI. As far as regards the formation of their tenses, all verbs which do not admit of a passive form, are considered neuter, and are conjugated in the same manner as verbs active; except that in the perfect and pluperfect tenses; some are conjugated with ſeyn, instead of haben.

I. CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb Leben, *to live, with the Auxiliary Verb* Haben.

Infinitive.

Pres. Leben, to live.
Pret. Gelebt haben, to have lived.

Part. Pres.

Lebend, living.
Ein Lebender, one who lives.

Part. Perf.

Gelebt, lived.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich lebe, I live.	Ich lebe, I may live.
Du lebſt, (lebeſt,) thou livest.	Du lebeſt, thou mayst live.
Er, ſie, or es lebt, he, she, or it lives.	Er lebe, he may live.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir leben, we live.	Wir leben, we may live.
Ihr lebet, or lebt, you live.	Ihr lebet, you may live.
Sie leben, they live.	Sie leben, they may live.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich lebte, I lived.	Ich lebete, I might live.
Du lebteſt, thou livedst.	Du lebeteſt, thou mightst live.
Er lebte, he lived.	Er lebete, he might live.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir lebten, we lived.	Wir lebeten, we might live.
Ihr lebtet, you lived.	Ihr lebetet, you might live.
Sie lebten, they lived.	Sie lebeten, they might live.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe gelebt, I have lived.	Ich habe gelebt, I may have lived.
Du haſt gelebt, thou &c.	Du habeſt gelebt, thou &c.

Pluperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte gelebt, I had lived.	Ich hätte gelebt, I might have lived.
Du hatteſt gelebt, thou &c.	Du hätteſt gelebt, thou &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde leben, I shall live.	Ich werde leben, I shall live.
Du wirſt leben, thou &c.	Du werdeſt leben, thou &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gelebt haben, I shall have lived.	Ich werde gelebt haben, I shall have lived.
Du wirſt gelebt haben, &c.	Du werdeſt gelebt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde leben, I should live.	Ich würde gelebt haben, I should have lived.
Du würdeſt leben, thou &c.	Du würdeſt gelebt haben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden leben, we should live.	Wir würden gelebt haben, we should have lived.
Ihr würdet leben, you &c.	Ihr würdet gelebt haben, &c.

So decline reden, to speak; beten, to pray.

II. *Conjugation of the Irregular Verb* Kommen, *to come, with the Auxiliary* Seyn.

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Kommen, to come.	Kommend, coming.
Pret. Gekommen ſeyn, to be come.	
Part. Perf.	
Gekommen, come.	

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich komme, I come.	Ich komme, I may come.
Du kömmſt, or kommſt, thou comest.	Du kommeſt, thou mayst come.
Er kömmt, or kommt, he comes.	Er komme, he may come.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir kommen, we come.	Wir kommen, we may come.
Ihr kommt, or kommet, you come.	Ihr kommet, you may come.
Sie kommen, they come.	Sie kommen, they may come.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich kam, I came.	Ich käme, I might come.
Du kamſt, thou cämest.	Du kämeſt, thou mightst come.
Er kam, he came.	Er käme, he might come.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir kamen, we came.	Wir kämen, we might come.
Ihr kamet, you came.	Ihr kämet, you might come.
Sie kamen, they came.	Sie kämen, they might come.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich bin gekommen, I am come.	Ich ſey gekommen, I may be come.
Du biſt gekommen, thou art come.	Du ſeyſt gekommen, thou &c.
Er iſt gekommen, he is come.	Er ſey gekommen, he &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir ſind gekommen, we are come.	Wir ſeyn gekommen, we may be come.
Ihr ſeyd gekommen, you &c.	Ihr ſeyd gekommen, you &c.
Sie ſind gekommen, they &c.	Sie ſeyn gekommen, they &c.

Pluperfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich war gekommen, I was come.	Ich wäre gekommen, I might be come.
Du warſt gekommen, thou, &c.	Du wäreſt gekommen, thou, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde kommen, I shall come.	Ich werde kommen, I shall come.
Du wirſt kommen, thou wilt, &c.	Du werdeſt kommen, thou, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde gekommen ſeyn, I shall be come.	Ich werde gekommen ſeyn, I shall be come.
Du wirſt gekommen ſeyn, thou, &c.	Du werdeſt gekommen ſeyn, thou, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde kommen, I should come.	Ich würde gekommen ſeyn, I should be come.
Du würdeſt kommen, &c.	Du würdeſt gekommen ſeyn, thou, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden kommen, we should come.	Wir würden gekommen ſeyn, we should be come.
Ihr würdet kommen, you &c.	Ihr würdet gekommen ſeyn, you, &c.

Neuter verbs, in German, are distinguished from those in English, by nothing but the auxiliaries haben, *to have*, and ſeyn, *to be*.

In the following Exercise is given a List of those Verbs, which take Haben, and those which take ſeyn.

Practice on Neuter Verbs taking Haben.

I have thirsted,	dürſten, to thirst.
Have I been zealous?	eifern, to be zealous.
I have not been angry,	zürnen, to be angry.
Have I not trembled?	zittern, to tremble.
Thou hast quaked,	beben, to quake.
Thou hast not waked,	wachen, to wake.
Hast thou been giddy?	ſchwindeln, to be giddy.
Hast thou not been slovenly?	ſudeln, to be slovenly.
It has thundered,	donnern, to thunder.
He has not murmured,	brummen, to murmur.
Has she enquired?	forſchen, to enquire.
Has she not been penurious?	kargen, to be penurious.
We have labored,	arbeiten, to labor.
Have we not slept?	ſchlafen, to sleep.
Have you not suffered?	leiden, to suffer.
You have not lived,	leben, to live.
They have not blossomed,	blühen, to blossom.
Had I not starved?	darben, to starve.
Hast thou pined?	ſchmachten, to pine.
Thou hadst not rested,	ruhen, to rest.
It had been worth,	taugen, to be worth.
Had she lain?	liegen, to lie.
He had not stood,	ſtehen, to stand.
Had he not sat?	ſitzen, to sit.
It had not frozen,	frieren, to freeze.
We had not dreamt,	träumen, to dream.
They had been called,	heißen, to be called.
They had not grown old,	ältern, to grow old.
Had they hungered?	hungern, to hunger.

Practice on the Neuter Verbs taking Seyn.

I have staid,	bleiben, to stay.
Have I not staid?	.....
I have not staid,	.....

Hast thou run?	rennen, to run.
Thou hast not climbed,	klimmen, to climb.
Thou hast travelled,	reiſen, to travel.
He has stumbled,	ſtolpern, to stumble.
Has he sailed?	ſegeln, to sail.
He is not come,	kommen, to come.
Is he not gone?	gehen, to go.
Has she followed?	folgen, to follow.
It has not burst,	berſten, to burst.
We have proceeded,	fortfahren, to proceed.
Have we run?	laufen, to run.
We have not wandered,	wandern, to wander.
Have we not slidden?	gleiten, to slide.
You have swum,	ſchwimmen, to swim.
Have you swum?	.....
You have not crept,	kriechen, to creep.
Have you not embarked?	einſchiffen, to embark.
They have ridden,	reiten, to ride.
Have they ridden?	.....
They have not ridden,	.....
Have they not ridden?	.....
I had walked,	gehen, to walk.
Had I drawn near?	näher rücken, to draw near.
I had not fled,	fliehen, to flee.
Had I not fallen?	fallen, to fall.
Thou hadst slipped,	ſchlüpfen, to slip.
Hadst thou sunk?	ſinken, to sink.
Thou hadst not penetrated,	dringen, to penetrate.
He had departed,	ſcheiden, to depart.
Had he not departed?	.....
It had darted,	ſchießen, to dart.
Had it not slipped?	ſchlüpfen, to slip.
We had not pressed,	dringen, to press.
You had not recovered,	geneſen, to recover.
They had not slunk.	ſchleichen, to slink.

Observations on the Neuter Verbs.

The use of the auxiliaries, in German, before the participle, depends upon the signification of the verb.

In English, the auxiliary *to have* is not only put before every verb which expresses a direct action, but also before such as ex-

press motion, or the continuation of a state: and *to be*, only in cases where an immediate state of rest is implied. Consequently those verbs which take haben in German, mostly take *have* in English; but also many which take ſeyn in German, are Englished by *have*. Upon this general rule, are founded the following special rules:

I. *Neuters take* Haben, *to have.*

(a) Which express physical actions; as,

Zittern, to tremble.	Bellen, to bark.
Donnern, to thunder.	Schallen, to sound; Ex.

Ich habe gezittert, I have trembled.
Es hat gedonnert, it has thundered, &c.
(But erſchallen, to resound, takes ſeyn.)

(b) Which denote the completion of an action or a state; as,

Ausblühen, to finish blowing. Ausbrennen, to burn out.
Ausſtehen, to endure, Ex.

Der Baum hat ausgeblühet, the tree has finished blowing.
Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt, the fire has burnt out.
Ich habe ausgeſtanden, I have endured, or stood out, &c.

(c) Which denote a continued state, whether of motion, or of rest; as,

Liegen, to lie.	Sitzen, to sit.
Ruhen, to rest.	Träumen, to dream.

Schlafen, to sleep, &c. Ex.

Ich habe geſchlafen, I have slept.
Er hat geruhet, he has rested, &c.

Several of these verbs are translated by *have*, and a *participle*, or *have been*, and an *adjective* similar in signification to the verb, as:

Dürſten, to thirst, or to be thirsty.
Hungern, to hunger, or to be hungry, &c. Ex.

Ich habe gedürſtet, I have thirsted, or have been thirsty.
Ich habe gehungert, I have hungered, or have been hungry, &c.

II. *Neuter verbs take* ſeyn, *in German.*

(a) Which denote a falling into any state, as,

Abarten, to degenerate, or deviate.	Begegnen, to meet with.
Ausarten, to degenerate.	Berſten, to burst.
	Entſchlafen, to expire.

Erblaſſen, to turn pale.
Erkranken, to fall ill.
Erröthen, to blush.
Fallen, to fall.
Geneſen, to recover.
Geſchehen. to happen.
Gerathen, to fall upon.
Scheitern, to wreck.
Sinken, to sink.
Sterben, to die.
Stürzen, to plunge.
Verhungern, to starve, &c.

Although the above verbs take ſeyn, they are mostly Englished by the verb *have*, but sometimes by *be*, Ex.

Der Sohn iſt von dem Vater abgeartet, the son *has* degenerated from the father.
Sie ſind geborſten, they *are* burst, or *have* burst.
Er iſt geſtorben, he *has* died, or *is* dead.
Sie ſind ihm begegnet, they *have* met him, *or* met with him.
Es iſt geſchehen, it *has* happened.
Sie ſind gefallen, they *are* fallen, or *have* fallen.

(b) Which denote a change of place, as:

Aufſtehen, to rise.
Ankommen, to arrive.
Dringen, to press.
Fahren, to ride in a carriage.
Folgen, to follow.
Gehen, to go.
Gelangen, to attain.
Kommen, to come.
Laufen, to run.
Reiten, to ride.
Einſchiffen, to embark.
Schreiten, to stride.
Schwimmen, to swim, &c.

These verbs, like the preceding, are Englished by *have* and sometimes by *be*, Ex.

Ich bin gefolgt, I *have* followed.
Sie ſind gelangt, they *have* attained.
Er iſt gegangen, he *is* gone, or *has* gone.
Sie ſind gelaufen, they *have* run.

(c) To the above may be added the following,

Bleiben, to remain.
Bemühen, or befleiſſen, to endeavour.
Beharren, to persevere.
Geſinnen, to be disposed.
Gelingen, to succeed, Ex.

Ich bin geblieben, I have remained.
Ich bin bemühet, I have endeavoured.

III. *Some Neuter Verbs in German take both* haben, *and* ſeyn, *according to their signification.*

(a) Some take haben, to denote the completion of an action, or a state, and ſeyn to denote the condition of a thing, Ex.

Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt, the fire *has* burnt out.
Die Stadt iſt ausgebrannt, the city *is* burnt down.
Die Kohlen haben ausgedampft, the coals *have* smoked out.
Die Feuchtigkeit iſt ausgedampft, the damp *is* evaporated.

(b) Verbs expressive of motion, take ſeyn, when the place, or the manner of the motion is referred to; but haben, when the simple action is designated, as:

Ich bin in die Stadt geritten, I *have* ridden, or rode into the city.
Ich bin langſam geritten, I *have* ridden, or rode slowly.
Ich bin den ganzen Tag geritten, I *have been* riding the whole day.
Ich habe das Pferd geritten, I *have* ridden that horse.
Der Feind iſt in die Stadt gedrungen, the enemy *has* penetrated into the city.
Er hat in mich gedrungen, he *has* pressed upon me.
Wir ſind in die Stadt geeilet, we *have* hastened into the city
Wir haben mit der Sache geeilet, we *have* hastened with the affair.
Wir ſind fortgefahren, we *have* gone forward.
Wir haben fortgefahren zu arbeiten, we *have* continued to labor.
Der Vogel iſt in das Feld geflattert, the bird *has* fluttered into the field.
Er hat lange geflattert, it *has* been long fluttering.
Er iſt ihm gefolgt, he *has* followed him.
Er hat meinen Lehren gefolgt, he *has* followed my precepts.
Die Erde iſt gefroren, the earth *is* frozen.
Wir haben gefroren, we *have* been chilled.
Es hat gefroren, it *has* frozen.
Ich bin vor ihm gekniet, I *have* kneeled before him.
Er hat eine ganze Stunde gekniet, he *has* been kneeling a whole hour.
Wir ſind nach Leipzig geritten, we *have* ridden to Leipzig.
Wir haben uns müde geritten, we *have* tired ourselves with riding.
Er hat mit dem Kopfe an die Wand geſchlagen, he *has* struck his head against the wall.
Die Flamme iſt in die Höhe geſchlagen, the flame *has* mounted.
Der Donner hat in den Baum geſchlagen, the thunder *has* struck the tree.
Die Vögel haben geſchlagen, the birds *have* warbled.
Das Schiff iſt vorbei geſegelt, the ship *has* sailed past.
Die Reiter ſind ſchon aufgeſeſſen, the horsemen *are* already seated.
Ich bin die ganze Nacht aufgeſeſſen, I *have* sat up the whole night.
Ich bin in das Haus gegangen, I *have* gone into the house.
Ich habe mich mude gegangen, I *have* tired myself with walking.

(c) Some verbs expressive of motion require ſeyn, when taken in the proper sense, and haben in the figurative sense; as,

Das Blut iſt geſprungen, the blood *has* flowed.
Die Fontäne hat geſprungen, the fountain *has* played; so,
Wir ſind gelaufen, we *have* run, but,
Das Faß hat gelaufen, the cask *has* run.
Wir ſind nach dem Ziele geronnen, we *have* run towards the goal, or we *have* run a race.
Die Augen haben geronnen, the eyes *have* streamed.
Die Thränen ſind herabgefloſſen, the tears *have* flowed down, but,
Die Röhre hat gefloſſen, the pipe *has* run.

As it may sometimes be found difficult to distinguish (*by the preceding definitions*) those verbs which take haben, from those which take ſeyn, a list of both is subjoined.

NEUTER VERBS WITH Haben.

The following neuters are to be conjugated with the auxiliary verb Haben.

I. *Regular Verbs.*

Infinitive.	*Perfect Indicative.*
Aechzen, to groan.	Ich habe geächzet, I have groaned.
Aeltern, to grow old.	..... geältert.
Angeln, to angle.	..... geangelt.
Ankern, to anchor.	..... geankert.
Athmen, to breathe.	..... geathmet.
(Sich) balgen, to fight.	..... gebalget.
Beten, to pray.	..... gebetet.
Betteln, to beg alms.	..... gebettelt.
Blinzeln, to blink.	..... geblinzelt.
Blühen, to bloom.	..... geblühet.
Brummen, to grumble.	..... gebrummt.
Bürgen, to bail.	..... gebürget.
Büßen, to suffer for.	..... gebüßet.
Dauern, to last, to endure	..... gedauret.
Donnern, to thunder.	..... gedonnert.
Dürſten, to be thirsty, or to thirst.	..... gedürſtet.
Eifern, to be zealous.	..... geeifert.
Eilen, to hasten.	..... geeilet.
Eitern, to suppurate.	..... geeitert.
Entſagen, to renounce.	..... entſagt.
Erben, to be one's heir.	..... geerbet.
Faulen, to putrefy.	..... gefaulet.
Fehlen, to fail.	..... gefehlt.
Flecken, to stain.	..... gefleckt.
Fluchen, to curse.	..... geflucht.
Forſchen, to enquire.	..... geforſchet.

Funkeln, to glimmer,	Ich habe gefunkelt.
Gähnen, to yawn.	..... gegähnet.
Gaukeln, to juggle.	..... gegaukelt.
Geizen, to covet.	..... gegeizet.
Handeln, to trade.	..... gehandelt.
Harren, to wait for.	..... geharret.
Handthieren, to trade, to bustle.	..... gehandthieret.
Hausiren, to hawk about.	..... gehausiret.
Herrschen, to govern.	..... geherrschet.
Hinken, to limp.	..... gehinket.
Horchen, to listen.	..... gehorchet.
Hungern, to hunger.	..... gehungert.
Hüpfen, to leap.	..... gehüpfet.
Husten, to cough.	..... gehustet.
Irren, to err.	..... geirret.
Jauchzen, to shout.	..... gejauchzet.
Kalben, to calve.	..... gekalbet.
Kämpfen, to combat.	..... gekämpft.
Kargen, to be penurious.	..... gekarget.
Keimen, to shoot out, or bud.	..... gekeimet.
Kirren, to creak, or coo.	..... gekirret.
Klaffen, to clap, cleave.	..... geklaffet.
Klagen, to complain.	..... geklaget.
Klatschen, to clap.	..... geklatschet.
Kleben, to cleave, or stick.	..... geklebet.
Klügeln, to refine.	..... geklügelt.
Knacken, to crack.	..... geknacket.
Knarren, to creak.	..... geknarret.
Knickern, to haggle, to act niggardly.	..... geknickert.
Knien, to kneel.	..... gekniet.
Kollern, to be unruly, to roll.	..... gekollert.
Krähen, to crow.	..... gekrähet.
Krahmen, to trade.	..... gekrahmet.
Kranken, to be ill.	..... gekranket.
Krebsen, to catch crabs.	..... gekrebset.
Kriegen, to obtain.	..... gekriegt.
Lachen, to laugh.	..... gelachet.
Landen, to land.	..... gelandet.
Lärmen, to make a noise.	..... gelärmet.
Lauren, to watch.	..... gelauret.
Läuten, or Lauten, to sound.	..... geläutet, or gelautet.
Leben, to live.	..... gelebet.
Mangeln, to want.	..... gemangelt.
Meinen, to mean.	..... gemeinet.
Murmeln, to grumble.	..... gemurmelt.
Orgeln, to play on the organ.	..... georgelt.
Rasen, to be mad.	..... geraset.

Raſten, to rest.	Ich habe geraſtet.
Rauchen, to smoke.	.. ... gerauchet.
Räumen, to remove.	..... geräumet.
Räuſpern, to hawk, to clear the throat.	..... geräuſpert.
Rauſchen, to rush.	.. .... gerauſchet.
Rechnen, to reckon.	..... gerechnet.
Rechten, to go to law.	..... gerechtet.
Reden, to speak.	..... geredet.
Reifen, to ripen.	..... gereifet.
Reimen, to rhyme.	..... gereimet.
Rudern, to row.	..... gerudert.
Säumen, to tarry.	..... geſäumet.
Sauſen, to whiz.	..... geſauſet.
Schaden, to hurt.	..... geſchadet.
Schaffen, to procure.	..... geſchafft.
Sich ſchämen, to be ashamed.	..... geſchämet.
Schaudern, to shiver.	..... geſchaudert.
Scherzen, to joke.	..... geſcherzet.
Schimmeln, to mould.	..... geſchimmelt.
Schlucken, to swallow.	..... geſchlucket.
Schmachten, to languish.	..... geſchmachtet.
Schmatzen, to smack.	..... geſchmatzet.
Schmählen, to scold.	..... geſchmälet.
Schmauſen, to feast.	..... geſchmauſet.
Schmutzen, to soil, to dirty.	..... geſchmutzet.
Schnäbeln, to bill.	.... geſchnäbelt.
Schnarchen, to snore.	..... geſchnarchet.
Schnattern, to gabble.	..... geſchnattert.
Schwärmen, to swarm.	..... geſchwärmet.
Schwindeln, to grow giddy.	..... geſchwindelt.
Schwitzen, to sweat.	..... geſchwitzet.
Segeln, to sail.	..... geſegelt.
Seufzen, to sigh.	..... geſeufzet.
Sorgen, to care.	..... geſorget.
Spatzieren, to take a walk.	..... ſpatzieret.
Spielen, to play.	..... geſpielet.
Steuern, to steer a ship.	..... geſteuert.
Studiren, to study.	..... ſtudirt.
Stürmen, to storm.	..... geſtürmet.
Stutzen, to butt at.	..... geſtutzet.
Sudeln, to dirty.	..... geſudelt.
Summen, to hum.	.. .... geſummet.
Sündigen, to sin.	..... geſundiget.
Tappen, to grope.	..... getappet.
Thronen, to be enthroned.	..... gethronet.
Toben, to rage.	..... getobet.
Tönen, to sound.	..... getönet.
Trachten, to endeavour.	..... getrachtet.

Trauern, to mourn.	Ich habe getrauert.
Triumphiren, to triumph.	..... triumphiret.
Trödeln, to sell old things.	..... getrödelt.
Wachen, to wake, or to be awake.	..... gewachet.
Weinen, to cry.	..... geweinet.
Willfahren, to comply.	..... gewillfahret.
Zagen, to despair, to despond.	..... gezaget.
Zanken, to quarrel.	..... gezanket.
Zielen, to aim.	..... gezielet.
Zotteln, to stagger.	..... gezottelt.
Zürnen, to be angry.	..... gezürnet.

The following are the Irregular Verbs which take Haben.

Fechten, to fight.	Ich habe gefochten, I have fought.
Gefallen, to please.	..... gefallen.
Gleichen, to resemble.	..... geglichen.
Keifen, to scold.	..... gekiffen.
Klingen, to sound.	..... geklungen.
Leiden, to suffer.	..... gelitten.
Reiten, to ride.	..... geritten.
Ringen, to wrestle.	..... gerungen.
Saufen, to drink hard.	..... gesoffen.
Scheinen, to appear.	..... geschienen.
Schlafen, to sleep.	..... geschlafen.
Schleifen, to cleave.	..... geschlissen.
Schnauben, to snort.	..... geschnoben.
Schreien, to cry.	..... geschrien.
Schweigen, to be silent.	..... geschwiegen.
Schwimmen, to swim.	..... geschwommen.
Schwinden, to be reduced, to dwindle away.	..... geschwunden.
Schwören, to swear.	..... geschworen.
Sinnen, to think, to meditate.	..... gesonnen.
Sitzen, to sit.	..... gesessen.
Streiten, to fight.	..... gestritten.
Verbrechen, to commit a crime.	..... verbrochen.

NEUTER VERBS WITH Seyn.

The following require the Auxiliary Verb Seyn:

Regular Verbs.

Arten, to resemble.	Ich bin geartet, I have resembled.

Begegnen, to meet.	Ich bin begegnet, I have met.
Beharren, to continue.	..... beharret.
Ergrimmen, to grow angry.	..... ergrimmet.
Erkälten, to grow cold.	..... erkaltet.
Erſtaunen, to be astonished.	..... erſtaunet.
Erſtarren, to be chilled.	..... erſtarret.
Flattern, to flit, to flutter.	..... geflattert.
Gelangen, to get, to attain.	..... gelanget.
Gewohnen, to be accustomed.	..... gewohnet.
Klettern, to climb.	..... geklettert.
Reiſen, to travel.	..... gereiſet.
Rennen, to run.	..... gerannt.
Segeln, to sail.	..... geſegelt.
Stolpern, to stumble.	..... geſtolpert.
Stranden, to strand.	..... geſtrandet.
Straucheln, to trip.	..... geſtrauchelt.
Stutzen, to start.	..... geſtutzet.
Traben, to trot.	..... getrabet.
Veraltern, to grow old.	..... veraltert.
Verarmen, to grow poor.	..... verarmet.
Verblinden, to grow blind.	..... verblindet.
Verkrummen, to grow crooked.	..... verkrummet.
Verlahmen, to grow lame.	..... verlahmet.
Verſäuern, to grow sour, to sour.	..... verſauert.
Verſtummen, to grow dumb.	..... verſtummet.
Verweſen, to decay.	..... verweſet.
Verwildern, to grow wild.	..... verwildert.
Verzagen, to despond.	..... verzaget.
Wandeln, to walk.	..... gewandelt.
Wandern, to wander.	..... gewandert.

Irregular Neuter Verbs taking Seyn.

Abfallen, to fall down.	Ich bin abgefallen.
Befleißen, to be studious.	..... befliſſen.
Berſten, to burst.	..... geborſten.
Bleiben, to remain.	..... geblieben.
Erfrieren, to freeze to death.	..... erfroren.
Erſchallen, to resound.	..... erſchollen.
Erſchrecken, to be terrified.	..... erſchrocken.
Fahren, to fare.	..... gefahren.
Fallen, to fall.	..... gefallen.
Fliegen, to fly.	..... geflogen.
Fliehen, to flee.	..... geflohen.
Fließen, to flow.	..... gefloſſen.
Frieren, to freeze.	..... gefroren.

Gedeihen, to prosper.	Ich bin gediehen.
Gehen, to go.	..... gegangen.
Genesen, to recover.	..... genesen.
Gleiten, to slide, to slip.	..... geglitten.
Klimmen, to climb.	..... geklommen,
Kommen, to come.	..... gekommen.
Kriechen, to creep.	..... gekrochen.
Laufen, to run.	..... gelaufen.
Reiten, to ride.	..... geritten.
Rinnen, to leak, to run.	..... geronnen.
Schleichen, to sneak.	..... geschlichen.
Schreiten, to stride.	..... geschritten.
Schwellen, to swell.	..... geschwollen.
Schwimmen, to swim.	..... geschwommen.
Schwinden, to shrink.	..... geschwunden.
Sitzen, to sit.	..... gesessen.
Springen, to jump.	..... gesprungen.
Stehen, to stand.	..... gestanden.
Steigen, to mount.	..... gestiegen.
Sterben, to die.	..... gestorben.
Verbleichen, to grow pale.	..... verblichen.
Verlöschen, to extinguish.	..... verloschen.
Verschwinden, to disappear.	..... verschwunden.
Wachsen, to grow.	..... gewachsen.
Weichen, to yield.	..... gewichen.
Werden, to become.	..... geworden.

N. B.—Those verbs which occur in both lists, are sometimes conjugated with haben, and sometimes with seyn. (*Vide the observations from page* 120 *to* 125.)

COMPOUND VERBS.

§ VII. Simple verbs being regular, *or* irregular, their compounds are the same.

Compound verbs are compounded either with separable, or inseparable prepositions.

The separable prepositions are separated from the verbs in the simple tenses; but are joined to them in the infinitive and participle, as in the following example:

Conjugation of the separable Compound Verb Aufhalten, *to detain, or stop.*

Infinitive.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Aufhalten, to detain.	Aufhaltend, detaining.
Pret. Aufgehalten haben, to have detained.	Ein Aufhaltender, one who detains.

Part. Perf.

Aufgehalten, detained.

ACTIVE.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich halte auf, I detain, am detaining, or do detain.	Ich halte auf, I may detain.
Du hältst auf, thou detainest.	Du halteſt auf, thou mayst detain.
Er, ſie, oder es hält auf, he, she, or it detains.	Er, ſie, oder es halte auf, he, she, or it may detain.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir halten auf, we detain.	Wir halten auf, we may detain.
Ihr haltet auf, you detain.	Ihr haltet auf, you may detain.
Sie halten auf, they detain.	Sie halten auf, they may detain.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hielt auf, I detained.	Ich hielte auf, I might detain.
Du hielteſt auf, thou detainedst.	Du hielteſt auf, thou mightst detain.
Er hielt auf, he detained.	Er hielte auf, he &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hielten auf, we detained.	Wir hielten auf, we might &c.
Ihr hieltet auf, you detained.	Ihr hieltet auf, you might &c.
Sie hielten auf, they detained.	Sie hielten auf, they &c.

Perfect.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe aufgehalten, I have detained.	Ich habe aufgehalten, I may have detained.
Du haſt aufgehalten, &c.	Du habeſt aufgehalten, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir haben, aufgehalten, we have detained.	Wir haben aufgehalten, we may have detained.
Ihr habt aufgehalten, &c.	Ihr habet aufgehalten, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte aufgehalten, I had detained.	Ich hätte aufgehalten, I might have detained.
Du hatteſt aufgehalten, &c.	Du hätteſt aufgehalten, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hatten aufgehalten, we had detained.	Wir hätten aufgehalten, we might have detained.
Ihr hattet aufgehalten, &c.	Ihr hättet aufgehalten, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde aufhalten, I shall, or will detain.	Ich werde aufhalten, I shall, or will detain.
Du wirſt aufhalten, thou wilt detain.	Du werdeſt aufhalten, thou wilt detain.
Er wird aufhalten, he &c.	Er werde aufhalten, he &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden aufhalten, we shall, or will detain.	Wir werden aufhalten, we shall, or will detain.
Ihr werdet aufhalten, &c.	Ihr werdet aufhalten, you &c.

Second Future

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde aufgehalten haben, I shall have detained.	Ich werde aufgehalten haben, I shall have detained.
Du wirſt aufgehalten haben, thou wilt have detained.	Du werdeſt aufgehalten haben, thou wilt have detained.
Er wird aufgehalten haben, he will have detained.	Er werde aufgehalten haben, he will have detained.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden aufgehalten haben, we shall have detained.	Wir werden aufgehalten haben, we shall have detained.
Ihr werdet aufgehalten haben, you will have detained.	Ihr werdet aufgehalten haben, you will have detained.
Sie werden aufgehalten haben, they will have detained.	Sie werden aufgehalten haben, they will have detained.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde aufhalten, I should, or would detain.	Ich würde aufgehalten haben, I should, have detained.
Du würdeſt aufhalten, thou wouldst detain.	Du würdeſt aufgehalten haben, thou wouldst have detained.
Er würde aufhalten, he would detain.	Er würde aufgehalten haben, he would have detained.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden aufhalten, we should, or would detain.	Wir würden aufgehalten haben, we should have detained.
Ihr würdet aufhalten, you would detain.	Ihr würdet aufgehalten haben, you would have detained.
Sie würden aufhalten, they would detain.	Sie würden aufgehalten haben, they would have detained.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Halte (du) auf, detain (*thou.*)	Haltet (ihr) auf, detain (*you.*)
Halte er auf, let him detain.	Halten Sie auf, detain, or do you detain.
	Halten ſie auf, let them detain.

So conjugate:

Aufnehmen, to take up.	Ausſprechen, to pronounce.
Weggeben, to give away.	Vorkommen, to come before.
Abholen, to fetch.	Einbringen, to bring in.

Practice on the separable Compound Verbs.

INDICATIVE; Present.

I take off,	abnehmen, to take off.
Thou acceptest,	annehmen, to accept.
It devolves,	anheimfallen, or heimfallen, to devolve.
We give up,	aufgeben, to give up.
You except,	ausnehmen, to except.
They assist,	beiſtehen, to stand by, to assist.

Imperfect.

I presented,	darreichen, to present.
Thou rannest off,	davon laufen, to run off.
He took in,	einnehmen, to take in.
We pursued,	fortſetzen, to pursue.
You sent home,	heimſchicken, to send home.
They came hither,	herkommen, to come hither.

Perfect.

I *have run down,	herablaufen, to run down.
Thou *hast come near,	herankommen, to come near.
He *has come up,	heraufkommen, to come up.
We *have come out,	herauskommen, to come out.
You have brought near,	herbeibringen, to bring near.
They *have come in,	hereinkommen, to come in.

Pluperfect.

I had produced,	hervorbringen, to produce.
Thou *hadst gone off,	hingehen, to go off.
She *had gone down,	hinabgehen, to go down.
We *had mounted upwards,	hinaufſteigen, to mount up.
You had gone out,	hinausgehen, to go out.
They *had gone over,	hinübergehen, to go over.

* Where the mark * is used, translate have by ſeyn; as, I have run down, ich bin herabgelaufen.

First and second Future.

I shall leap down,	hinunterſpringen, to leap down.
Thou wilt bring with thee,	mitbringen, to bring with.
He will imitate,	nachahmen, to imitate.
We shall have fallen down,	niederfallen, to fall down.
You will apply,	anwenden, to apply.
They will prescribe,	vorgeben, to prescribe.

Conditionals; simple and compound.

*I should have walked forward,	vorangehen, to walk forward.
*Thou wouldst presuppose,	vorausſetzen, to presuppose.
*He would have passed by,	vorübergehen, to pass by.
*We should have agreed,	übereinkommen, to agree.
You would have taken away,	wegnehmen, to take away.
They would restore,	wiedergeben, to restore.

Imperative.

Look (*thou*) to,	zuſehen, to look to.
Keep (*you*) back,	zurückhalten, to keep back.

Infinitive.

To keep back,	zurückhalten, to keep back.
To have kept back,	.....

Participles.

Composing,	zuſammenſetzen, to compose.
Composed,	.....

The inseparable particles in compound verbs, are always joined to the verbs, and the ge of the participles, is dropped.

Conjugation of the inseparable compound verb Behalten, *to retain.*

Inf.	*Part. Pres.*
Pres. Behalten, to retain.	Behaltend, retaining.
Perf. Behalten haben, to have retained.	Ein Behaltender, one who retains.

Perf. Part.

Behalten, retained.

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich behalte, I retain.	Ich behalte, I may retain.
Du behältſt, thou retainest.	Du behalteſt, thou mayst &c.
Er behält, he retains.	Er behalte, he may &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir behalten, we retain.	Wir behalten, we may retain.
Ihr behaltet, you retain.	Ihr behaltet, you may retain.
Sie behalten, they retain.	Sie behalten, they may retain.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich behielt, I retained.	Ich behielte, I might retain.
Du behielteſt, thou retainedst &c.	Du behielteſt, thou mightst retain &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe behalten, I have retained.	Ich habe behalten, I may have retained.
Du haſt behalten, thou hast retained, &c.	Du habeſt behalten, thou mayst &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte behalten, I had retained.	Ich hätte behalten, I might have retained.
Du hatteſt behalten, thou hadst retained, &c.	Du hätteſt behalten, thou, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde behalten, I shall retain.	Ich werde behalten, I shall retain.
Du wirſt behalten, thou wilt retain, &c.	Du werdeſt behalten, thou wilt retain, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde behalten haben, I shall have retained, &c.	Ich werde behalten haben, I shall have retained, &c.

Conditional; Simple.

Sing.	*Plural*
Ich würde behalten, I should retain, &c.	Wir würden behalten, we should retain, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Ich würde behalten haben, I should have retained, &c.	Wir würden behalten haben, we should have retained, &c.

Imperative.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Behalte (du) retain (*thou*)	Laßt uns behalten, let us retain.
Behalte er, retain he, or let him retain.	Behaltet ihr, or behalten Sie, retain ye, or you.
	Behalten sie, retain they, or let them retain.

Practice on the inseparable compound Verbs.

Indicative.

Present.

I remark,	bemerken, to remark.
Thou backbitest,	afterreden, to backbite.
He escapes,	entgehen, to escape.
Do we not acquire?	erwerben, to acquire.
Do you not light upon?	gerathen, to light upon.
They leave behind,	hinterlassen, to leave behind.

Imperfect.

Did I mistrust?	mißtrauen, to mistrust.
Did he conceal?	verbergen, to conceal.
We concerted,	verabreden, to concert.
You neglected,	vernachlässigen, to neglect.
They dishonored,	verunehren, to dishonor.

Perfect.

I have withstood,	widerſtehen, to withstand.
Hast thou distracted?	zerrütten, to distract.
Has he backbitten?	afterreden, to backbite.
We have not remarked,	bemerken, to remark.
You * have not escaped,	entgehen, to escape.
They have acquired,	erwerben, to acquire.

Pluperfect.

I had not left behind,	hinterlaſſen, to leave behind.
Hadst thou distrusted?	mißtrauen, to distrust.
He had concealed,	verbergen, to conceal.
We had concerted,	verabreden, to concert.
Had you neglected?	vernachläſſigen, to neglect.
They had not dishonored.	verunehren, to dishonor.

First and Second Future.

I shall withstand,	widerſtehen, to withstand.
Thou wilt distract,	zerrütten, to distract.
Will he have backbitten?	afterreden, to backbite.
Shall we not have remarked?	bemerken, to remark.
*You will not have escaped,	entgehen, to escape.
They will have acquired,	erwerben, to acquire.

Conditional; Simple and Compound.

I should withstand,	widerſtehen, to withstand.
Would he acquire?	erwerben, to acquire.
I should have left behind,	hinterlaſſen, to leave behind.
Would you not have distrusted?	mißtrauen, to distrust.
They would not have concealed,	verbergen, to conceal.

Subjunctive and Imperative.

I may conceal. Thou mightst concert. We may not neglect. You might not dishonor. They might not acquire. Do not withstand. Distract ye not.

* Translate *have* by ſeyn.

Infinitive and Participles.

To backbite. To have remarked. Escaping. Acquired.

Observations on the Compound Verbs.

1. The compound verbs generally follow the conjugation of the simple verbs, some of which are regular, and others irregular; thus, anreden, to address, and bereden to persuade, from reden, to speak, are *regular*; anſchreiben, to write down, and beſchreiben, to describe, are *irregular*; from ſchreiben, to write; but rennen, to run, is *irregular*; and bevennen, to invest, *regular*; ſchaffen, to create, *irregular*, and verſchaffen, to procure, *regular*; bleichen, to bleach, is *regular*; erbleichen, to grow pale, *irregular*: gleichen, to resemble, is *irregular*; abgleichen, to equal, *regular*; löſchen, to quench, *regular*; erlöſchen, to become extinct, *irregular*.

2. All separable particles have a distinct meaning, when taken by themselves, and are therefore easily resolvable when used in composition; as,

Ab, off, or down.	Dar, there.
An, on, or at.	Ein, in, or into.
Auf, up, or upon.	Mit, with.
Aus, out of.	Nach, after, &c.
Bei, or bey, at, by, near.	

Examples.

Abſetzen, to dispose,	*from* ſetzen, to put, and ab, down.
Ausſprechen, to address,	.... ſprechen, to speak, an, to.
Aufſtehen, to arise,	.... ſtehen, to stand, auf, up.
Ausſetzen, to expose,	.... ſetzen, to put, aus, out.
Beiſtehen, to assist, to stand by,	.... ſtehen, to stand, bei, by, or near,
Einſchließen, to inclose,	.... ſchließen, to lock, ein, in.
Mitgehen, to accompany,	.... gehen, to go, mit, with.
Nachfolgen, to succeed,	.... folgen, to follow, nach, after, &c.

Hin, *thither, or there*, and her, *hither, or here*, are oftener employed in German than in English, the first to express motion from an object, the second motion to an object; thus, hinkommen, signifies to get, *or* arrive there, in opposition to herkommen, to come hither; as, Ich konnte nicht hinkommen, I could not get there; Kommen Sie her, come here.

3. The inseparable particles, *as their name announces*, are used only in composition, of which the following are the principal:

1st. Be in composition with verbs, denotes an expansion of the action over an object; as, bewachſen, to overgrow; beſtreuen, to bestrew; beräuchern, to besmoke, *or* smoke. By the use of this particle, many neuter verbs are formed into actives: as, arbeiten, to work, ein Stück Holz bearbeiten, to work at a piece of wood; reiten, to ride, ein Pferd bereiten, to ride a horse; folgen, to follow, einen Rath befolgen, to follow a council; ſprechen, to speak, etwas beſprechen, to bespeak a thing, &c.

2nd. In composition with nouns, and other parts of speech, it denotes a communication of one object, *or* quality to another; as, beflügeln, to wing, *or* provide with wings, from Flügel, a wing; bebändern, to adorn with ribbons, from Band, ribbon; beaugen, to give an eye to, from Auge, eye; belauben, to cover with leaves, from Laub, leaf; bereichern, to enrich, from reich, rich, &c. In the application of this particle, there is but little difference between the two languages, and there is no difference in its signification.

Ent denotes 1st. removal from a place, and nearly corresponds to the English *from*, *or away*; as, entfliegen, to fly away; entfernen, to remove; entlaſſen, to send away, or dismiss.

2nd. Deprivation; as, entehren, to dishonor; entbinden, to unbind; entfeſſeln, to unfetter; enthaupten, to behead; enthüllen, to unveil.

3rd. It sometimes denotes the commencement of an action; as, entbrennen, to kindle; entzünden, to set on fire; entſchlafen, to fall asleep; entſpringen, to spring; entſtehen, to arise.

Emp is sometimes substituted for ent, for the sake of euphony, before words beginning with f; as, empfehlen, to recommend; but emp generally signifies *to*, or *internally*; as, empfinden, to feel, to be endowed with inward feeling, from finden, to find.

Er denotes 1st. elevation, answering to the particle auf, up; as, erheben, to elevate, or lift up; erbauen, to build up; erziehen, to bring up; erwachſen, to grow up.

2nd. Obtaining by means of exertion, or trouble; as, erfechten, to obtain by fighting; erſchmeicheln, to wheedle; erfiſchen, to fish out; erarbeiten, to work for; erkaufen, to purchase; erfahren, to learn, by experience; thus, Er hat einen Sieg erfochten, he has obtained a victory; Er hat ſeine Gunſt erſchmeichelt, he has wheedled himself into favour, &c. So likewise in regard to mental exertions; as, erſinnen, to devise; erdenken, to contrive; erfinden, to invent, &c.; thus, Er hat etwas Neues erſinnet, he has

devised something new; Sie haben einen Anſchlag erdacht, they have contrived a scheme, &c.

3rd. Taking out, bringing out, coming out, answering to the particle aus, out; erwählen, to elect, or choose out of; ernennen, to nominate; ergießen, to flow out; erlaſſen, to issue; erſchöpfen, to exhaust; erbrechen, to break open, or break out from.

4th. A bringing or coming into a condition, and when compounded of adjectives, it becomes possessed of the same qualities; as, erweitern, to enlarge, from weit, wide, or large; erwärmen, to warm, from warm, warm; ergrauen, to grow grey, from grau, grey; erhärten, to harden, from hart, hard; erbleichen, to turn, or to grow pale, from bleich, pale; erblinden, to grow blind, from blind, blind; erkälten, to grow cold, from kalt, cold; erröthen, to redden, or blush, from roth, red; erarmen, to impoverish, from arm, poor; erklären, to explain, or clear up, from klar, clear; also with some verbs and nouns; as, erfrieren, to freeze, from frieren, to freeze; erzürnen, to be angry, from Zorn, anger; erſterben, to expire, from ſterben, to die, &c.

Ge gives simply an extension to the primitive; as, brauchen, to use, gebrauchen, to employ; denken, to think, gedenken, to think of, or bear in mind; frieren, to freeze, gefrieren, to congeal; dulden, to bear, ſich gedulden, to endure, or have patience with; reuen, to repent, ſich gereuen, to repent of; langen, to reach; gelangen, to arrive at, or come to, &c.

Ver denotes 1st. removal, answering to the particle *away*; as, verjagen, to drive away; verſchenken, to give away; verrücken, to move away; verpflanzen, to transplant; verſetzen, to transpose; verwechſeln, to change; verkaufen, to sell, or what is equivalent to away, such as, waste, loss, or consumption; Ex. vertrinken, to drink away, to spend by drinking; verſpielen, to game away; verlieren, to lose; verarbeiten, to work up; verblühen, to fade away; verrauchen, to evaporate; verſchmachten, to pine; verbluten, to bleed to death; verwelken, to wither away.

2nd. Putting out of order, or doing wrong, answering generally to *mis*; as, verlegen, to mislay; verführen, to seduce; verſchreiben, to write wrong; verdrehen, to pervert; verfälſchen, to adulterate; verſalzen, to oversalt; vergeſſen, to forget; verſchieben, to dislocate; vernachläſſigen, to neglect, verrechnen, to miscalculate.

3rd. Putting in the way of, obstructing; as, verbieten, to forbid; verſagen, to deny; verbitten, to refuse; verwehren, to prohibit; verhindern, to prevent; as, verſchießen, to lock up; verdämmen, to dam up; verſiegeln, to seal up; verſperren, to bar up, or out; vermauern, to wall up, &c.

4th. Putting into a condition; as, veralten, to grow obsolete, from alt, old; verlängern, to lengthen, from lang, long; verkürzen,

to shorten, from kurz, short; verarmen, to empoverish, from arm, poor; veredeln, to ennoble, from edel, noble; vergöttern, to deify, from Gott, God; verbrüdern, to fraternize, from Bruder, brother; verschwägern, to be affined, from Schwager, a brother-in-law, &c. Sometimes it adds force to the primitive; as, verehren, to venerate, from ehren, to honor; verspotten, to mock, from spotten, to joke with; verlachen, to deride, from lachen, to laugh; verleihen, to lend out, from leihen, to lend, &c.

Zer *denotes* a thorough separation of the parts; as, zerbrechen, to break in pieces; zerschmettern, to dash in pieces; zerrütten, to shake in pieces; zerstreuen, to dissipate; zerstören, to destroy; zerschneiden, to hack.

The particles wider, against, and hinter, behind, though inseparable in composition, are employed as distinct words. Verbs compounded with miß, which answers to the English *mis* and *dis*; take the augment ge and the preposition zu before the participle and infinitive, when employed either in an active, or a transitive sense; as, mißbilligen, to disapprove, gemißbilliget, disapproved, zu mißbilligen, to disapprove; mißbrauchen, to misuse, gemißbrauchet, misused; mißleiten, to mislead, mißgeleitet, misled, zu mißleiden, to mislead; but neuters take the ge in the middle; as, mißarten, to degenerate, mißgeartet, degenerated; mißleiten, to mislead, mißgeleitet, misled; mißtreten, to slip, mißgetreten, slipped; mißgreifen, to mistake, or take wrong, mißgriffen, mistook, &c.; but in mißbegreifen, to misconceive; ge is left out in the participle Ex. mißbegriffen, misconceived.

Some few neuters drop the participial augment ge; as, mißfallen, to displease, es hat mir mißfallen, it has displeased me; mißlingen, to fail, es ist mißlungen, it has failed; mißrathen, to miscarry, es ist mißrathen, it has miscarried; mißverstehen, to misunderstand, man hat es mißverstanden.

3rd. Some prepositions are both separable and inseparable, namely durch, through; um, about; über, over; and unter, under; to which may be added wieder, again. They are separable in the intransitive, and inseparable in the transitive sense; as, durchbrechen, to break through, or make one's way through; er bricht durch, *(separable)* he breaks through; durchgebrochen, broken through; etwas durchbrechen, to break through any thing; er durchbricht eine Mauer, *(inseparable)* he breaks through a wall; durchbrochen, broken through; umlaufen, to go, or run round; er läuft um *(separable)* he runs round; umgelaufen, run round; etwas umlaufen, to run round a thing, or go the round of a thing; er umläuft, *(inseparable)* he runs about, umlaufen, run round; übersehen, to leap, or pass over; er setzt über, *(separable)* he leaps over; übergesetzt, passed over; übersetzen, to translate; er übersetzt aus dem Deutschen, *(inseparable)* he translates from German;

übersetzt, translated; unterhalten, to hold under, er hält unter, he holds under *(separable)* untergehalten, held under; unterhalten, to support, er unterhält, he supports, *(inseperable)* unterhalten, supported: we say, er brach hier durch, he broke through here, or without mentioning any place, er brach durch, he broke through; but die Sonne durchbricht die Wolken, the sun breaks through the clouds; er hat den Wald durchbrochen, he has broken through the wood; er ist umgelaufen, he has gone a round; but er umläuft die Stadt, he goes the circuit of the city: der Reiter setzt über, the horseman leaps over; but der Schüler übersetzt Sprachen, the scholar translates languages; er hält die Hände unter, he holds the hands under, or underneath; but er unterhält die Hände, he supports the hands. Wieder in composition is separable in the proper sense but inseparable in the figurative sense; as, wieder hohlen, to fetch back *(separable)*; ich habe es wieder geholt, I have fetched it back, but wiederhohlen, to repeat *(inseparable)*; ich habe die Worte wiederhohlt, I have repeated the words. In the above verbs the accent is laid upon the particle when it is separable, but upon the verb when it is inseparable: this remark applies as a rule to all other such verbs.

4th. Verbs compounded with nouns, or adverbs, are mostly inseparable; but take the augment ge in the participle; as,

Infinitive.	*Pres. Ind.*
Rathschlagen, to consult.	Ich rathschlage.
Antworten, to answer.	Ich antworte.

Participle.
Gerathschlaget.
Geantwortet.

So the following:

Argwohnen, to suspect.	Quacksalbern, to quack.
Frohlocken, to exult.	Radbrechen, to break on the wheel.
Frühstücken, to breakfast.	Rechtfertigen, to justify.
Fuchsschwänzen, to fawn.	Tagewerken, to work by the day.
Handhaben, to handle.	Urtheilen, to judge.
Heirathen, to marry.	Urkunden, to testify.
Hohnlachen, to laugh to scorn.	Weissagen, to prophesy.
Liebäugeln, to ogle.	Wetteifern, to emulate.
Liebkosen, to caress.	Willfahren, to gratify.
Muthmässen, to conjecture.	
Panzerfegen, to reproach.	

Those compounded with voll drop the augment ge; as, vollenden, to finish; *Perf.* ich vollende, I finished; *Part.* vollendet, finished; so, vollbringen, to bring about; vollziehen, to execute; vollstrecken, to accomplish; vollführen, to consummate; but voll

may be separated from some verbs; as, voll gießen, to pour full; voll machen, to make full, &c. Some other verbs, which are not genuine compounds, are mostly separated; as, Dank ſagen, to give thanks; Haus halten, to keep house; ich ſage Dank, I give thanks; Dank geſagt, thanks given; ich halte Haus, I keep house; Haus gehalten, kept house; so likewise freiſprechen, to acquit; losreißen, to tear asunder; gleich kommen, to equal; wahrſagen, to prognosticate.

List of the principal Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed.

1. The following particles are not to be separated from the verbs.

after.	as, afterreden,	to backbite.
be.	.. bedenken,	.. reflect, consider.
emp	.. empfangen,	.. receive.
ent.	.. entſtehen,	.. arise.
er.	.. erfinden,	.. invent.
ge.	.. gedeihen,	.. prosper.
hinter.	.. hinterbleiben,	.. remain behind.
mis.	.. misfallen,	.. displease.
ver.	.. verzehren,	.. consume.
verab.	.. verabfolgen,	.. deliver.
vernach.	.. vernachläſſigen,	.. neglect.
verun.	.. verunehren,	.. dishonor.
voll.	.. vollbringen,	.. complete.
über.	.. übergeben,	.. surrender.
ur.	.. urtheilen,	.. judge.
zer.	.. zerſtöhren,	.. destroy.

2. The following are the principal particles, which, in some tenses of the conjugation, are to be separated from the verbs.

ab.	an.	anheim.
auf.	aus.	bei, dabei.
davon.	daſür.	davor.
darunter.	dawider.	dazwiſchen.
durch.	ein.	einher.
fort.	für.	gleich.
heim.	hin.	her.
herab.	herauf.	heraus.
herbei.	herdurch.	herein.
hernach.	herüber.	herum.
herunter.	hervor.	herzu.
hinab.	hinan.	hinauf.

hinaus.	hinüber.	hinzu.
innen.	mit.	nach.
nieder.	ob.	über.
überein.	unter.	voll.
vor.	voran.	voraus.
vorüber.	vorbei.	weg.
wieder.	zu.	zuwider.

The above particles have a meaning of themselves, independent of the verbs with which they are connected; some of their meanings may be seen in the following examples:

Abſchreiben, to copy;	from, ſchreiben, to write, ab, from.
Ausſchreiben, to extract,	.. ſchreiben, to write, aus, out of, or from.
Unterſchreiben, to sign,	.... ſchreiben, to write, unter, under.
Aufbauen, to erect,	.... bauen, to build, auf, up.
Nachgehen, to go after,	.... gehen, to go, nach, after.
Mitnehmen, to take along with,	.... nehmen, to take, mit, with.
Niederrennen, to run down,	.... rennen, to run, nieder, down.
Herbringen, to bring hither, (or here,)	.... bringen, to bring, her, hither.
Hervorbringen, to bring forth,	.... bringen, to bring, hervor, forth.
Hinhelfen, to forward,	.... helfen, to help, hin, forth.
Hinüberkommen, to come over,	.... kommen, to come, hinüber, over.
Unterſinken, to go to the bottom,	.... ſinken, to sink, unter, under.
Ueberfließen, to overflow	.... fließen, to flow, über, over.
Vorreden, to speak before,	.... reden, to speak, vor, before.
Vorangehen, to go before,	.... gehen, to go, voran, before.
Vorbeigehen, to pass by,	.... gehen, to go, vorbei, by,
Wegnehmen, to take away,	.... nehmen, to take, weg, away.
Wiederkommen, to come again	.... kommen, to come, wieder, again.
Zubeißen, to bite at,	.... beißen, to bite, zu, at.

§. VIII. *Of Verbs when they reflect upon the Agent, commonly called Reflective Verbs.*

Reflective verbs are formed with the pronouns mich, dich, ſich, uns, euch, ſich, answering to the English pronouns,

myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves; they are conjugated like active verbs, and are either regular, or irregular.

Conjugation of the Reflective Verb ſich lieben, *to love one's-self.*

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich liebe mich, I love myself.	Ich liebe mich, I may love myself.
Du liebſt dich, thou lovest thyself.	Du liebeſt dich, thou mayst love thyself.
Er liebt ſich, he loves himself.	Er liebe ſich, he may love himself.
Sie liebt ſich, she loves herself.	Sie liebe ſich, she may love herself.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir lieben uns, we love ourselves.	Wir lieben uns, we may love ourselves.
Ihr liebet euch, you love yourselves.	Ihr liebet euch, you may love yourselves.
Sie lieben ſich, they love themselves.	Sie lieben ſich, they may love themselves.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich liebte mich, I loved myself.	Ich liebete mich, I might love myself.
Du liebteſt dich, thou &c.	Du liebeteſt dich, thou, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir liebten uns, we loved, ourselves.	Wir liebeten uns, we might love ourselves.
Ihr liebtet euch, you, &c.	Ihr liebetet euch, you, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich habe mich geliebt, I have loved myself.	Ich habe mich geliebt, I may have loved myself.
Du haſt dich geliebt, &c.	Du habeſt dich geliebt, &c.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir haben uns geliebt, we have loved ourselves.	Wir haben uns geliebt, we may have loved ourselves.
Ihr habt euch geliebt, &c.	Ihr habet euch geliebt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich hatte mich geliebt, I had loved myself.	Ich hätte mich geliebt, I might have loved myself.
Du hatteſt dich geliebt, &c.	Du hätteſt dich geliebt, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir hatten uns geliebt, we had loved ourselves.	Wir hätten uns geliebt, we might have loved ourselves.
Ihr hattet euch geliebt, &c.	Ihr hättet euch geliebt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde mich lieben, I shall, or will love myself.	Ich werde mich lieben, I shall, or will love myself.
Du wirſt dich lieben, &c.	Du werdeſt dich lieben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden uns lieben, we shall, or will love ourselves.	Wir werden uns lieben, we shall, or will love ourselves.
Ihr werdet euch lieben, &c.	Ihr werdet euch lieben, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich werde mich geliebt haben, I shall have loved myself.	Ich werde mich geliebt haben, I shall have loved myself.
Du wirſt dich geliebt haben, thou, &c.	Du werdeſt dich geliebt haben, thou, &c.

Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir werden uns geliebt haben, we shall have loved ourselves.	Wir werden uns geliebt haben, we shall have loved ourselves.
Ihr werdet euch geliebt haben, &c.	Ihr werdet euch geliebt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Ich würde mich lieben, I should love myself.	Ich würde mich geliebt haben, I should have loved myself.
Du würdeſt dich lieben, thou, &c.	Du würdeſt dich geliebt haben, &c.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Wir würden uns lieben, we should love ourselves.	Wir würden uns geliebt haben, we should have loved ourselves.
Ihr würdet euch lieben, &c.	Ihr würdet euch geliebt haben, you &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Plural.*
Liebe dich, love thyself.	Liebt, or liebet euch, love yourselves.
Liebe er ſich, let him love himself.	Lieben ſie ſich, let them love themselves.

Practice on the Reflective Verbs.

INDICATIVE; Present.

I am ashamed,	ſich ſchämen, to be ashamed.
Thou art conceited,	ſich einbilden, to be conceited.
He blames himself,	ſich tadeln, to blame one's-self.
We unite together,	ſich vereinigen, to unite.
You forget yourselves,	ſich vergeſſen, to forget.
They assume to themselves,	ſich anmaßen, to assume.

Imperfect.

We rejoiced,	ſich freuen, to rejoice.
He betook himself,	ſich begeben, to betake one's-self.
We got leisure.	ſich abmüßigen, to get leisure.
You prepared yourselves,	ſich anſchicken, to prepare.
They helped themselves,	ſich helfen, to help.

Perfect.

I have been vexed,	ſich ärgern, to be vexed.
Thou hast been mistaken,	ſich irren, to be mistaken.
He has been shy,	ſich ſcheuen, to be shy.
It has appeared,	ſich äußern, to appear.
We have recovered ourselves,	ſich erholen, to recover one's-self.
You have been mortified, or hurt.	ſich kränken, to be mortified.
They have complained,	ſich beklagen, to complain.

Pluperfect.

I had found myself,	ſich befinden, to find one's-self.
Thou hadst rejoiced,	ſich freuen, to rejoice.
He had been vexed,	ſich ärgern, to be vexed.
She had hesitated, or bethought herself,	ſich bedenken, to hesitate.
We had been cautious,	ſich hüten, to be cautious.
You had been afraid,	ſich fürchten, to be afraid.
They had applied themselves,	ſich befleißigen, to apply one's-self.

Imperative.

Do not offend,	ſich vergehen, to offend, *to fail in one's duty.*
Grieve not,	ſich grämen, to grieve.
Do not complain,	ſich beklagen, to complain.
Do not burn yourself,	ſich verbrennen, to burn.
Be not afraid,	ſich fürchten, to be afraid.

Observations on the Reflective Verbs.

1. Reflective verbs are always active, and require the auxiliary haben in the compound tenses; although the verbs be otherwise neuter, and require ſeyn; as, ich habe mich müde geritten, I have ridden myself weary, *or* I have wearied myself with riding; but reiten, otherwise requires ſeyn; as, ich bin geritten, I have ridden.

2. There are many reflective verbs in German, which are not so in English; as, ſich erbarmen, to pity; ſich grämen, to grieve; and many others, as in the above practice. Some are only employed in the reflective form; as,

ſich begeben, to repair to.
ſich bemächtigen, to get possession of.
ſich freuen, to rejoice.
ſich ärgern, to be vexed.
ſich bedanken, to thank.
ſich grämen, to be grieved.
ſich berühmen, or rühmen, to boast one's-self, &c.

Some are employed in both forms; as,

Irren, to err, or ſich irren, to be mistaken.
Zanken, to quarrel, or ſich zanken, to embroil one's-self.
Scheuen, to shun, or ſich ſcheuen, to be shy.

3. Most reflective verbs take the pronoun in the accusative; as, Ich erbarme mich, I pity; Ich beſinne mich, I reflect; but some few admit the pronoun in the dative; as, ich maße mir nicht an, I do not assume; ich bilde mir nicht ein, I do not fancy; ich getraue mir, I am bold.

4. When the reflective pronoun is in the accusative plural, the proper reflective verbs admit of ſich only; as, ſie entſchließen ſich, they resolve; but those verbs which may be used reciprocally, or otherwise, admit either ſich, or einander; as, ſie ſchlagen ſich, or einander, they beat one another; ſie lieben ſich, or ſie lieben einander wie Kinder, they love one another as children; Sie ſind ſich alle gleich, they are all alike, or they are all like each other; wir ſehen alle einander gleich, we all look like each other. Here the German differs from the English, in making no distinction between ſich and einander, they beat themselves, and they beat one another, are distinct things in English, though both may be translated into German by the same phrase; but you cannot say in German Sie ſchämen einander, because ſchämen, to be ashamed, is not a transitive verb; but beſchämen, is transitive.

---

§. IX. *Of Impersonal Verbs.*

The impersonal verbs are regular or irregular, and are

formed with the pronoun es, in the third person singular only; as in the following examples,

Conjugation of the Regular Verb Regnen, *to rain.**

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Es regnet, it rains.	Es regne, it may rain.

Imperfect.

Es regnete, it rained.	Es regnete, it might rain.

Perfect.

Es hat geregnet, it has rained.	Es habe geregnet, it may have rained.

Pluperfect.

Es hatte geregnet, it had rained.	Es hätte geregnet, it might have rained.

First Future.

Es wird regnen, it will rain.	Es werde regnen, it will rain.

Second Future.

Es wird geregnet haben, it will have rained.	Es werde geregnet haben, it will have rained.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Es würde regnen, it would rain.	Es würde geregnet haben, it would have rained.

Obs. There is no imperative, or participle.

---

* Regnen, to rain, is conjugated like the regular verb lieben, to love, in the third person singular.

The following verbs may be conjugated in a similar manner.

Donnern, to thunder. Blitzen, to lighten.
Schneien, to snow. Thauen, to thaw, &c.
Hageln, or ſchloßen, to hail.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Frieren, *to freeze.*

Present.

Indicative.	Imperative.
Es friert, it freezes.	Es friere, it may freeze.

Imperfect.

Es fror, it froze.	Es fröre, it might freeze.

Perfect.

Es hat gefroren, it has frozen.	Es habe gefroren, it may have frozen.

Pluperfect.

Es hatte gefroren, it had frozen.	Es hätte gefroren, it might have frozen.

First Future.

Es wird frieren, it will freeze.	Es werde frieren, it will freeze.

Second Future.

Es wird gefroren haben, it will have frozen.	Es werde gefroren haben, it will have frozen.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Es würde frieren, it would freeze.	Es würde gefroren haben, it would have frozen.

Observe. There is no imperative, or participle.

Some verbs are reflective, as well as impersonal, as in the following example.

Conjugation of the Impersonal Reflective Verb ſich ärgern, *to be vexed.*

Present.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Es ärgert mich, I am vexed, or it vexes me, &c.	Es ärgere mich, I may be vexed, or it may vex me.
Es ärgert dich, thou art vexed, or it vexes thee.	Es ärgere dich, thou mayst be vexed, or it may vex thee.
Es ärgert ihn, or ſie, he, or she is vexed, or it vexed him, or her.	Es ärgere ihn, he may be vexed, or it may vex him.
Plural.	*Plural.*
Es ärgert uns, we are vexed, or it vexes us.	Es ärgere uns, we may be vexed, or it may vex us.
Es ärgert euch, you are vexed, or it vexes you.	Es ärgere euch, you may be vexed, or it may vex you.
Es ärgert ſie, they are vexed, or it vexes them.	Es ärgere ſie, they may be vexed, or it may vex them.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Er ärgerte mich, I was vexed, or it vexed me, &c.	Es ärgerte mich, I might be vexed, or it might vex me, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Es hat mich geärgert, I have been vexed, or it has vexed me, &c.	Es habe mich geärgert, I may have been vexed, or it may have vexed me, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Es hatte mich geärgert, I had been vexed, or it had vexed me, &c.	Es hätte mich geärgert, I might have been vexed, or it might have vexed me, &c.

First Future.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Es wird mich ärgern, I shall be vexed, or it will vex me, &c.	Es werde mich ärgern, I shall be vexed, or it will vex me, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.	*Sing.*
Es wird mich geärgert haben, I shall have been vexed, or it will have vexed me, &c.	Es werde mich geärgert haben, I shall have been vexed, or it will have vexed me, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.	Compound.
Sing.	*Sing.*
Es würde mich ärgern, I should be vexed, or it would vex me.	Es würde mich geärgert haben, I should have been vexed, or it would have vexed me.

Observe. This verb has no imperative, or participle.

Practice on the Impersonals.

Present.

I am hungry,	(ſich) hungern, to be hungry.
It freezes,	frieren, to freeze.
We are thirsty,	(ſich) durſten, to be thirsty.
They are sleepy,	(ſich) ſchläfern, to be sleepy.

Imperfect.

It rained,	regnen, to rain.
It thawed,	thauen, to thaw.
We were grieved,	ſich grämen, to grieve.
You were grieved,	.....
They were chagrined,	(ſich) verdrießen, to be chagrined.

Perfect.

I have been giddy,	(ſich) ſchwindeln, to be giddy.
Thou hast been hungry,	(ſich) hungern, to be hungry.
It has hailed,	hageln, to hail.
We have been glad,	ſich freuen, to be glad.
You have been grieved,	ſich grämen, to be grieved.

Future.

It will be a hoarfrost.	reifen, to be a hoarfrost.
We shall be hungry,	(ſich) hungern, to be hungry.
You will be thirsty,	(ſich) dürſten, to be thirsty.
They will be vexed,	ſich ärgern, to be vexed.

Conditional.

I should be surprised,	ſich wundern, to be surprised.
You would be chagrined,	ſich verdrießen, to be chagrined.
It would behove,	(ſich) gebühren, to behove.

Observations on the Impersonals.

1. The proper impersonals are those verbs which are used only in the third person singular, and mostly express the operations of nature, as:

Es regnet, it rains.	Es frieret, it freezes.
Es ſchneiet, it snows.	Es thauet, it thaws
Es hagelt, it hails.	Es wittert, (es ſtürmet) it storms.
Es donnert, it thunders.	Es wehet, it blows.
Es blitzet, it lightens.	Es taget, it dawns.
Es ſchauert, it showers.	Es währet, (es dauert) it lasts.

So the following.

Es iſt warm, it is warm.	Es iſt trocken, it is dry.
Es iſt heiß, it is very warm.	Es iſt windig, it is windy.
Es iſt licht, it is light.	Es iſt froſtig, it is frosty.
Es iſt kalt, it is cold.	Es iſt ſtürmiſch, it is stormy.
Es iſt dunkel, it is dark.	Es iſt wölkicht, it is cloudy.
Es iſt naß, it is wet.	Es iſt kothig, it is dirty.
Es iſt neblicht, it is foggy.	Es iſt klar, it is clear.
Es iſt regnicht, it is rainy.	Es iſt ſchön Wetter, it is fine weather.
Es iſt ſchlecht (böß) Wetter, it is dirty, *(bad)* weather.	

2. The following verbs govern a dative case of the personal pronouns; *(viz.)* mir, dir, ihm, (ihr,) uns, euch, ihnen; as;

Es beliebt, or es gefällt mir, dir, ihm, &c. it pleases me, thee, him, &c.
Es gebühret mir, it becomes me.
Es ekelt mir, I am disgusted, or it disgusts me.
Es fehlt mir, I want.
Es kömmt mir vor, it appears to me.
Es ist mir warm, I am warm.
Es ist mir kalt, I am cold.
Es bekömmt mir, it agrees with me.
Es mangelt mir, it is wanting to me.
Es mißfällt mir, it displeases me.
Es mißlingt mir, I do not succeed in it.
Es träumt mir, I dream, *(it dreams to me.)*
Es ziemt, or es geziemt mir, it becomes me.
Es scheint mir, it seems to me.
Es ist mir Angst, I am afraid.
Es ist mir wohl, I am well.

3. The following govern the accusative case of the pronouns; viz. mich, dich, ihn, or sich, (ihr,) uns, euch, sie, or sich; as,

Es hungert mich, dich, &c. I am hungry; thou art hungry, &c.
Es dürstet mich, I am thirsty.
Es schläfert mich, I am sleepy.
Es reuet mich, I repent, or it repents me.
Es freuet, or es erfreuet mich, I rejoice, or it rejoices me.
Es friereet mich, I am cold.
Es jammert mich, it grieves me.
Es betrübt mich, it afflicts me.
Es dauert mich, it grieves me.
Es mahnet mich, it puts me in mind of, or it reminds me.
Es wundert mich, it surprizes me.
Es verlanget mich, it makes me long.
Es verdrießt, or es verdrüßt mich, it vexes me.

When the pronoun is put first, es is omitted, as,

Mich hungert, I am hungry.
Mich dürstet, I am thirsty.
Mir beliebt, I am pleased.
Mir fehlt, I want, &c.

4. The following admit of both a dative and accusative of pronoun.

Es dünkt mir, (mich,) or es deucht mir, (mich,) it seems to me.
Es gelüstet mich, I list.
Es schläfert mich, I am sleepy.
Mir, (mich) dünket, or mir, (mich) deucht, I think, or methinks.
Es hilft mir, (mich,) it helps me.
Es verdrießt mir, (mich,) I am angry.

5. Some of these impersonals may be changed into personal verbs; as,

Personal.	*Impersonal.*
Ich hungere, or ich bin hungrig, I am hungry.	instead of es hungert mich.
Ich denke, I think.	..... es dünkt mir, (mich.)
Ich dürste, or ich bin durstig, I am thirsty.	..... es dürstet mir, (mich.)

6. Many reflective verbs may likewise occasionally take an impersonal form; as,

Es freuet mich, or ich freue mich, it rejoices me, or I rejoice.
Es ärgert mich, or ich ärgere mich, it vexes me, or I am vexed, &c.

In the same manner other verbs may be made impersonal and reflective; as,

Es versteht sich, it follows of course, or of course that is.
Es sagt sich leicht, it is easily said.
Hier wohnt es sich gut, here is a good place to live in.
Hier geht sichs (*for* sich es) schlecht, it is bad walking here.

---

*Es sometimes answers to *there*; as, es ist, there is; es giebt, there is.

They are conjugated as follows:

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Es ist, there is.	Es giebt, there is, or there are.

Imperfect.

Es war, there was.	Es gab, there was.

Perfect.

Es ist gewesen, there has been.	Es hat gegeben, there has been.

* Es is frequently put before the verb, and the nominative after; as,
Es kennt ihn niemand, no one knows him, (i. e.) *there knows him no one.*
Es fliegt ein Vogel, there is a bird flying.

INDICATIVE.

Future.

Es wird ſeyn, there will be. Es wird geben, there will be.

Conditional.

Es würde ſeyn, there would be. Es würde geben, there would be.

And so on through the subjunctive.

Sometimes es is employed with the passive verb: as, es wird geſagt, it is said: but in this connexion the indefinite pronoun man is more commonly used, answering to the English *one, we, people, men*, or the passive verb *to be*, &c.; as, man glaubt, it is believed, we believe, they, people, men believe; man hat geläugnet, it has been denied; man wird hoffen, we shall hope.

Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Verbs.

FIRST LESSON.

Deutſchland iſt kaum ſeit zwei tauſend Jahren bekannt worden.

Die alten Deutſchen waren rohe Barbaren, nicht viel beſſer als die wilden Amerikaner.

Wälder und Sümpfe verbreiteten ſich im Lande. Die Wälder waren mit Unkraut und Geſträuch verwachſen. Die Flüſſe traten aus und überſchwemmten das Land.

Die Einwohner ſchwammen über die Flüſſe weil ſie von Brücken nichts wußten. Keine Städte waren zu ſehen.

Kaum traf man ein Paar Wohnungen nahe bei einander an, nur Köln und noch ein Paar Städte lagen am Rheine.

Sie baueten ſehr wenige Häuſer und keine ſolche wie wir gebauet haben.

Wir haben Bäume abgehauen und geſpalten, Steine gebacken oder gegraben und daraus Häuſer gemacht.

Deutſchland, Germany. bekannt, known.
kaum, scarcely, ſeit, ago.

alt, ancient.
Deutſcher, German.
rohe, rude.
Barbar, *m.* 3. Barbariah.
viel, much.
als, than.
wild, wild.
Amerikaner, Americans.
*Wald, *n.* 5. wood, or forest.
*Sumpf, *m.* 2. marsh.
ſich verbreiten, to spread.
*Land, *n.* 5. country.
verwachſen, to overgrow.
mit, with.
Unkraut, *n.* 5. weed.
Geſträuch, *n.* 2. broom.
*Fluß, *m.* 2. river.
austreten, *ir.* to break its banks.
überſchwemmen, to overflow.
Einwohner, *m.* 1. inhabitant.
ſchwimmen, *ir.* to swim.
über, over.
weil, because.
wiſſen, *ir.* to know.
von, of.
Brücke, *f.* 3. bridge.
*Stadt, *f.* 2. city.
zu ſehen, to be seen.
treffen, to meet.
Paar, couple.
Wohnung, *f.* 3. habitation.
nahe bei, close to.
Köln, Cologne.
noch ein Paar, a few other.
liegen, *ir.* to lie.
am, (for an dem,) on the.
Rhein, 2. Rhine.
Bauen, to build.
wenig, few.
*Haus, *n.* 5. house.
ſolcher, such.
wie, as.
abhauen, *ir.* to cut down.
ſpalten, *ir.* to rive.
Baum, *m.* 2. tree.
backen, *ir.* to burn.
Stein, *m.* 2. brick, or stone.
oder, or.
graben, *ir.* to dig.
Stein, stone.
machen, to make.
daraus, out of these.

SECOND LESSON.

Sie lagen und ſchliefen aber unter den Bäumen, oder machten ſich unterirdiſche Höhlen.

Weder die Männer noch Frauen waren prächtig gekleidet. Dieſe trugen keine von den ſchönen Kleidern, welche die Damen ſeit dreihundert Jahren getragen haben.

Wir haben die Mittel gefunden, alles ſchön zu machen.

Wir haben die Schafe geſchoren und davon Wolle bekommen.

Die Würmer, welche wir aufgezogen, haben uns Seide geſponnen.

Aus dieſen beiden haben wir Tuch und Seide gewebt.

Die Deutſchen Weiber ſpinnen und webten die Klei-

dung, welche die ganze Familie trug, aber das Gewebe war freilich nicht gut gearbeitet.

Sie laſen nichts weil ſie keine Bücher hatten, ſie dachten, ſprachen und ſchrieben ſehr wenig, weil ſie ſehr wenig ſahen und hörten.

Wir haben hingegen viel geſehen, gehört, geſchrieben, geſprochen und gedacht.

ſchlafen, *ir.* to sleep.
unter, under.
unterirdiſch, subterranean.
Höhle, cavern.
weder, neither.
Mann, *m.* 5. man.
noch, nor.
Frau, *f.* 3. woman.
prächtig, elegantly.
kleiden, to clothe.
tragen, *ir.* to wear.
von, of.
ſchön, fine.
Kleid, *n.* 5. cloth.
Dame, *f.* 3. lady.
ſeit, for.
Jahr, *n.* 2. year.
finden, *ir.* to find.
Mittel, *n.* 1. means.
ſcheren, *ir.* to shear.
bekommen, *ir.* to get.
Wolle, *f.* 3. wool.
aufziehen, to bring up.
ſpinnen, *ir.* to spin.
Seide, *f.* 3. silk.
weben, to weave.
Kleidung, *f.* 3. clothing.
ganz, whole.
Familie, *f.* 3. family.
tragen, *ir.* to wear.
Gewebe, *n.* 1. weaving.
freilich, indeed.
arbeiten, to work.
leſen, *ir.* to read.
denken, *ir.* to think.
ſprechen, *ir.* to speak.
ſchreiben, *ir.* to write.
ſehen, *ir.* to see.
hören, to hear.
hingegen, on the contrary.
denken, *ir.* to think.

CHAP. VII.

ADVERBS, Nebenwörter.

The adverbs which most frequently occur in writing and conversation are the following:

§ I. *Adverbs of Place.*

Wo? where?
Woher? whence?
Wohin? whither?
Wohinwärts? where to?
Hier, allhier, here.
Hieher, hither.

Da, dort, daſelbſt, there.
Daher, dorther, thence.
Dahin, dorthin, thither.
Dahinwärts, thereto.
Abweſend, absent.
Irgends, irgendwo, somewhere.
Nirgends, nirgendwo, nowhere.
Anderswo, elsewhere.
Allenthalben, allerwegen, or allerorten, every where.
Innen, drinnen, within.
Außen, draußen, without.
Inwendig, internally.
Auswendig, externally, outward.
Oben, droben, above.
Darauf, upon it, thereon.
Ab, off, down.
Auf und nieder, or auf und ab, up and down.
Ein und aus, in and out.
Hin und her, to and from.
Hier und da, (dort,) here and there.
Fort, forth.
Hinter, behind.
Vorn, before, fronting.
Von wannen? from whence?
Von hinnen, from hence.
Nah, nahe, near.
Fern, ferne, far.
Weit ab, far off.
Nahe bei, hard by.
Anweſend, or gegenwärtig, present.

§. II. *Adverbs of Time.*

Wenn? wann? when?
*Denn, dann, alsdenn, alsdann, then.
Nun, jetzt, now.
Bald, soon.
Schon, already.
Früh, early.
Spät, late.
Je, jemals, ever.
Nie, niemals, never.
Noch, still, yet.
Noch nicht, not yet.
Beizeiten, betimes.
Allezeit, or allewege, always.
Zuzeiten, zuweilen, or bisweilen, sometimes.
Einſt, einſtens, once.
Neulich, lately, newly.
Letztens, letzthin, letztlich, lately, lastly.
Einſtmals, at some time.
Vormals, or ehemals, formerly.
Nachmals, or nachher, afterwards.
Wieder, wiederum, again.
Seither, ſeit, since.
Heute, to-day.

* Some writers distinguish the adverb dann, *then*, from the conjunction denn, *for*, by spelling the former dann, also to distinguish wann, *when*, from wenn, *if*.

Geſtern, yesterday.
Vorgeſtern, the day before yesterday.
Morgen, to-morrow.
Uebermorgen, the day after to-morrow.
Mittags, at noon.
Vormittags, before noon.
Nachmittags, after noon.
Immer, always.
Stets, continually, always, ever.
Eben nun, just now.
Lange, or ſchon lange, long ago, a long time since.
Unlängſt, not long ago.
Bisher, hitherto.
Damals, at that time.
Vorlängſt, long ago, &c.

---

§. III. *Affirmatives and Negatives*

Ja, yes.
Nein, no.
Wahrlich, truly, verily.
Ja freilich, or ja wohl, yes to be sure, surely, to be sure, yes.
Allerdings, entirely, by all means.
Gar nicht, not at all.
Keineswegs, mit nichten, by no means.
Kaum, hardly.
In der That, indeed.
Unfehlbar, doubtless.
Schlechterdings, absolutely.
Wirklich, really.
Immermehr, ever.
Nimmermehr, never.
Glaublich, credibly.
Vielleicht, perhaps.
Vermuthlich, probably.
Durchaus nicht, absolutely not.
Unglaublich, incredibly

---

§ IV. *Adverbs of various Use.*

Meiſt, faſt, ſchier, almost.
Beinahe, nearly.
Genug, genung, enough.
Voller, full of.
Völlig, completely.
Obenhin, at random, carelessly.
Vollends, fully.
Zum theil, in part.
Theils, partly.
Ungefähr, about.
Als, wie, as.
Wie? how?
Warum? why?
Darum, therefore.
Gleich, directly, equally.
Anders, otherwise.
Gleicherweiſe, likewise.
Gleich wie, gleich als, like as.
So, so.
Sehr, gar, very, much.
Zu, allzu, too.
Ganz, gänzlich, whole, wholly.
Wohl, gut, well.

Uebel, ſchlecht, bad.
Böſe, badly.
Alſo, thus.
Ungemein, uncommonly.
Kurz, in short.
Uberaus, exceedingly.
Zugleich, at the same time.
Zuſammen, together.
Sämmtlich, all together.
Sachte, softly.
Sonderlich, beſonders, especially.
Hauptſächlich, chiefly.
Mit Fleiß, on purpose.
Vielmehr, rather.
Redlich, sincerely.
Recht, right.
Unrecht, wrong
Endlich, lastly.

---

§. V. *Observations on the Adverbs.*

1. The following substantives, denoting parts of the natural day, are changed into adverbs in the following manner:

Substantives.	*Adverbs.*
Der Tag, the day;	Tags, des Tags, in the daytime.
Die Nacht, the night;	Nachts, des Nachts, in the night.
Der Morgen, the morning;	Morgens, des Morgens, in the morning.
Der Abend, the evening;	Abends, des Abends, in the evening.
Der Vormittag, the forenoon;	Vormittags, des Vormittags, in the forenoon.
Der Nachmittag, the afternoon;	Nachmittags, des Nachmittags, in the afternoon.
Der Mittag, the noon;	Mittags, des Mittags, at noon.
Die Mitternacht, the midnight;	Mitternachts, des Mitternachts, at midnight.
Der Augenblick, the moment;	Augenblicks, des Augenblicks, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye.

So some other words become adverbs, by means of an additional s; as, bereits, already, from bereit, ready; ſtets, constantly, from ſtet, constant; beſonders, particularly, from beſonder, particular; anders, otherwise, from ander, other; rechts, to the right hand, from recht, right; links, to

the left, from link, left, &c. Numerals become adverbs, by adding ens, or tens; as, erſtens, in the first place, or firstly; zweitens, secondly; drittens, thirdly, &c. And the following words; beſtens, in the best manner; meiſtens, mostly; eheſtens, with the first opportunity; höchſtens, at the most; übrigens, as for the rest, in the mean time.

2. Many adjectives and nouns may be changed into adverbs by adding the syllable lich, and changing the vowels a, o, u, into ä, ö, ü; as, klar, clear, klärlich, clearly; Gott, God, göttlich, godly; gut, good; gütlich, goodly, &c.

§. VI. *The Comparison of Adverbs.*

Adverbs are invariable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison; as,

Positive.	*Comparitive.*	*Superlative.*
Gut, or wohl, well;	beſſer, better;	am, (zum) beſten, best.
Uebel, ill;	ſchlimmer, worse;	.....ſchlimſten, worst.
Viel, much;	mehr, more;	.....meiſten, most.
Wenig, little, few.	weniger, less;	.....wenigſten, least.
Nahe, near;	näher, nearer;	.....nächſten, nearest.
Hoch, high:	höher, higher;	.....höchſten, highest.
Bald, or ehe, soon;	eher, sooner;	.....eheſten, soonest.
Gern, readily, or willingly;	lieber, more readily, or rather.	.....liebſten, most readily, best, or most willingly.

Observe. The syllable un changes the adverbs from affirmatives to negatives, in the same manner as, *im*, or *un* in English; as, möglich, possible; unmöglich, impossible; vermögend, able; unvermögend, unable.

CHAP. VIII.

PREPOSITIONS, Vorwörter.

Of prepositions, observe their government, composition, and abbreviation.

§. I. *Their Government.*

Some prepositions govern a genitive, some a dative, some either a genitive, or dative, some an accusative, and some either a dative, or an accusative.

---

1. *Prepositions governing the Genitive*

	Examples.
Anſtatt, instead.	Anſtatt des Vaters, instead of the father.
Halb is only used in compounds; as, Auſſerhalb, out of, *and the three following.*	Auſſerhalb des Hauſes, out of doors.
Innerhalb, in, within.	Innerhalb dreier Tage, in three days.
Oberhalb, in the higher part of.	Oberhalb der Stadt, in the higher part of the town.
Unterhalb, in the lower part of.	Unterhalb der Stadt, in the lower part of the town.
Dieſſeits, on this side of.	Dieſſeits des Fluſſes, on this side of the river.
Halben, or halber, (*when the noun has no article, or pronoun before it*), on account of, for the sake of.	Des Königs halben, for the sake of the king. Alters halber, on account of age. Deiner Laſter halben, on account of your vices.
Jenſeits, beyond, on the other side.	Jenſeits des Ganges, on the other side of the Ganges.
Kraft, by virtue of.	Kraft meines Amtes, by virtue of my office.
Laut, according to, conformably.	Laut des Königlichen Befehls, according to the king's command.
Mittelſt, (better) vermittelſt, *by*, by means of.	Vermittelſt deines Beiſtandes, by means of your assistance.

	Examples
Ungeachtet, notwithstanding. (*sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the noun.*)	Ungeachtet aller Hinderniſſe, notwithstanding all impediments. Seines Fleißes ungeachtet, notwithstanding his industry.
Unweit, not far from.	Unweit des Dorfes, not far from the village.
Vermöge, by reason or virtue of, by dint of, by means of.	Vermöge ſeiner Geburt, by reason of his birth. Vermöge der Uebung, by dint of practice. Vermöge des Fleißes, by means of diligence.
Während, during.	Während der Zeit, during the time. Während des Krieges, during the war.
Wegen, on account of, because of. (*It may stand before or after the noun*).	Ich that es meines Vaters wegen, I did it because of, or on account of my father. Wegen ſeines Fleißes, on account of his diligence.

---

2. *Prepositions which govern the Dative.*

Aus, out of.	Aus dem Bette, out of bed.
Außer, out of, without, besides.	Außer Ordnung, out of, or without order. Außer der Stadt, out of the city or town. Außer dem Hauſe, out of the house. Außer mir, besides me.
Bei, by, near.	Bei der Hand, by the hand. Bei dem Hauſe, near the house.

	Examples.
Entgegen, against, towards. Entgegen gehen, to go to meet, (*stands after its case.*)	Dem Winde entgegen, against the wind. Wir wollen unserm Freunde entgegen gehen, we will go to meet our friend.
Gegen-über, opposite to (*may be separated*).	Dem Hause gegenüber, opposite (*to*) the house. Gegen mir über, opposite to me.
Mit, with.	Mit ihm, with him. Mit dem Vater, with the father.
Nach, 1st. after, behind. 2nd. to, or towards, with names of places, and verbs of motion. 3rd. according to, following.	Nach mir, after, or behind me. Wann gehen Sie nach der Stadt? when do you go to town? Seiner Geburt nach, according to his birth. Dem Strome nach, following the stream.
Nebst, or sammt, together with.	Nebst, or sammt dem Vater, together with the father.
Seit, since.	Seit der Zeit, since the time.
Von, from, of, by.	Von mir, from me, of me. Das Buch ist von ihm geschrieben, that book is written by him.
Vor, before.	Vor mir, before me.
Zu, to, at, by, on, in.	Zu mir, to me. Zu London, at, or in London. Zu Hause, at home. Zu Wasser, by water. Zu Lande, on land. Zu Fuße, on foot.
Zunächst, next to.	Er saß mir zunächst, he sat next to me.
Zuwider, contrary to, against.	Mir zuwider, against me.

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

	Examples.
Durch, through.	Durch den Wald, through the wood. Durch dich, through you.
Für, for.	Für mich, for me. Für den Preis, for the price.
*Gegen, against, opposite.	Gegen den Wind, against the wind. Gegen mich, against me, or opposite me.
Gen, *when it means* towards, is applied to Himmel only; as,	Gen Himmel, towards heaven.
Gen, by, is used as a nautical phrase; as,	Nord gen Oſt, north by east.
†Ohne, Sonder, } without.	Ohne, Sonder, } mich, without me.
Um, about.	Um die Stadt, about the city. Um mich, about me.
Wider, against, in opposition to.	Wider mich, euch, ihn, ſie, es, ſie, against me, you, him, her, it, them.

4. Prepositions governing the genitive, or dative; and the genitive, or accusative.

Ohne, without (*with the acc.*)	Ohne mich, without me.
After the substantive with the *genitive*.	Zweifels ohne, without doubt.
Zufolge, according to, (before the substantive with the *gen.*)	Zufolge ihres Befehls, according to your command.

* Gegen is also used with the dative, but then it signifies *towards*; as, gegen mir, ihm, towards me, him.

† Ohne sometimes governs the *genitive*.

After the substantive with the *dative*.	Ihrem Befehl zufolge, according to your command.
Längs, along, (generally with the *dative*, sometimes with the *genitive*.)	Längs dem Wege, along the way. Längs des Weges, along the way.

---

5. *Prepositions governing the Dative, or Accusative.**

An, at, in, on; *dative*.	An einem Orte, in, or at a place. Er iſt an allen Orten, he is at, or in every place.
" to; *accusative*.	Er gehet an alle Orte, he goes to every place.
Auf, in, upon; *dative*.	Er iſt auf dem Felde, he is in the field. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tiſche, the book lies upon the table.
" into, on; *acc*.	Er gehet auf das Feld, he goes into the field. Lege das Buch auf den Tiſch, lay the book on the table.
Hinter, behind; *dat*.	Er iſt hinter mir, he is behind me.
" *acc*.	Er gehet hinter mich, he walks behind me.
In, in; *dat*.	Er iſt in dem Zimmer, he is in the room.
" into; *acc*.	Er gehet in das Zimmer, he goes into the room.

* If they signify being in a place, either in motion or at rest the dative is used; but when motion *to* a place is expressed, the accusative is used.

	Examples.
Neben, next to ; *dat.*	Er wohnt neben meinem Hauſe, he lives next to my house.
..... *acc.*	Er ziehet neben mein Haus, he removes next to my house.
Ueber, above ; *dat.*	Er wohnt über mir, he lives over, or above me.
.... over ; *acc.*	Er ſpringet über mich, he jumps over me.
Unter, among ; *dat.*	Er iſt unter den Leuten, he is among the people. Er iſt unter mir, he is below me. Es liegt unter dem Tiſche, it lies under the table.
..... under, below ; *acc.*	Er gehet unter die Leute, he goes among the people. Er demüthiget ſich unter mich, he humbles himself below me. Ich werfe es unter den Tiſch, I throw it under the table.
Vor, before ; *dat.*	Vor der Zeit, before the time. Vor mir ſtand ein Baum, before me stood a tree.
..... *acc.*	Vor die Thür, before the door. Er gehet vor den Richter zu treten, he is going to appear before the judge.
Zwiſchen, between ; *dat.*	Ich bin zwiſchen zweien Freunden, I am between two friends. Zwiſchen dir und mir, between you and me.

	Examples.
Zwiſchen, between; *acc.*	Sie kam zwiſchen zwei Kinder, she came between two children.
	Zwiſchen dich und mich, between you and me.

---

§. II. *Their Composition*

Some prepositions are often compounded with hie, hier, da, wo, and form adverbs; if the preposition begin with a vowel, or h, an r is added to the adverbs da and wo.

1st. With da, dar, instead of der, dieſer, derſelbe.

Dabei, by it, with it, thereby.	Darunter, under it, or that.
Daran, on it, or that, thereon.	Dafür, for that.
	Dagegen, against it, or that.
Darauf, upon it, or that, thereupon.	Damit, with that, or it, by it, therewith.
Daraus, from thence, it, that, whereupon.	Daneben, near that, or it, next to it.
Darein, thereinto, into it, or that.	Davon, of that, or it, thereof, therefrom.
Darin, therein, in it, within.	Dawider, against that, or it.
Darnach, after it, thereafter.	Dazu, for that, or it, thereto.
Darum, for it, or that; therefore.	Davor, before that, or it.
	Dazwiſchen, between that, or it, there, between, &c.
Darüber, on that account, at it.	

2nd. With hier, the same prepositions as before.

Hieran, on this, or it.	Hierauf, upon this, or it, &c.

3rd. With wo, wor, instead of welcher, was.

Woran, on which, whereon.	Worin, in which, wherein.
Worauf, upon which, whereupon.	Womit, with which, wherewith.

Wodurch, by, or through which.
Warum, for which, why, wherefore.
Wogegen, against which.
Wovor, before which.
Wozu, to which, whereto.
Worneben, next to which, wherenext.
Worüber, upon which, whereupon.
Wofür, for which, wherefore.
Worunter, under which, among which. &c.

4th. With her and hin as adverbs.

Herab, hinab, herunter, down.
Herauf, up.
Heraus, out, &c.

5th. Some are separated; as,

Um=her, round about.
Um=willen, for the sake of.
Um Gottes willen, for God's sake.
Hinter=her, hinter=drein, behind.
Ich ging hinter dem Manne her, I walked after the man, I followed the man.

CHAP. III.—*Their Abbreviations.*

In the familiar, or colloquial style, the definite article and preposition, are generally contracted into one word; as, am, for an dem. Ex. am Tage, for an dem Tage, in the day.

Examples.

Am,	for an dem,	as, am Fenster, at the window.
Ans,	.. an das,	.. ans Licht, in the light.
Aufs,	.. auf das,	.. aufs Haus, upon the house.
Beim, or (beym,)	bei dem, or (bey dem,)	beim, or (beym) Vater, by the father.
Durchs,	.. durch das,	.. durchs Feuer, through the fire.
Fürs,	.. für das,	.. fürs Geld, for money.
Im,	.. in dem,	.. im Himmel, in heaven.
Ins,	.. in das,	.. ins Wasser, in the water.
Vom,	.. von dem,	.. vom Uebel, from evil.
Vors,	.. vor das,	.. vors Fenster, before the window
Vorm,	.. vor dem,	.. vorm Thor, before the door.

Ueberm,	for über dem,	as übern Feuer, upon the fire.
Uebers,	.. über das,	.. übers Meer, by sea.
Unterm,	.. unter dem,	.. unterm Kopfe, under the head.
Zum,	.. zu dem,	.. zum Könige, to the king.
Zur,	.. zu der,	.. zur Ehre, for the honor.

CHAP. IX.

CONJUNCTIONS, Bindewörter.

Observe. Some conjunctions regulate the place of the verb.

1st. The following conjunctions join words and sentences, without changing the position of the verb.

Und, and.

- Die vier Elemente sind Feuer, Luft, Erde und Wasser, the four elements are fire, air, earth and water.
- Wir gehen und reden mit einander, we walk and talk together.

Auch, also, too.

- Wir sind froh und sie auch, we are glad and they also.
- Ich glaube es auch, I think so too.
- Haben Sie auch gehört? have you heard also?

Aber, allein, sondern,* but.

- Wir sind betrübt, aber der Herr tröstet uns, we are afflicted, but the Lord comforts us.

* Sondern by itself is an opposite negative, or disjunctive. But sondern auch is positive.

Aber, allein, ſondern, but.	Wir fragen allein (aber) niemand antwortet, we ask, but nobody answers.
	Wir hören nichts Gutes aber auch nichts Böſes, we hear no good, but nothing bad.
	Ich habe es nicht nur geſehen, ſondern auch gehört, I have not only seen it, but heard it also.
Doch, jedoch, noch, yet, however.	Sie ſind noch zu jung, they are yet too young.
	Er bleibet doch (jedoch) mein Freund, he remains yet, (however,) my friend.
Denn, dann, for, because.	Sie wiſſen es denn (dann) ich ſagte es ihnen, they know it, for, or because I told (it to) them.
Entweder, either; oder, or.	Entweder ſie ſind falſche Freunde, oder offenbare Feinde, either they are false friends, or open enemies.
Weder, neither, noch, nor.	Sie ſind weder hungrig noch durſtig, they are neither hungry nor thirsty.
Zwar, however, indeed.	Sie haben es zwar, aber nicht mit Recht, they have it indeed, but not with justice.

2nd. The following conjunctions, when taken relatively; throw the verb to the end of the sentence; but their use will be best understood by examples, as they are not always used as relatives.

*Als, as, when, than, like, but.	Da, when.
Bevor, before.	Da, indem, as, since, whilst.
Bis, till.	Daß, that.

* Als has sometimes a comparative signification.

Auf daß, damit, in order that.
Demnach, ſintemal, whereas.
Ehe, before.
Im fall, in case.
In ſo fern, in so much, if.
Nachdem, after, after that.
Weil, dieweil, because, though
Wenn, wann, when, whenever
Ob, whether.
Als ob, as if.

Wenn, wann, if.
Wo, ſo, if.
Wofern, ſo fern, dafern, if.
Wo nicht, if not.
Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
Wiewohl, } though,
Obwohl, } though,
Obgleich, } although.
Obſchon, } although.
Wenngleich, } though, although.

3. The following conjunctions throw the verb to the end of the sentence, if used relatively; but otherwise the verb is put before the nominative.

Darum, therefore.
Daher, hence.
Deshalben, } therefore,
Deswegen, } for which
Um deswillen, } reason.

Warum, wherefore, why.
Woher, whence.
Weshalben, } wherefore,
Weswegen, } for which
Um deswillen, } reason.

4th. The following conjunctions require others after them, the latter of which throw the nominative behind the verbs.

1st.	2nd.
Entweder, either.	*requires* oder, or.
Weder, neither.	..... noch, nor.
Weil, because.	..... ſo.
Da, when.	..... ſo.
Je, the.	..... deſto, the.
Je, the.	..... je, the.
So wohl, as well. }	..... als, as.
So bald, as soon. }	
Zwar, indeed.	Aber, allein, but.
	Doch, dennoch, or jedoch however, yet.
	Gleichwohl, although, yet, for all that, notwithstanding.
	Hingegen, on the contrary.
	Nichts deſto weniger, nevertheless.

1st.		2nd.
Wenn, if.		*requires* * ſo.
Wie, gleichwie, as.		..... ſo.
Alſo, as.		..... ſo.
So, so.		..... ſo.
Nicht, not.		..... ſondern, but.
Nicht allein,	not only.	..... ſondern, but.
Nicht nur,	not only.	..... ſondern auch, but also.
Obgleich,	although.	..... So, so.
Obſchon,	although.	..... So doch, dennoch, however, nevertheless.
Obwohl,	although.	
Wenn ſchon,	although.	
Wenn auch,	although.	..... So, nichts deſto weniger, nevertheless,
Wiewohl,	although.	

As the application of conjunctions may be better learned by examples than by rules; the following sentences are subjoined to exemplify their use.

Als wir zu Abend gegeſſen hatten, ſo gingen wir ſpatzieren.	When we had supped we took a walk, or, having supped &c.
So roth als eine Roſe.	As red as a rose.
Er iſt reicher als ich.	He is richer than I.
Er handelt als ein rechtſchaffener Mann.	He acts like an honest man.
Als er den Aufruhr in der Stadt bemerkte.	When he perceived the tumult in the city.
Er iſt zwar mein Feind nicht, aber doch nicht mein Freund.	He is not my enemy indeed, but yet he is not my friend.
Als ich in London ankam.	When I arrived in London.

* Observe, the word ſo is sometimes a conjunction, sometimes an adverb, and sometimes it is used as a relative pronoun. Example 1st. As a conjunction, ſowohl als, as well as, ſo bald als, as soon as. 2nd. As an adverb, Es iſt ſo, wie ich geſagt habe, it is so, as I said; Wie ſo, how so. 3rd. As a relative pronoun, Das Buch, ſo (welches) ich gekauft habe, the book *which* I have bought.

Bis die Sonne die erstarrten Felder auflöſen wird.	Till the sun shall loosen the congealed fields.
Da der König in London ankam.	When the king arrived in London.
Vom Morgen bis zum Abend.	From morning till evening.
Da ich den Mann, welcher ſo edel gedacht, ehre und liebe, or, Da ich den Mann ehre und liebe, welcher, ſo edel gedacht.	Since I honor and love the man, who thought so nobly.
Wenn er das Buch leſen will.	If he will read that book.
Das iſt der Grund, daher weiß ich es.	That is the ground, thence, or for that reason, I know it.
Woher wiſſen ſie es?	Whence do they know it?
Er wußte es nicht, darum habe ich es ihm geſagt.	He did not know it, therefore I have told (*it*) him.
Bevor ich den Wald erreicht hatte.	Before I had reached the wood.
Als ich dieſen Morgen an dem Fenſter ſtand, da ſah ich die Soldaten in die Stadt kommen.	When, *or* as I stood at the window this morning, *or* standing at the window this morning, I saw the soldiers coming into town.
Indem, or weil ich an dem Fenſter ſtand, ſah ich &c.	Whilst I was standing at the window, I saw, &c.
Wie ich an dem Fenſter ſtand, &c.	As I happened to stand, *or* as I stood at the window, &c.
Da ich an dem Fenſter ſtand, &c.	When, *or* since I stood at the window, &c.
Wiewohl er noch ſehr übel daran iſt, ſo iſt doch noch Hoffnung vorhanden, daß er wieder aufkommen werde, or wird.	Although he is still very ill, yet there is room to hope that he will recover.

Ich vermache dir nicht allein mein Haus, sondern auch Habe und Gut.

I leave to thee not only my house, but also my goods and chattels.

Ich erwartete Ihre Ankunft nicht, und desto größer ist meine Freude.

I did not expect your arrival, and the greater is my joy.

Je ruhiger das Leben ist, desto geschickter ist es zum Nachdenken.

The more quiet life is, the more fit it is for reflection.

Entweder bist du toll, oder du wirst es werden.

Either thou art mad, or thou wilt become so.

Er scheuet weder Gott noch Menschen, weder Tod noch Leben.

He fears neither God nor man, neither death nor life.

Ob ihr gleich gelehrt seyd, so ist gleichwohl noch viel, das ihr nicht wisset.

Although you are learned, yet there is still much that you do not know.

Ob wir gleich reich sind, so können wir doch nicht allen Leuten helfen.

Although we are rich, yet we cannot help every body.

Ob ich wohl gerne helfen wollte, nichts desto weniger ist es mir wegen meiner Armuth unmöglich.

Although I would very willingly help, it is nevertheless impossible, on account of my poverty.

Indem ich davon sprach.

Whilst I was speaking of it.

Ob er gleich mein Vetter ist, so kömmt er doch nicht zu mir.

Although he is my cousin, yet he does not come to (*see*) me.

Er hat es entweder gethan, oder wird es noch thun.

Either he has done it, or he will do it yet.

Sie hat mir unrecht gethan, dennoch will ich ihr vergeben.

She has done me wrong, yet I will forgive her.

Mein Rath war zu seinem Besten, dennoch befolgte er ihn nicht.

My advice was for his good, yet he did not follow it.

So lange er sich in den Schranken der Bescheidenheit hielt, war ich sein aufrichtigster Freund.	Whilst he kept himself within the bounds of modesty, I was his most sincere friend.
Ob er gleich alt ist, so hat er doch den völligen Gebrauch seiner Geisteskräfte.	Although he is old, he still has the perfect use of his mental faculties.
Ein Kind muß nicht nur den Vater, sondern auch die Mutter ehren.	A child must not only honor his father, but also his mother.
So bald als es vier geschlagen hat.	As soon as it has struck four.
Nachdem wir Alles wohl untersucht hatten.	After having well examined every thing.
Ehe die Glocke ausgeschlagen hat.	Before the clock has done striking.
Je mehr ich trinke, je mehr habe ich Durst.	The more I drink, the more thirsty I am.

CHAP. X.

Of Interjections.

"When the mind is overpowered by passion, or violence of feeling, unconnected words and broken sentences are uttered: but every such word or sentence is an interjection, and has its meaning by completing the sentence, with those words which are unexpressed."*

The following is a list of some of the interjections used in German:

* The above definition of an interjection was copied from Mr. Booth's scientific "*Introduction to an Analytical Dictionary of the English Language.*"

Ach! ah! Ah! ah!
Leider! alas!
Oh! oh!
Weh! Wehe! woe!
Ei! hui! heigh!
Wohlan! well then!
Hilf Gott! God help!
Hilf Himmel! heaven help!
Halt! halt! or stop!
Willkommen! welcome!
Siehe! lo! behold!
Siehe da! behold here!
Pfui! fie!
Lieber! ei lieber! pray!
Behüte Gott! God forbid!
Holla! he! holla!
St! ſtill! hush! hist!
Halt den Dieb! stop thief!

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLES.

CHAP. I.

Rules illustrated by Examples for the Construction of the Articles, with Exercises under each Rule, to be translated into German.

RULE I.

The articles ein, and der, are generally used in German as *a* and *the* in English, but in German they must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case; as,

Ein Vater, a father.	Der Vater, the father.
Eine Mutter, a mother.	Die Mutter, the mother.
Ein Buch, a book.	Das Buch, the book.

Observe. The above rule applies when there is an adjective joined to the substantive; as,

Ein guter Knabe, a good boy.	Der gute Knabe, the good boy.
Eine große Stadt, a great city.	Die große Stadt, the great city.
Ein ganzes Land, a whole country.	Das ganze Land, the whole country.

So likewise in the following expressions.

Ein halber Bogen, half a sheet.	Die beiden Länder, both the countries.
Eine halbe Stunde, half an hour.	Das ganze Jahr, all the year.
Ein halbes Jahr, half a year.	Der halbe Tag, half the day. &c.

Observe. In compounds the article always agrees with the gender of the last word; as, der Liebesbrief, the love-letter; die Wetterfahne, the weathercock; das Stadthaus, the town house.

Examples for Practice.

Der Bruder der Frau iſt auf dem Lande.	The brother of the woman is in the country.
Ein gutes Kind verdient unſer Lob.	A good child deserves our praise.
Hier iſt das Pferd des Vaters.	Here is the father's horse.
Dies iſt die Schrift eines Gelehrten.	This is the writing of a scholar.
Der Hund iſt das Sinnbild der Treue.	A dog is the emblem of fidelity.
Ich kenne die Frau, aber ich kenne nicht den Mann.	I know the wife, but I do not know the husband.
Ich habe den Brief dem Diener gegeben.	I have given the letter to the servant.
Haben Sie es nicht dem Meiſter gezeigt?	Have you not shown it to the master?
Die Kinder der Reichen ſind zuweilen unwiſſender, als die Kinder der Armen.	The children of the rich are sometimes more ignorant than the children of the poor.
Man muß von den Abweſenden nie übel reden.	We must never speak ill of the absent.

Exercise to be translated into German.

Give me the book. Bring me a knife. Here is a pen. There is an apple. Lend him the pen-knife. Have you a

mother? He has the ink. She has a brother. I see the friends. Write an answer. A game is lost. A true friend is a treasure of inestimable value. The virtue of a Christian. The creator of the world is the God of the Christians. Observe the rules of the school and the eye of the master.

Give me, geben Sie mir.	value, Werthe, *m.*
bring me, bringen Sie mir.	virtue, Tugend, *f.*
lend him, leihen Sie ihm.	christian, Chriſt, *m. gen.*
ink, Dinte, *f.*	creator, Schöpfer, *m.*
write, ſchreiben Sie.	world, Welt, *f. gen.*
answer, Antwort, *f. acc.*	God, Gott, *m.*
game, Spiel, *n.*	observe, beobachte.
is lost, iſt verloren.	rule, Regel, *f.*
true, treuer.	school, Schule, *f. gen.*
treasure, Schatz, *m.* von, of.	eye, Auge, *n. acc.*
inestimable, unſchätzbaren.	master, Lehrer, *m. gen.*

RULE II.

The article der is used in German, though not in English, before most nouns in a universal sense, and before all nouns in the oblique cases; as,

Examples.

Das Leben, life.	Die Menſchen, men, or mankind.
Das Alter, age.	
Das Kind des Bruders, the brother's child.	Brutus tödtete den Cäſar, Brutus killed Cæsar.
Der Tod, death.	

Also before most adjectives taken substantively, and before the names of seasons; as,

Das Gut, good.	Ein Gelehrter, a learned man.
Der Weiſe, the wise.	Der Gelehrte, *the* learned.
Der Frühling, spring.	Der Sommer, summer.

But before the proper names of places the article is mostly omitted, particularly in the nominative; as, London, Petersburg, Europa, England, &c. except,

Die Türkei, Turkey.	Die Schweiz, Switzerland.
Die Lombardie, Lombardy.	Die Elsaß, Elsace.
Die Niederlande, the Netherlands.	Die Levante, the Levant.
Der Haag, the Hague.	Die Pfalz, the Palatinate.

Also the Germans say, die Stadt London, the city of London; das Königreich Frankreich, the kingdom of France, &c.

The proper names of persons take no article in the nominative, nor when they have a change of termination in the oblique cases; as, Ciceros Reden, *Cicero's orations*; Brutus tödete den Cäsar, *Brutus killed Cæsar*. But the Germans say der Plato seines Zeitalters, *the Plato of his age*, &c.

Examples to the preceding Rules.

Die Vernunft ist das edelste Geschenk der Natur,	Reason is the noblest gift of nature.
Die Vorsicht ist die Mutter der Sicherheit,	Caution is the mother of security.
Lieben Sie die Tugend,	Love virtue.
Hassen Sie das Laster,	Hate vice.
Der Frühling ist die schönste Jahreszeit,	Spring is the finest season.
Was denken Sie von dem Sommer?	What do you think of summer?
Nero war ein großer Tyrann,	Nero was a great tyrant.
Flora war die Göttin der Blumen,	Flora was the goddess of flowers.
Der weise Seneka,	The wise Seneca.
Gott hat alle Dinge gemacht, oder erschaffen,	God has made, or created all things.
Der Gott des Krieges,	The god of war.
Ich mag gern den Geruch der Nelke und der Rose.	I like the odour of the pink and rose.

Practice.

Death itself is not so dreadful.
Health, anger and intemperance, are inconsistent with each other.
Man is rational, Man is mortal.
He has a house in town.
Neptune was the god of the seas.
I have seen the father, mother, son and daughter.
I am going to London.
I come from Holland.
Cicero was an excellent orator.
Alexander was a great conqueror.
The temple of Solomon was magnificent.

Death, Tod, *m.*
itself, ſelbſt.
so, ſo.
dreadful, fürchterlich.
health, Geſundheit, *f.*
anger, Zorn, *m.*
intemperance, Unmäßigkeit.
are inconsistent with each other, können nicht mit einander beſtehen.
man, Menſch, *m.*
rational, vernünftig.
mortal, ſterblich.
town, Stadt, *f.*
Neptune, Neptun.
was, war.
god, Gott, *m.*
seas, Meere, *n.*
daughter, Tochter, *f. acc.*
seen, geſehen.
am going, gehe.
to, nach.
come, komme.
from, von.
Cicero, Cicero.
an, ein.
excellent, vortrefflicher.
orator, Redner.
great, großer.
conqueror, Eroberer, *m.*
temple, Tempel, *m.*
Solomon, Salomo.
magnificent, prächtig.

RULE III.

The article is repeated before nouns of different genders; as, der Vater, die Mutter und das Kind, *the father, mother* and *child*; but nouns of the same gender, or number, require it only before the first; as, der Rock und Hut, *the coat and hat.*

Examples.

Ein Mann und eine Frau waren hier.

A man and woman were here.

Der Bruder und die Schweſter ſind gegangen,	The brother and sister are gone.
Das Haus und die Wieſe,	The house and meadow.
Ich habe den Vater, die Mutter, den Sohn und die Tochter geſehen,	I have seen the father, mother, son and daughter.
Ich habe das Buch, die Feder und den Bleiſtift, auf dem Tiſche gelaſſen,	I have left the book, pen, and pencil upon the table.
Der Vater und Sohn ſind nach Paris gegangen,	The father and son are gone to Paris.
Die Mutter und Tochter ſind auf dem Lande,	The mother and daughter are in the country.
Ein Freund und Feind.	A friend and enemy.

Practice.

The man, woman and child are gone out.
The hare and pigeon are good to eat.
The father, mother, son and daughter are in the country.
The sheep, cow and dog are gone.
The leopard and tiger are rapacious animals.
I have left the book and ruler upon the table.
Have you a father and mother?
Give me the pen and penknife.

Man, Mann, *m.*	dog, Hund, *m.*
woman, Frau, *f.*	leopard, Leopart, *m.*
child, Kind, *n.*	tiger, Tieger, *m.*
are gone out, ſind ausgegangen.	ruler, Lineal, *n. acc.*
hare, Haſe, *m.*	upon the table, auf dem Tiſche.
pigeon, Taube, *f.*	left, gelaſſen.
are in the country, ſind auf dem Lande.	have you? haben Sie?
sheep, Schaf, *n.*	pen, Feder, *f.*
cow, Kuh, *f.*	penknife, Federmeſſer. *n.*

RULE IV.

The article is omitted, whenever the substantive expres-

ses the part of a thing, which in English is generally denoted by the word *some*, answering to the French *du, de la, de l', des;* as, *Apportez-moi du vin*, Bringen Sie mir Wein.

Examples.

Bringen Sie mir Brot,	Bring me some bread.
Geben Sie mir Bier,	Give me some beer.
Haben Sie Papier, Dinte, ꝛc?	Have you some paper, ink, &c?

Practice.

Eat bread, and drink water.
Have you eaten bread, and drank water?
Bring me some wine and water.
Have you brought some beer?
I have bought some silk to-day.
Give me some paper, ink and pens.

Eat, Eſſen Sie.	beer, Bier.
bread, Brot.	brought, gebracht.
have you? haben Sie?	I have, ich habe.
drink, trinken Sie.	silk, Seide.
water, Waſſer.	to-day, Heute.
wine, Wein.	bought, gekauft.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Articles, to be translated into English.

FIRST LESSON.

Der *Menſch iſt nun einmal ſterblich.
Der Herr vom Hauſe iſt ausgegangen.
Ich habe den Brief dem Diener gegeben.
Die Muſik iſt etwas angenehmes.
Ich habe das Buch, die Feder, den Bleiſtift und den Zirkel auf dem Tiſche gelaſſen.

* As most of the words in these exercises have been given before, it is presumed that the scholar has previously made himself acquainted with them.

Der Geitz ist doch ein häßliches Laster.

Da ist der Hut des jungen Mannes, welcher eben ausgegangen ist.

Die Kinder der Reichen sind zuweilen unwissender, als die Kinder der Armen.

Mein Vater hat ein Haus in der Stadt und einen Garten auf dem Lande.

Die Stadt Paris. Die Insel Korsika. Der Monath Julius. Das Königreich Schweden.

Der Mensch ist für das gesellige Leben, und nicht für die Einsamkeit gebohren.

Sie loben die Werke der Barmherzigkeit.

SECOND LESSON.

Rhea war die Gemahlin des Saturnus und die Mutter des Jupiter, Neptun und Pluto.

Diana war die Göttin der Weisheit und der Künste.

Mercur war der Bothe der Götter und der Gott der Beredsamkeit, der Kaufleute und Diebe.

Venus war die Göttin der Liebe.

Gott der Vater aller Menschen.

Gesundheit, Zorn und Unmäßigkeit können nicht neben einander bestehen.

Geben Sie mir ein Glas Wein.

Johann! holen Sie mir ein Pfund Thee und ein halb Pfund Kaffee.

Das Brot dienet in den meisten Ländern zur Nahrung der Menschen.

Sie essen nie mehr als dreimal des Tages.

Sie gehen zweimal in der Woche in die Kirche.

Sie verstanden nicht das Bauen der Häuser oder Schiffe, das Säen des Korns, das Hauen der Bäume, das Mähen des Grases, das Graben der Metalle, des Goldes, Silbers, Kupfers, u. s. f.

THIRD LESSON.

Die Gramatik lehrt uns die Kunst richtig zu schreiben und zu reden.

Die Geschichte macht uns die guten und schlechten Handlungen der Menschen bekannt.

Die Naturgeschichte lehrt uns die Producte der Natur kennen.

Die Schäfer nehmen den Schaafen die Wolle.

Die Löwen und Tieger wohnen in großen Wusteneien.

Der Krieg und die Pest sind die zwei grausamsten Geiseln des Himmels.

Fliehen Sie die Schmeichler und lieben Sie die aufrichtigen Freunde.

Geben Sie den Armen Allmosen.

Die Crocodille fressen den Menschen.

Die Hunde fürchten die Crocodille.

Die Ichneumone tödten die Crocodille.

Die Zärtlichkeit der Thiere gegen ihre Jungen ist oft größer als die Zärtlichkeit der Mutter gegen ihre Kinder.

Ein guter Vater sorgt für seine Kinder.

Eine gute Mutter erzieht ihre Kinder mit der größten Sorgfalt.

CHAP. II.

Rules for the Construction of Nouns.

RULE I.

When two nouns, denoting different persons, or things, come together, the latter is put in the genitive case.*

* The genitive case is often denoted by *of* in English.

Examples.

Das Haus meines Freundes,	The house of my friend, or my friend's house.
Die Freude des Lebens,	The joy of life.
Der Vater des Lehrers,	The master's father.
Mars war der Gott des Krieges.	Mars was the god of war.
Die Gunst des Königs,	The favor of the king.
Das Glück des Friedens,	The blessing of peace.

Practice.

The proprietor of the garden.
The depth of the sea.
Neptune was the god of the seas.
Vulcan was the god of fire.
The goddess of fortune.
The master of the house.

Proprietor, Eigenthümer, *m.*	fire, Feuer, *n.*
garden, Garten, *m.*	goddess, Göttin, *f.*
depth, Tiefe, *f.*	fortune, Glück, *n.*
sea, Meer, *n.*	master, Herr, *m.*
Neptune, Neptun.	house, Haus, *n.*
Vulcan, Vulkan.	

RULE II.

When two or more nouns express the same person or thing, they are put in the same case.

Examples.

König Carl,	King Charles.
Der Kaiser Alexander,	The Emperor Alexander.
Der Kaiser unser Freund und Vater	The emperor our friend and father.
Georg König von England,	George king of England.
Paulus der Apostel.	Paul the Apostle.

Practice.

King George.	John the Evangelist.
The emperor Joseph.	God the Father.
The king our friend and father.	We love the king, our friend and father.
Nero the tyrant.	

Joseph, Joſeph.	John, Johannes.
our, unſer, *(nom.)*	we love, wir lieben.
friend, Freund.	king, König. *(acc.)*
tyrant, Tyrann.	our, unſern, *(acc.)*

Observations on the Nouns.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the genitive is put first, but then the subsequent word has no article before it.

Examples.

The king's favor,	Des Königs Gunſt.
The father's blessing,	Des Vaters Segen.

Practice.

The father's sister.	The queen's brother.
The king's son.	The man's knife.
The wife's brother.	The child's parents.
The emperor's speech.	The boy's mother.

Father, Vater, *m.*	man, Mann, *m.*
king, König, *m.*	knife, Meſſer, *n.*
wife, Frau, *f.*	child, Kind, *n.*
emperor, Kaiſer, *m.*	parents, Aeltern, *pl.*
speech, Rede, *f.*	boy, Knabe, *m.*
queen, Königin, *f.*	

Obs. 2. When several nouns come together, the last in English and the first in German are put in the genitive.

Examples.

In king Henry's reign.	Unter des Königs Heinrich Regierung.
The prince of Wales' steward.	Des Prinzen von Wallis Hausverwalter.
The king of Denmark's lands or countries.	Des Königs von Dänemark Länder.

Practice.

The elector of Bavaria's Court.
The emperor of Russia's dominions.
The king of England's Steward.
In queen Elizabeth's reign.
The king of Spain's subjects.

Elector, Churfürſt, *m.*	of England, von England.
of Bavaria, von Baiern.	steward, Haushofmeiſter, *m.*
court, Hofſtaat.	in queen, unter der Königin.
of Russia, von Rußland.	of Spain's subjects, von Spanien
dominion, Herrſchaft, *f.*	Unterthanen, *m.*

Obs. 3. Sometimes the genitive is expressed in German without any article; as,

Preußens König,	The king of Prussia.
Johannens und Eliſens Bücher,	John and Eliza's books.

Obs. 4. The preposition *to*, in English, is sometimes used instead of *of*, as the sign of the genitive.

Examples.

Ein Freund der Tugend,	A friend to virtue, *or of virtue*.
Er iſt ein Vater der Armen,	He is a father to the poor.
Sie iſt die Schweſter des Königs,	She is sister to the king.

Practice.

He is an enemy to vice.	Socrates was an enemy to vice.
They are slaves to their passions.	He is a secretary to the duke.
He was a friend to the family.	They are enemies to God, and slaves to Satan.

Enemy, Feind, *m.*	family, Familie, *f.*
vice, Laſter, *n.*	was, war.
slave, Sklave, *m.*	secretary, Secretair, *m.*
their passions, ihrer Leidenſchaften, *f.*	duke, Herzog, *m.*
	satan, Satan, *m.*

Obs. 5. After nouns of number, weight, measure, or parts, and before the names of months, islands, kingdoms, or cities, where *of* is expressed in English, the Germans use the nomina-

tive case; but if the latter noun have an adjective before it, then the last noun is put in the genitive. Vide rule 2, p. 261. Syntax of adjectives.

Examples.

Zehn Ellen Tuch,	Ten ells of cloth.
Ein Pfund Butter,	A pound of butter.
Ein Glas Bier,	A glass of beer.
Eine Elle Tuch,	An ell of cloth.
Ein Biſſen Brot,	A bit of bread.
Der Monat Mai,	The month of May.
Die Inſel Malta,	The isle of Malta.
Das Königreich Preußen,	The kingdom of Prussia.
Die Stadt Paris,	The city of Paris.

Practice.

Two casks of wine.	The month of April.
A hundred weight of lead.	The isle of Man.
A couple of pigeons.	The kingdom of France.
A glass of beer.	The city of London.
Give me a drop of water.	A flock of sheep.

Casks, Fäſſer.	water, Waſſer, *n.*
wine, Wein,	month, Monat, *m.*
hundred weight, Centner, *m.*	April, April.
lead, Blei, *n.*	Man, Man.
couple, Paar, *n.*	kingdom, Königreich.
glass, Glas, *n.*	France, Frankreich.
beer, Bier.	flock, Heerde, *f.*
give me, geben Sie mir.	sheep, Schaf, *n.*
drop, Tropfen, *m.*	

But the genitive is expressed when the words that follow the nouns of number, weight, measure, &c. have a pronoun or an adjective joined with them; as,

Zehn Ellen dieſes Tuches,	Ten ells of this cloth.
Zwei Fäſſer jenes Weines,	Two casks of that wine.
Ein Regiment guter Soldaten,	A regiment of good soldiers, &c.

RULE III.

In answer to the questions wann? *when?* wie oft? *how often?* the days or years are put in the genitive, when another noun is expressed or understood.

Examples.

When did it happen?	On Sunday, Monday, &c.
Wann iſt das geſchehen?	Sonntags, Montags, ꝛc.
How often did the doctor come?	Twice a day.
Wie oft kam der Doctor?	Zweimal des Tages.

Observe. In some of the above examples, and in the following practice *day* or *time* is understood.

Practice.

When does he come? Early on Thursday. In the morning. In the afternoon. In the evening. At night. At midnight. How often does he come? Three times a year. Four times a day.

Does he come? kommt er?	at night, des Nachts.
hursday, Donnerſtag, *m.*	midnight, Mitternacht, *f.*
n the morning, des Morgens.	year, Jahr, *n.*
fternoon, Nachmittags, *m.*	four times, viermal.
vening, Abend, *m.*	day, Tag, *m.*

Observe. In speaking of weeks the Germans say, dreimal ..... Woche, three times a week, *not* dreimal der Woche. But they say also, dreimal die Woche, or die Woche dreimal.

RULE IV.

The genitive case is frequently supplied by the preposition von, which always governs the dative; except the genitive in one or two instances, as in the phrase: von Alters her, *of old.*

1. Before names of countries, and when a particular quality, condition, proportion, or quantity, is assigned to any thing; also when the article is omitted.

Examples.

Der König von Preußen,	The king of Prussia.
Die Gränzen von Frankreich,	The boundaries of France.
Ein Mann von großen Gaben,	A man of great gifts.
Ein Herr von hohem Adel,	A gentleman of high nobility.
Eine Reiſe von zehn Meilen,	A journey of ten miles.
Ein Schiff von zwei hundert Tonnen,	A ship of two hundred tons.
Der Schein von Redlichkeit,	The appearance of honesty.

Practice.

The northern part of England.	A man of ancient origin.
The emperor of Russia.	A sum of twenty pounds.
A woman of great sense.	A man of eighty years.

Northern part, nördliche Theil, *m.*	ancient, alter.
	origin, Herkunft, *f.*
emperor, Kaiſer, *m.*	sum, Summe, *f.*
of great sense, von großem Verſtand.	pounds, Pfunden.
	years, Jahren.

2. If no adjective be joined with the substantive, or when the matter is expressed of which things are made, the dative with von is used.

Examples.

Ein Mann von Gaben,	A man of gifts.

Eine Uhr von Gold, the same as, eine goldene Uhr, a gold watch.

Practice.

A woman of sense.	A gold cup.
A man of talent.	An ivory box.
A silver watch.	A gold ring.

Talent, Talent, *n.*
watch, Uhr, *f.*
silver, Silber.
cup, Becher, *m.*
box, Doſe, *f.*
ivory, Elfenbein, *n.*
ring, Ring, *m.*

Obs. 1. Von is used before the indefinite article, to denote character; as, ein Ausbund von einem ehrlichen Manne, a pattern of an honest man; ein Muſter von einem guten Sohne, a model of a good son, &c.

2. Sometimes it is indifferent, whether von be made use of, or the genitive; as, ein Mann von großen Gaben, (or großer Gaben,) a man of great gifts; eine Frau von großem Verſtand, (or großen Verſtandes,) a woman of great sense.

RULE V.

In answer to the questions, wann? or wenn? *when?* wie lang? *how long?* wie groß? *how large?* wie weit? *how wide?* wie breit? *how broad?* wie hoch? *how high?* the noun must be put in the accusative, unless another noun is understood. (Vide Rule III.)

Examples.

When will he come?	On the Saturday following.
Wann wird er kommen?	Den folgenden Sonnabend.
How long was he writing?	The whole day.
Wie lang ſchrieb er?	Den ganzen Tag.

Practice.

When did he come?	The other day. To-day.
When do they set out?	The first of February.
When will he come?	This morning. This evening.
How long has he been here?	A day. A month. A week.
How long has it rained?	The whole day.
How broad and thick is this plank?	A foot broad and an inch thick.

When did he come? wann kam er?	this plank, dieſes Brett.
has he been here? iſt er hier geweſen?	foot, Fuß, *m.*
	inch, Zoll, *m.*

Observations respecting the Cases.

1. The nominative answers to the question *who?* or *what?* the genitive to the question *whose? of whom?* or *of what?* the dative to the question *to,* or *for whom? to,* or *for what?* the accusative to the question *whom? what?* or *whither?*

Examples.

Der Schneider machte meines Bruders Sohn einen Rock, the tailor made my brother's son a coat.

Explanation.

Who made the coat?	*Nom.* the tailor, der Schneider.
What did he do?	he made, er macht.
What did he make?	*Acc.* a coat, einen Rock.
For whom?	*Dat. (for)* the son, dem Sohn.
Whose son?	*Gen.* my brother's, meines Bruders.

Die Hand des Herrn giebt den Menschen gute Gaben, the hand of the Lord gives to man good gifts.

Who or what gives?	*Nom.* the hand, die Hand.
Whose hand?	*Gen.* the Lord's, des Herren.
What does it do?	it gives, sie giebt.
What does it give?	*Acc.* good gifts, gute Gaben.
To whom?	*Dat.* to men, den Menschen.

2. When *of* signifies von, and *to,* zu, they govern the dative. Ex. *of whom?* must be expressed von wem? *of what?* von was? *to whom?* zu wem? *to what?* zu was?

Of whom do you talk? von wem reden Sie?
Of what do you talk? von was reden Sie?
To whom do you go? zu wem gehen Sie?
To what house do you go? zu was für einem Haus gehen Sie?

All prepositions govern their proper cases. Vide the list, and syntax of prepositions.

CHAP. III.

Of Adjectives, Beiwörter.

RULE I.

Adjectives must agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number and case, unless they are used adverbially, then they remain unchangeable, or indeclinable; as,

Declinable.	*Indeclinable.*
1. A good man.	1. The man is good.
Ein guter Mann.	Der Mann iſt gut.
2. A good woman.	2. The woman is good.
Eine gute Frau.	Die Frau iſt gut.
3. A good child.	3. The child is good.
Ein gutes Kind.	Das Kind iſt gut.
4. Good men.	4. The men are good.
Gute Männer.	Die Männer ſind gut.

Observe. Adjectives are generally placed before nouns, unless joined to a proper name, as a title of distinction: Ex. Alexander der Große, Alexander the great; Ludwig der vierzehnte, Louis the fourteenth.

Examples.

Ein gutes Wort findet eine gute Stelle,	A good word finds a good place.
Ein weiſer Mann hat mir den Rath gegeben, daß ich mich niemals einem gottloſen Menſchen anvertrauen ſolle,	A wise man has advised me never to trust a wicked man.
Ich ſehe in dieſem Briefe die Schrift einer ſchönen Hand,	I see in this letter a fine hand writing, (*the writing of a fine hand.*)
Gott iſt gnädig und barmherzig, die Menſchen aber ſind gottlos und ungerecht.	God is gracious and merciful, but men are wicked and unjust.

Observe. The adjective, as well as the article, is repeated before nouns of different genders, or numbers; but nouns of the same gender, or number, require it only before the first; as, ein junger Mann und eine junge Frau, a young man and woman; eine gute Mutter und Tochter, a good mother and daughter. Gute Väter, Mütter und Kinder, good fathers, mothers, and children.

Practice.

Frederick the Secoud was a great man.
Rich people are mortal as well as the poor.
Strong wine is wholesome for a weak stomach.
Obedient children have the love and confidence of good men.
Good men, women, and children.
High mountains are not so fertile as low.
Bring us good wine and water.
I know honest people.
She made herself ridiculous.
The fortune of Alexander the Great.
The courage of Henry the Fourth.
A wise government is a great happiness.

Frederick the Second, Friedrich der Zweite.	the confidence, das Zutrauen.
was, war.	mountain, Berg, *m.*
mortal, sterblich.	are not so, sind nicht so.
as well as, wie.	as, als.
wholesome, gesund.	bring us, bringet uns.
for, für.	I know honest, ich kenne ehrlich.
weak, schwach.	she made herself, sie machte sich.
stomach, Magen, (*acc.*)	ridiculous, verächtlich.
obedient, gehorsam.	fortune, Glück, *n.*
the love, die Liebe.	courage; Muth, *m.*
	government, Regierung, *f.*

RULE II.

When there are two substantives, in the same sentence, with an adjective before the last, the adjective and latter noun are put in the genitive. (*Vide Obs.* 5, Rule II. *p.* 254, *of Nouns.*)

Examples.

Ein Tropfen friſchen Waſſers,	A drop of fresh water.
Eine Frau großen Verſtands,	A woman of great understanding.
Ein Mann großer Gaben,	A man of great gifts.
Bringen Sie mir ein kleines Glas.	Bring me a small glass.

Practice.

A draught of *fresh* water.	A piece of *new* bread.
A glass of *fine* beer.	A yard of *broad* ribbon.
A drop of *good* water.	A pair of *new* shoes.
A dish of *salt* meat.	A dish of *roast* meat.

draught, Trunk, *m.*	broad, breit.
new, friſch, *(when applied to bread.)*	salt, ſalzig.
fine, fein,	roast, gebraten
	dish, Schale.

RULE III.

Adjectives govern the genitive, when *of*, or *with* (and sometimes *to*) follows the corresponding adjectives in English; but in such instances, they are generally placed adverbially at the end of the sentence.

The following is a List of those Adjectives or Adverbs which are said to govern the Genitive.

Bedürftig, in want (*of*,) needy.	Gewahr, informed (*of*,) aware (*of*.)
Befliſſen, studious (*of*.)	Gewiß, certain (*of*.)
Benöthigt, in need (*of*.)	Gewohnt, accustomed (*to*.)
Bewußt, conscious (*of*.)	Gewachſen, able (*to*.)
Eingedenk, mindful (*of*.)	Gewärtig, ready (*to*.)
Fähig, capable (*of*.)	Kundig, skilled, or experienced in.
Froh; glad (*of*,) satisfied (*with*.)	

Los, free from, slack, rid (*of.*)
Mächtig, in possession (*of.*)
Müde, tired (*of.*)
Quitt, clear (*of,*) rid (*of.*)
Satt, tired (*of,*) satisfied (*with.*)
Schuldig, guilty (*of.*)
Theilhaftig, partaking (*of.*)
Ueberdrüßig, wearied (*with,*) weary (*of.*)
Unfähig, incapable (*of.*)
Unwürdig, unworthy (*of.*)
Verdächtig, suspicious (*of.*)
Verluſtig, lost (*to.*)
Voll, full (*of.*) (*also with* von.)
Viel, much (*of.*)
Werth, worth, deserving (*of.*)
Würdig, worthy (*of.*)

Observe. Some of these words are used only with ſeyn. *(Vide some of the following examples)*

Examples.

Er iſt der Hülfe bedürftig,	He is in want of help.
Sich ſeiner Unſchuld bewußt ſeyn,	To be conscious of one's own innocence.
Er iſt meiner Freundſchaft würdig,	He is worthy of my friendship.
Sie ſind Männer der Freundſchaft würdig,	They are men worthy of friendship.
Sie ſind der väterlichen Lehren eingedenk,	They are mindful of the father's warning.
Sie iſt des Lebens ſatt und überdrüßig,	She is satiated with, and weary of life.
Er hat ein Haus voll Goldes und Silbers,	He has a house full of gold and silver.
Hat er viel Geldes und Gutes?	Has he much money and property?

Practice.

You are unworthy of reward.
I am weary of books.
He is in want of sleep.
They were suspicious of robbery or theft.
He is guilty of a great crime.

They are mindful of the thing.
She is unworthy of his friendship.

Reward, Belohnung.	sleep, Schlaf, *m.*
robbery, Diebſtahl, *m.*	they are, ſie ſind.

Observe. Voll, *full*, is sometimes used without a sign of the case; as, ein Glas voll Wein, a glass full *of* wine; also, voll, is often used with von; as, voll von Menſchen, full of men.

RULE IV.

Most * adjectives which have *to* or *for* after them in English, *expressed* or *understood*, require the dative in German.

Examples.

Das iſt dem Lande nützlich und vortheilhaft,	That is *useful* and *advantageous to* the country.
Die Sache iſt mir deutlich,	The thing is *clear to* me.
Ich bin meiner Mutter gehorſam,	I am *obedient to* my mother.
Er iſt ſeinem Vater ähnlich,	He is *like* or *resembles* (*to*) his father.
Das iſt Land und Leuten erſprießlich,	That is *profitable*, or *advantageous to* the country and people.
Es iſt ihm etwas leichtes,	It is easy *for* him.
Wein iſt vielen ſchädlich,	Wine is *pernicious to* many.
Mir iſt bange,	I am afraid.

Practice.

The prince is *kind to* him.
That is *injurious to* the people.
That is *hurtful* and *disadvantageous to* me.
The son is *like* (*to*) the father.

---

* When the German adjectives are placed at the end of the sentence they are indeclinable, being used adverbially.

The labor is *easy for* a man, but *difficult for* a child.
This burthen is *insupportable to* me.

Prince, Fürſt, *m.*	labor, Arbeit, *f.*
kind, gewogen.	easy, leicht.
injurious, ſchädlich.	but, aber.
people, Volk, *n.*	difficult, ſchwer.
hurtful, ſchädlich.	burthen, Laſt, *f.*
disadvantageous, nachtheilig.	insupportable, unerträglich.
son, Sohn, *m.*	

RULE V.

Those adjectives which denote measure, weight, age or value, require the accusative when the measures &c. are determined by a numerical word.

To these belong:

Dick, thick.	Alt, old.
Hoch, high.	Reich, rich.
Weit, far, wide.	Groß, great.
Breit, broad.	Schwer, heavy, weighty.
Lang, long.	Werth, worth.
Tief, deep.	Schuldig, indebted, owing.

Examples.

Fünf Fuß dick,	Five feet thick, or five feet in thickness.
Das Haus iſt ſechzig Fuß breit,	That house is sixty feet broad, or wide.
Sie iſt viel Geld ſchuldig,	She owes a great deal of money.
Zwanzig Thaler werth,	Twenty dollars worth.
London iſt zwölf Meilen von Kingſton,	London is twelve miles from Kingston.
Er iſt dreißig Jahr alt,	He is thirty years old.
Ich bin zehn Jahre da geweſen,	I have been there ten years.

Practice.

The tower is a hundred feet high.
That roof is fifty feet long.

He owes a great deal of money.
It is ten feet long, three feet wide, and two feet thick.
It is worth three dollars. I am not fifty years old.
The house is worth twenty thousand dollars.

Tower, Thurm, *m.*	great deal, ſehr viel.
roof, Dach, *n.*	dollar, Thaler, *m.*

Observe. When no numerical word is used with the above adjectives, they govern the dative of the person. Ex. Das iſt mir zu hoch, zu lang, zu tief, zu ſchwer, that is too high, too long, too deep, too heavy for me. Er iſt mir viel werth, he is of great value to me.

Observations on the Adjectives.

1. Adjectives are frequently used as substantives.

Examples.

Ein Weiſer iſt beſſer als ein Starker,	A *wise man* is better than a *strong man.*
Die Reichen und Armen.	The *rich* and *poor.*

2. Als or denn, *than*, follows comparatives.

Examples.

Er iſt viel größer als ihr Bruder,	He is much taller *than* your brother.
Er iſt ſtärker als, or denn Herkules,	He is stronger *than* Hercules.
Er iſt reicher als, or denn Crösus,	He is richer *than* Crœsus.

3. After the superlative, when the English use *of*, or *among*, the Germans use von, or unter, with the dative, but the genitive may be used if von, or unter be omitted.

Examples.

Er iſt der Beſte von, or unter den Brüdern, / Er iſt der Beſte der Brüder,	He is the best *of* the brothers.
Sie iſt die Schönſte unter ihnen,	She is the best *of*, or *among* them.

4. Before *best* and *least*, &c. the superlative is sometimes expressed by *am, with the dative.

Examples.

Ich liebe ihn am beſten,	I like him *the* best.
Ich achte dieſes am wenigſten,	I value this *the* least.
Ich liebe ſie am meiſten,	I like her *the* most.

5. Comparisons are sometimes made by je, *the*, followed by je, or deſto, *the*.

Examples.

Je mehr, je beſſer,	*The* more, *the* better.
Je älter er iſt, je (or deſto) weiſer er wird,	*The* older he is, *the* wiser he grows.

A comparison is also made by *so* (Englished by *as* and *so*) followed by als; as,

Er iſt ſo groß als Sie,	He is *as* tall *as* you.
Er iſt nicht ſo groß als Sie,	He is not *so* tall *as* you.

6. Fractional or broken numbers are always placed before whole numbers.

Examples.

Anderthalb Pfund,	*One* pound and a half.
Anderthalb Thaler,	*A* dollar and a half.
Drittehalb Gulden,	*Two* florins and a half.
Es iſt dreiviertel auf zwei,	It is *three quarters* past one.

Practice on the preceding Divisions.

1. The lame man is gone out.
   The weak man is subject to the strong.
   Do not disturb the sick man.
2. Italy is more pleasant than Germany.
   Denmark is more fruitful than Sweden.
   Are you not more happy than we?
3. He is the best of his brothers.
   She is the finest woman *of* the three.

* am is used for an dem.

4. Do you like him best? We shall receive the most.
You value them the least.

5. The sooner the better. The more haste the worse speed.
He is *as* serious *as* Cato. My book is not *so* large *as* that.

6. It is half past three. It is half a year.
Three ells and a half. Six ounces and a half.

lame, lahm.
gone out, ausgegangen.
subject, unterwirft.
do not disturb, stören Sie nicht.
sick, krank, *acc.*
Italy, Italien.
more pleasant, angenehmer.
Germany, Deutschland.
Denmark, Dänemark.
Sweden, Schweden.
are you not? sind Sie nicht?
least, am wenigsten.
sooner, eher.
we hasten, man eilet.
the worse speed, desto weniger kommt man weiter.
serious, ernsthaft.
large, groß.

FIRST LESSON.

Es ist eine große Sünde, wenn man die Armen drückt.

Friederich der Zweite war ein großer Mann.

Der Reiche ist nicht glücklich, wenn er nicht die Tugend liebt.

Der Vater ist klüger als der Sohn.

Ihr Bruder hat ein großes Vermögen.

Die Sonne leuchtet heller als der Mond.

Der Weise ist glücklicher als der Thor.

Die Londoner Kaufleute sind sehr reich.

Die deutsche Sprache ist schwerer, als die französische Sprache.

Heinrich der Vierte war großmüthiger als Philipp der Zweite.

Das Wasser ist gesunder als der Wein.

Deutschland ist größer als Dänemark.

Die Weintrauben sind süßer als die Johannisbeeren.

Kleine Fürsten sind glücklicher als große Könige.

Die Städte sind besser gebaut, als die Dörfer.

Das Kind ist nicht so groß, als die Mutter.

Der Vater hat mehr Sorge, als die Kinder denken.

Der Sommer ist weniger angenehm, als der Frühling.
In Schweden ist es weniger kalt, als in Grönland.
Der Mensch hat immer mehr Fehler, als man glaubt.
Socrates war weniger stolz, als die Sophisten.
Plato hätte besser gethan, wenn er nicht an den Hof des Dionysius gegangen wäre.
Alles wahrhaft Gute und Lobenswürdige ist der Gegenstand meiner Wünsche.

SECOND LESSON.

Der mächtigste Mensch kann die Ordnung der Natur nicht stören.
Die meisten Reichen sehen mit Verachtung auf die Armen herab.
Nero war der ruchloseste unter allen römischen Kaisern.
Demosthenes war der beredteste Grieche, wie Cicero der beredteste Römer.
Jeder Redner ist immer am größten, wenn er sich an die Leidenschaften wendet.
Titus war der beste römische Kaiser.
Homer war der größte Dichter der Griechen.
Dionysius, in Sicilien, war der grausamste Tyrann, und villeicht einer der unglücklichsten Menschen.
Alexander der Große, und Sesostris, König von Egypten, sind die größten Eroberer im Alterthum gewesen.
Der Diamant ist der härteste und durchsichtigste Edelstein.
Die gelehrtesten Männer waren mehrentheils die größten und geschicktesten Mathematiker, und daher entdeckten sie die wichtigsten Erfindungen.
Die tiefste Ehrfurcht anderer verdient immer der Weiseste und Tugendhafteste.
Derjenige Mann ist am weisesten, welcher ein ruhiges Leben führt.

Diejenige Frau iſt am klügſten, welche ihren Haushalt gut verſorgt.

Dasjenige Kind iſt am liebenswürdigſten, welches folgſam iſt.

Diejenigen Leute ſind am vernünftigſten, welche Vorurtheilen am wenigſten unterworfen ſind.

CHAP. IV.

Rules for the Construction of the Pronouns.

As the personal pronouns are so frequently connected with verbs, it may not be improper to defer speaking of them until we treat of the verbs.

§ *I. Possessive Pronouns.*

RULE I.

The conjunctive possessive pronouns must agree with the nouns to which they belong in gender, number and case.

Examples.

*Mein Bruder, meine Schweſter und meine Kinder,	My brother, *my* sister, and *my* children.
*Meine Brüder, Schweſtern und Kinder,	My brothers, sisters and children.
Mein Vater iſt verreiſet, und meine Mutter iſt nicht zu Hauſe,	My father is gone a journey, and my mother is not at home.
*Meine Mutter, Tochter und Schweſter,	My mother, daughter and sister.

* The pronouns as well as the articles and adjectives are repeated before nouns of different genders or numbers; but before nouns of the same gender or number they are not to be repeated; also they are not to be repeated if one noun be masculine and the other neuter; as, Alles iſt verkauft, ſogar mein Haus und Hof, all is sold, even my house and yard. As a general remark the pronouns, adjectives and articles need never be repeated where one will suffice.

Meines Bruders einzige Tochter, und meiner Schweſter liebſter Sohn, ſind vor etlichen Jahren geſtorben,	My brother's only daughter, and my sister's dearest son have been dead some years.
Der Garten meines Vaters, und derjenige meines Bruders,	My father's garden and that of my brother.
Von deinem Bruder, von deiner Schweſter und von deinen Kindern will ich gar nichts ſagen,	I will say nothing at all of thy brother, sister and children.
Deines Vetters Pferd hat funfzig Thaler gekoſtet,	Thy cousin's horse has cost fifty dollars.
Er hat ſeinen Vater, ſeine Mutter und ſein Kind geſehen,	He has seen his father, mother and child.
Mein Geſchmack iſt nicht der deinige,	My taste is not *thine*.
Deine Uhr iſt nicht die meinige,	Thy watch is not *mine*.
Sein Buch iſt nicht das ihrige,	His book is not *hers*.
Ihr Freund und der Ihrige ſind ausgegangen.	Her friend and *yours* are gone out.
Ihre Freundin und die Ihrige,	Her female friend and *yours*.
Mein Haus liegt nahe bei dem Ihrigen,	My house lies near *yours*.

Practice.

My father, mother, and child.

My brother and sister are in the house; but my cousin and yours are in the garden.

Her † cousin (*f.*) and yours are at their country house.

My vines, meadows and fields are in good condition.

Your sister dances better than mine, but mine speaks German better than yours.

I have not yet received my books, writings, or other things.
He gave it to my brother's wife.
My books are much dearer than yours, but yours are a great deal better than mine.
My gardens are very large, but they are not so well cultivated as yours, or theirs.
Your brother's wife's sister is gone a journey.

Are at home, ſind zu Haus.
cousin, Vetter, *m.* †Couſine, *f.*
country house, Landhaus, *n.*
vine, Weinberg, *m.*
meadow, Wieſe, *f.*
field, Feld, *n.*
are in good condition, ſind wohl beſtellt.
dances, tanzt.
but, allein.
speaks German, ſpricht Deutſch.
writings, Schriften.
other things, andere Sachen.
I have not yet received, ich habe noch nicht empfangen.
he gave it to, er gab es zu.
much, viel.
dear, theuer.
a great deal better, weit beſſer.
large, groß.
so well cultivated, ſo gut angebauet.

Obſerve. The following and similar expressions are turned in German by the dative. These hats are yours, and these coats are theirs, dieſe Hüte gehören Ihnen, und dieſe Röcke gehören ihnen. This mode of expression corresponds to the English, these hats belong to you, and these coats belong to them. Wem gehört die Uhr? to whom does the watch belong? Sie gehört mir (not ſie gehört mein,) it belongs to me, or it is mine. So, ſie gehört dir (nicht dein,) ſie gehört ihm (nicht ſein,) &c.

The possessive pronouns are elegantly changed into the dative of personal pronouns with the preposition von; as, er iſt ein Freund von mir, he is a friend of mine, (*of me*); es iſt ein Brief von ihm, it is a letter of his; instead of which we may say: er iſt mein Freund, he is my friend, or es iſt einer von meinen Freunden, it is one of my friends; es iſt ſein Brief, it is his letter; or es iſt einer von ſeinen Briefen, it is one of his letters.

RULE II.

When a conjunctive pronoun absolute follows any tense of ſeyn, it is indeclinable, because it is then used adverbially,

except when a noun is understood, or when we wish to distinguish the possessor from other persons, then the declinable form must be used, in order to give greater emphasis, which generally occurs in the reply to a question, by way of opposition, or to oppose an affirmation.

Examples.

Indeclinable

Dieſe Aepfel ſind mein,	These apples are mine.
Der Garten iſt mein oder dein,	The garden is mine or thine.
Das Pferd iſt ſein oder ihr,	The horse is his, or hers.
Es iſt euer, (Ihr.)	It is yours.
Es iſt mein, dein, ſein, ihr,	It is mine, thine, his, hers.
Es iſt unſer, Ihr,	It is ours, yours.
Das iſt mein, nicht dein Freund,	That is mine, not thy friend.

Declinable.

Weſſen Hut iſt das? Whose hat is that?	Es iſt meiner (oder es iſt *der meine, oder der meinige,) it is mine.
Weſſen Feder iſt das? Whose pen is that?	Es, or ſie iſt ſeine (oder die ſeine, oder die ſeinige,) it is his.
Weſſen Kind iſt das? Whose child is that?	Es iſt deines, (oder das deine, oder das deinige,) it is thine.
Weſſen iſt dieſes Buch? Whose book is this?	Es iſt unſeres, Ihres, ihres, it is ours, yours, theirs.
Iſt dieß meines oder Ihres? Is this mine, or yours?	Nein, es iſt deines oder ihres, no it is thine, or theirs.
Dieſes iſt nicht dein Hut ſondern † meiner,	This is not thy hat, but mine.

* The possessive pronouns may be used absolutely with the definite article.

† When the noun is omitted its place is supplied by the endings er e, or es, depending upon the gender of the noun understood.

Dieſes iſt nicht deine Mutter, ſie iſt meine,	This is not thy mother, she is mine.
Dieſes iſt nicht dein Kind, es iſt meines,	This is not thy child, it is mine.
Das iſt nicht dein Freund, es iſt meiner,	That is not thy friend, it is mine.
Dieſes iſt einer meiner Freunde,	This is one of my friends.
Dieſe Meſſer ſind mein,	Nein, ſie ſind meine, deine, ſeine, ihre, ꝛc.
These knives are mine.	No, they are *mine, thine, his, hers,* &c.
Dieſe Glocke und Uhr ſind dein, oder Ihr,	Nein, ſie ſind ſeine (oder die ſeinigen,
This bell and watch are thine, or yours.	No, they are his.

Practice.

Indeclinable.

That book is yours. This pen is his.
These gardens are theirs. These hats are mine.
That gown is hers. The knives and forks are ours.
Those stockings and shoes are theirs.
Whose coat is that? *It is his. That is thine.

Declinable.

Whose coat is that? *It is his. No, it is mine.
Whose dog is that? It is ours. No, it is not, it is his.
These books are mine. No, they are mine, or his.
This is not your house, but mine, or it is mine.
Are these mine or his? They are neither yours nor his, but mine.
That pencil and knife are mine; No, they are hers.
That is not thy mother, it is mine.

* In the sentence, *it is his*, ſein, or ſeines, *his*, is either declinable, or indeclinable, it is indeclinable when used adverbially, or when we simply say, es iſt ſein, but if a particular stress is to be laid on the pronoun, it is declinable, and we must then say, es iſt ſeines. The same observation will apply in all similar cases.

RULE III.

Instead of the possessive pronouns, the article, with the personal pronoun in the dative, or accusative, is often used, this frequently occurs where the noun, or pronoun has been given before.

Examples.

*Er gab es mir in die Hand, He gave it me into my hand.
Ich verbrannte mir den Fin- I burnt my finger.
ger,
Sie wäschet mir das Gesicht, She washes my face.

Practice.

The tears flow from his eyes. It is my turn. I shall wash my hands and face.
It glimmers before my eyes.
He affronted him to his face.

Flow from, fließen aus.	it glimmers, es glimmert.
it is my turn, die Reihe ist an mir.	before, vor.
I shall, ich werde.	eye, Auge, (*dat.*)
hand, (*dat.*) Hand, *f.*	to affront, stoßen.
face, (*dat.*) Gesicht, *n.*	to his face, vor den Kopf.
wash, waschen.	

§ II. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

RULE I.

Dieser, is generally used for *this*, but is sometimes Englished by *that*, to distinguish one thing from another. It must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case, and is repeated as other pronouns.

* It is also good German to say, er gab es in meine Hand, he gave it into my hand.

Examples.

Dieſer Mann iſt es von welchem ich rede,	This is the man of whom I speak.
Dieſe Frau ſagte mir,	This woman told me.
Wem gehört dieſer Garten und dieſes Haus?	To whom does *this* garden and *that* house belong?
Dieſer Mann und dieſes Weib ſind hier,	*This* man and *that* woman are here.
Dieſes, oder dieß iſt das Buch,	This is the book.

Practice.

This boy and those girls, are the children of that woman.
This house is Mr. Martin's.
Give these apples and pears to that boy.
The son of this man is the husband of that woman.

Boy, Knabe, *m.*
girl, Mädchen, *n.*
woman, Weib, *n.*
is Mr. Martin's, gehört Herrn Martin.
pear, Birne, *f.*
husband, Ehemann, *m.*

Observe. When der, die, das, *this, that, these, those, he, they,* are employed as demonstrative pronouns, to point out an object more particularly, they must be pronounced with greater emphasis, and are often followed by da, hier, dort. Der Menſch iſt weiſe welcher tugendhaft lebt, that man is wise who lives virtuously; der Mann hier, this man *(here)*; die Frau da, that woman *(there)*; das Kind dort, that child *(there)*; die Perſon die du liebſt, that person *whom* you love; hier ſind die Männer, here are those men: der welcher, he who. When der is joined with eben, it is Englished by *the same*, and is equivalent to derſelbe; as, eben der Junge, the same boy; eben die Frau, the same woman; eben das Mädchen, the same girl.

RULE II

When two things are compared dieſer, *this*, is put for the first, and jener, *that*, for the second, answering to *ce-ci*, or

celui-ci and *celui-là*, in French; but if the subjects to which they relate, precede them, then jener, *that*, relates to the first mentioned, and dieſer, *this*, to the last mentioned.

Examples.

*Dieſer Mann iſt weit großmüthiger als jener, *Cet* homme *ci* est bien plus généreux que *celui-là*.	*This* man is far more generous than *that*.
Dieſe und jene taugen nichts, *ceux-ci* et *ceux-là* ne valent rien.	*These* and *those* are good for nothing, *or* are worth nothing.
Dieſe Aepfel ſind gut, aber jene ſind ſchlecht.	*These* apples are good, but *those* are bad.
Der Leib ſtirbt, die Seele iſt unſterblich; und doch verwenden wir alle Sorgfalt auf jenen und vernachläſſigen dieſe.	The body perishes, the soul is immortal; and nevertheless we bestow all care on *that*, and neglect *this*.
Ich rede nicht von dieſem, ſondern von jenem.	I do not speak of *this*, but of *that*.

Practice.

This house and that. These people and those.
This man is much more prudent than that.
This girl is more modest than that.
This horse is much better than that.
Follow virtue and shun vice; that is your friend, this your enemy.
You must do this, but not leave that.
This is much better than that.
I speak of this and that history.

People, Leute.	to follow, folgen.
prudent, klug.	shun, meiden.
modest, ſittſam.	to leave, laſſen.
horse, Pferd, *n.*	history, Geſchichte, *f.*

* Dieſer *and* jener, must agree with their respective nouns, which are sometimes expressed and sometimes understood.

RULE III.

The neuters of dieſer, jener, and der, viz. *dieſes, or dies, or dieß; jenes and das, are often used absolutely, *i. e.* without any noun, for any gender, or number; answering to the French *ceci* and *cela*.

Examples.

Sind dieß oder das die Männer?	Are *these*, or *those* the men?
Dieſes, or dies, (not dieſer) iſt der Mann.	*This* is the man.
Das (not der) iſt der Herr des Hauſes.	*That* is the master of the house.
Das (not die) iſt die Frau des Hauſes.	*That* is the mistress of the house.
Das (not die) ſind meine Kinder.	*Those* are my children.
Dies iſt gut aber das iſt übel.	*This* is good, but *that* is bad.
Dies iſt die Stadt von welcher ich kam.	*This* is the city from which I came.
Dies ſind die guten Männer.	*These* are the good men.

Practice.

Are these, or those the women?
This is the house from which I came.
Do you believe this, or that?
This is the man to whom you spoke yesterday.
That gives me much pleasure.
These are the clothes and books.
That is the woman to whom you spoke.

Do you believe? glauben Sie? cloth, Kleid, *n.*
gives me, giebt mir, to whom you spoke yesterday, mit welchem Sie geſtern redeten.
pleasure, Vergnügen.

---

* Solches, welches and es, are also used absolutely. Ex. Solches war der Zuſtand, such was the situation. Welches ſind meine Briefe? which are my letters? Es ſind Fiſche, they are fishes.

§. III. *Relative Pronouns.*

RULE I.

Der, die, das, *who* and welcher, welche, welches, *who, which, that*, are used the one for the other, except in the genitive, where deſſen, *or* deren answers to *whose* (*sometimes* derer, *whose, is used in the plural.*) They must agree with the nouns to which they relate in gender and number. But their cases are governed by verbs, nouns, or prepositions, when they occur in the same member of a sentence. The indeclinable particle ſo is sometimes used relatively for the nominative in both numbers, instead of der, or welcher; but ſo is not used in the oblique cases.

Examples.

*Der Mann, welcher, or (der, ſo) hier ſtehet.	The man *who*, or *that* stands here.
Die Frau, welche, or (die, ſo) es mir gegeben hat.	The woman *who*, or *that* has given it me.
Das Pferd, welches, or (das, ſo) den Hafer frißt,	The horse *which*, or *that* eats the oats.
Der Mann, der, oder das Ding, das bewegt.	The man, or thing *that* moves.
Die Kinder, welche, or (die) unten ſpielen.	The children *who* play underneath.
Hier iſt der Mann, ſo mir das zeiget.	Here is the man *who* shews me that.
Da iſt der Mann, welchen (or den) ich meine.	There is the man *whom* I mean.
Der Weinberg von welchem wir reden, iſt hier ganz nahe.	The vineyard of which we speak, is just by.
Dieſes iſt der Mann mit welchem, (or mit dem), ich rede.	This is the man with *whom* I speak.

* Welcher is preferable to der, in the grave style, and when used immediately after any of the personal pronouns, or to avoid a repetition of sound; ſo is sometimes used to avoid the repetition of welcher, or der. Der is more used than welcher in conversation.

Ich weiß nicht welchen von den Personen Sie meinen.	I do not know *which* of the persons you mean.
Das iſt der Fehler, welchem er am meiſten ergeben iſt.	That is the defect *to which* he is most subject.
Die Ehre, deren er ſo würdig iſt.	The honor of which he is so deserving.
Das iſt ein Mann, deſſen Tugend mir bekannt iſt.	That is a man *whose* virtue is known to me.
Die Männer, derer Verdienſte ſo groß ſind.	Those men whose merits are so great.
Kann man auch diejenigen lieben, deren Laſter die ganze Welt verabſcheuet?	Can we love those *whose* crimes are abhorred by every body?

Practice.

My friend, *who* wrote this letter to me.
The box *which* is there.
The boy *who* spoke to me.
That is not the woman *whom* you mean.
The letter *which* I sent you.
That is an evil to *which* he is often subject.
Love is a passion *which* or *that* makes many men very unhappy.
The death *which* they have merited.

---

* Wer, *whoever, he, that, he who,* or *she who,* is used only in the singular, and is both a relative and demonstrative pronoun, as a relative it always begins a sentence. Ex. Wer immer lächeln kann, der iſt gewiß ein Schalk, whoever can always smile *(better, can always)* is certainly a wag. Sie wiſſen noch nicht wer ich bin, you do not yet know who I am. Wer mich liebt iſt mein Freund, *he who,* or *he that* loves me, is my friend. Ich weiß nicht wer Sie ſind, I do not know *who* you are. Was, *what, that,* is the neuter of wer, and is generally used for things; as, Was ich davon weiß, will ich Ihnen ſagen, *what* I know of it, I will tell you. Dieß iſt alles was ich habe, this is all *that* I have. Was can never refer to an antecedent noun, therefore when the subject is expressed, welcher or der is required; as, Das Haus, welches, or das ich beſitze, the house *which* I possess, *not* Das Haus was ich beſitze.

The word ſelbſt, may be joined to a relative, Ex: Ein König der ſich ſelbſt regieret, a king who governs himself. Sie iſt eine Mutter die ihre Kinder ſelbſt erzieht, she is a mother who brings up her children herself.

Wer, stands for derjenige, welcher, and was for dasjenige, welches.

Here is the money *which* I owe you, and the books *that* you lent me.

The gardener *who* has killed the dog.

Ferdinand *whose* courage is known.

It is the man *whom* we saw yesterday.

Box, Lade, *f.*	makes, macht.
is there, dort iſt.	they have merited, ſie haben verdient.
you mean, Ihr meinet.	owe, ſchuldig bin.
letter, Brief, *m.*	have lent, geliehen haben.
I sent you, ich Ihnen ſchickte.	gardener, Gärtner.
evil, übel.	has killed, getödtet hat.
love, die Liebe.	courage, Muth, *m.*
passion, Leidenſchaft.	is known, bekannt iſt.
very unhappy, ſehr unglücklich.	

RULE II.

The relative is sometimes understood in English, but must be expressed in German.

Examples.

Der Weg, den ich gehe,	The way (*which*) I go.
Die Dinge, welche (or die) ich thue,	The things (*which*) I do.
Der Mann, welchen (or den) ich ſah,	The man (*whom*) I saw.
Die hundert Gulden, welche (or die) ich Ihnen geſtern geliehen habe,	The hundred florins (*which*) I lent you yesterday.
Der Herr, welchen (or den) ich letztere Woche geſehen, iſt geſtorben,	The gentleman (*whom*) I saw last week, is dead.

Practice.

The way (*which*) I went was uneven.

The man (*whom*) I love,

That is the man (*whom*) I saw yesterday.

The reasons (*which*) you give, are not solid.

The company (*that*) he keeps is not reputable.

The letters (*which*) you wrote yesterday are not gone to the post.

Way, Weg, *m.*
I went was uneven, ich ging war uneben.
I saw yesterday, ich gestern sah,
love, liebe.
reason, Grund, *m.*
you give, are not solid, Sie geben sind nicht fest.
company, Gesellschaft, *f.*
are not gone to the post, sind nicht auf die Post gegeben.

Obs. It is not necessary to repeat the relative before each verb in a sentence. Ex. Ein Freund, der mich liebt und hochschätzet, a friend *who* loves and esteems me.

RULE III.

Da, and wo, (*or* wor *before a vowel*) stand for welcher, *or* der, when compounded with prepositions. (*Vide prep. p.* 233).

Examples.

Die Feder, damit, or womit ich schreibe.	The pen *with which* I write.
Die Person, davon ich euch gesagt habe,	The person *of whom* I spoke to you.
Das ist worüber ich mich verwundere.	That is *what* astonishes me.
Das ist das Messer womit er schnitt.	That is the knife *wherewith* (better, *with which*) he cut.

Practice.

Here is a pen *with which* you may write.
That is *what* I am persuaded of.
That is the house *of which* I spoke.
He is a friend *upon whom* you may depend.
Have you money *with which* you can pay.
I will endeavour to make myself worthy of the friendship, with which you honor me.

To write, schreiben.
am persuaded of, versichert bin von.
spoke, gesagt habe.
upon, auf.
you may depend, Sie sich verlassen können.
money, Geld, *n.* s.
I will endeavour, ich werde mich bestreben.
to make myself worthy of the friendship, with which you honor me, der Freundschaft, womit Sie mich beehren, würdig zu machen.

RULE IV.

Der, or derjenige, he, she, it, they, their, that, those, &c. are used when *who*, *that*, or *which*, answering to *celui* in French, follows in the sentence.

Examples.

Der, or derjenige, welcher gehet,	*He*, *who* goes.
Die, or diejenige, die es ſagte,	*She*, *who* said it.
Der iſt glücklich, welcher zufrieden iſt,	*He* is happy *who* is content.
Es iſt der Vortheil derer, die (or welche) es thun,	It is to *their* advantage *who* do it.
Die Wälder in Poland ſind breiter und länger als die in Deutſchland,	The forests in Poland are wider and longer than *those in* Germany.
Derjenige iſt reich, der ſich begnügen läßt, an dem was er hat,	He is rich *who* contents himself with what he has.

Practice.

They are happy who die in the Lord.
He who spoke with me.
That is the will of him who sent me.
That virtue is great, which stands the proof of disappointments.
The rivers in America are larger than those in Europe.
He is a child of God, who believes in him and his son.

Die in the Lord, in dem Herrn ſterben.	in America, in Amerika.
	in Europe, in Europa.
spoke with me, mit mir redete.	a child of God, ein Kind Gottes.
stands the proof of disappointments, auch in Wiederwärtigkeiten die Probe hält.	who believes in him and his son, wer an ihn und ſeinen Sohn gläubet.
the rivers, die Flüſſe.	

§. IV. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

RULE I.

The interrogative pronoun welcher? *which?* is joined to nouns with which it must agree in gender, and number. Was für ein? *what?* agrees in gender with nouns in the singular number only; when nouns are in the plural number, or do not admit of any plural, the ein is omitted. The cases are governed by other words as before. Welcher sometimes requires the genitive, or von with the dative.

Practice.

(*Nom.*) Welcher Mann? Welche Frau?	*Which* man? which woman?
(*Gen.*) Welcher Frau Kind iſt das?	Which woman's child is that?
(*Acc.*) Welchen Weg muß ich einſchlagen?	Which way must I go?
(*Gen.*) Von welcher Magd Lohn ſprechen Sie?	Of which maid servant's wages do you speak?
(*Nom.*) Welcher von den beiden Brüdern?	*Which* of the two brothers?
(*Dat.*) Von welchem Mannes Sohne?	Of which man's son?
(*Dat.*) Welchen von den Herren haben Sie geſehen?	*Which* of the gentlemen have you seen?
(*Dat.*) Von welchem Buche reden Sie?	Of *which* book do you speak?
(*Dat.*) Zu welcher von den Damen gehen Sie?	To *which* of the ladies are you going?
(*Dat.*) Hier ſind zwei Sackuhren; welcher von beiden geben Sie den Vorzug?	Here are two watches, *to which* of the two do you give the preference?
Was für ein Unterſchied iſt da?	*What* difference is there?
Was für eine Frau iſt dieſes?	*What* woman is this?
Was für einem Kinde haben Sie es gegeben?	To *what* child have you given it?

Was für Kinder ſind da? *What* children are there?

Was für Geld iſt das? or,
was iſt das für Geld? *What* gold is that?

Obs. When Was für ein? is used without any noun, then the Germans say, Was für einer? was für eine? was für eines or eins? *what?* Mas. Fem. and Neuter. Which may be Englished by, what is he, she, it.

Practice.

Which of those two women is your mother?
To what science do you apply?
Which is the best German Grammar in English?
To which of the houses do you give the preference?
Of which horse do you speak?
Which of the gentlemen do you see?
What men, women and children?
What man has done that?
What weather is it? What wine have you?
What corn is there? What bread is there?
What horse has he bought?

To, auf.
science, Wiſſenſchaft, *f. acc.*
do you apply? legen Sie ſich?
German grammar in English, deutſch engliſche Sprachlehre.
horse, Pferd.
gentleman, Herr, *m.*
has done that? hat das gethan?
weather, Wetter.
wine, Wein.
corn, Getreide.
bread, Brot.
has he bought? hat er gekauft?

RULE II.

Wer? *who?* and was? *what?* wie? *how?* or *what!* are of both numbers, but wer? is applied to persons and was? to things. Wer? who? and was? *what?* are never joined to nouns in asking questions; when a noun immediately follows, welcher? *which?* or was für ein? *what?* must be used instead of wer? or was?

Examples.

Wer hat das gethan? Sein Bruder oder ſeine Schweſter,
Who has done that? his brother or his sister.

Weſſen iſt dieſes Kleid? meines Vaters,	*Whose* coat is this? my fathers.
Wem bringt Ihr das?	*To whom* do you bring that?
Von Wem habt Ihr dieſen Brief erhalten?	*From whom* have you received this letter?
Wen haben Sie geſehen? Ihren Bruder,	Whom have you seen? your brother.
Wer iſt da? er iſt ein Freund von mir,	*Who* is there? he is a friend of mine.
Wer ſind dieſe Fremden?	*Who* are these strangers?
Was iſt die Uhr? es iſt zwei Uhr,	*What* o'clock is it? it is two o'clock.
Wie iſt das Wetter?	*How*, (*or what*) is the weather?
Was iſt das? es ſind Bücher,	What is that? they are books.
Von was reden Sie?	Of what are you speaking?
Was ſagen Sie? Ich weiß nicht was,	What do you say? I do not know what.
Von was iſt das gemacht? von Zucker,	Of what is that made? sugar.

Practice.

Who is there? Sir, it is a servant.
Who is always wise? no one.
Who gave you it? some one.
To whom does this book belong? to me.
Whose children are these? mine, every one.
Who say so? people say so.
What is that? it is no dog, it is a fox.
What have you there? a book; of what does it treat?
What have you in this basket? they are flowers.

Sir, it is a servant, mein Herr, es iſt ein Diener,	every one, jederman. people, man.
always, immer.	no, kein.
wise, weiſe.	fox, Fuchs.
no one, niemand.	of, von, with a, (*dat.*)
gave you it, hat es Ihnen gegeben.	does it treat? handelt es?
some one, jemand.	basket, Korb.
does belong, gehört.	flower, Blume.

§. V. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

RULE.

These pronouns, which are not joined to nouns, must however agree with nouns understood; except when indeclinable.

Examples.

Every man, jeder. *Every* woman, jede. *Every* thing, jedes.

Keiner von beiden iſt mein Bruder.	*Neither* is my *brother.*
Keine von beiden iſt meine Schweſter.	*Neither* is my *sister.*
Keines von beiden iſt mein Kind.	*Neither* is my *child.*
Haben Sie kein Geld? Nein, ich habe keins, or keines.	Have you no *money?* No, I have *none.*
Ich kenne keinen von beiden.	I know neither.
Kein Menſch kann das thun was er gethan hat.	*No man* can do what he has done.
Beide ſprechen recht gut Deutſch.	*Both* speak very good German.

Practice.

Has he a daughter? Yes, he has one.
No one knows when he will die.
I will have neither; you shall have either.
Every thing under the sun is subject to change.
Have you wine? No, I have none.
Some one came to the doctor.

Knows when he will die, weiß wann er ſterben muß.	to the doctor, zum Doctor.

Observe. The word *it* is expressed by ba, when united to prepositions. (*Vide Gr. p.* 233.); as,

Ich verwundere mich ſehr darüber,	I am very much surprised at it.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Pronouns.

FIRST LESSON.

Unter allen Werken iſt auch nicht eines, das nicht Fehler hat.

Es iſt nicht eines unter dieſen Büchern, das ich nicht alle Jahre leſe.

Ich zweifle, daß es einen Schriftſteller ohne Fehler giebt.

Ich zweifle, daß jemand die Menſchen beſſer gekannt habe, als la Bruyère.

Hat jemand natürlicher als la Fontaine erzählet?

Ich kenne niemanden, der ſo glücklich iſt, als er.

Wir kennen niemanden, der ſo viel Glück hat, als ſie.

Man muß jedem das Seinige geben.

Kennen Sie einen dieſer Herren?

Kennen Sie einige von dieſen Frauenzimmern?

Es giebt keinen, der mehr Ihr Diener iſt, als ich.

Es giebt keine, die mehr Ihre Dienerin iſt, als ich.

Keiner weiß, ob er Haß oder Liebe verdient.

Keine von dieſen Frauenzimmern iſt ſpatzieren gegangen.

Jedes Land hat ſeine Gebräuche.

Die Schmeichler leben auf Koſten eines jeden der ſie anhören will.

SECOND LESSON.

Die Obrigkeit muß gegen Jedermann gerecht ſeyn, ſelbſt gegen ihre Feinde.

Was du nicht willſt, daß dir geſchieht, das thu auch einem andern nicht.

Feuer und Waſſer zerſtören einander.

Sie ſchätzen einander.

Sie haben einander getödtet.

Sie ſchätzen ſich beide ſelbſt.

Sie haben ſich beide umgebracht.

Viele werden betrogen indem ſie Andere betrügen wollen.

Man mag so viel Genie haben als man will, so kann man doch ohne Fleiß in nichts vortrefflich werden.

Er beschäftige sich womit er will, so hört er den Augenblick auf, da ihn seine Pflicht ruft.

Die, welche sich mit nichts Gutem oder Nützlichem beschäftigen, scheinen mir sehr verächtlich zu seyn.

Man muß von keinem, er sey wer er will, in seiner Abwesenheit Uebels reden.

THIRD LESSON.

Der Mann da hat es gethan.

Dieser Mann ist es, von welchem ich rede.

Dieser ist es, von welchem ich rede.

Befleißige dich der Tugend, denn diese verläßt dich nicht.

Wessen ist das Haus? dessen da, deren da, der da.

Ich meine dieses Haus.

Dieses, *or* dieß ist der Mann, der dich leiten soll.

Wollt ihr euch in der Beredtsamkeit üben, so leset Demostenes und Cicero; dieß sind die zwei größten Redner des Alterthumes.

Die Furcht und die Schande begleiten immer das Verbrechen; dieß sind die wahren Merkmahle, woran man es erkennen kann.

Die Größe der Sonne übertrifft die Größe des Mondes.

Die Liebe ist eine Leidenschaft, welche viele Menschen sehr unglücklich macht.

Der Leib stirbt, die Seele ist unsterblich; und doch verwenden wir alle Sorgfalt auf jenen und vernachlässigen diese.

CHAP. V.

Rules for the Construction of Personal Verbs.

Of verbs we must consider the agreement, government, moods and tenses.

§. I. *Agreement of Verbs.*

RULE I.

A verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person, whether the nominative precede, or follow the verb.*

All pronouns are of the third person except ich, *I*; du, *thou*, singular; wir, *we*; ihr, *you*, plural; and all nouns are of the third person, unless used in speaking to.

Examples.

Ich leſe, ſchreibe und ſpreche,	I read, write and speak.
Du liebſt, und er gehorcht,	Thou lovest, and he obeys.
Der Sohn iſt größer als der Vater,	The son is taller than the father.
Schreibt der Bruder?	Does the brother write?
Er lieſt, und unſre Freunde ſchreiben,	He reads, and our friends write.
Er reibt die Farben, und ſie malt,	He rubs the colours, and she paints.
Ich bin es, (ich bins,) du biſt es,	It is *I*, it is *thou*.
Sie ſprechen mit uns,	You speak with us.

---

* When the verb relates to more than one subject, it must be plural: as, Wahrheit und Gerechtigkeit ſind die Grundpfeiler eines Staats, truth and justice are the foundation pillars of a state.

If a verb relate to more subjects than one of different persons, the first person is then preferred to the second, and the second to the third; as,

Du, dein Bruder und ich wollen ſpatzieren gehen,	You, your brother and I will take a walk.
Ich und du haben gleiche Schickſale,	You and I have equal destinies.
Weder du noch er werden das verſtehen,	Neither thou nor he will understand it.

In the above examples wollen and haben, are in the first person, to agree with ich, and werdet is in the second person to agree with du.

But when several nominatives, referring to one verb, are considered distinctly, the verb must be singular; as,

Gut, Ehre, Leben, kurz, alles iſt verloren,	Estate, honor, life, in short, every thing is lost.

Geben Sie mir gefälligſt noch eine Taſſe,	Give me another cup, if you please.
Der Hund bewacht den Hof,	The dog guards the yard.
Wann treten Sie Ihre Reiſe nach England an?	When do you set out for England?
Wie froh bin ich!	How glad I am!
Dieſe Frauen *haben Unrecht,	These women are wrong.
Dieſer Mann hat Recht,	This man is right.
Er oder ſie hat mir es geſagt,	He, or she told it me.

Practice.

The sun shines. I eat. He sings.
He speaks of my father.
Who has written this letter?
Fame and immortality await you.
The eagle and hawk are birds of prey.
We are the children of God.
Justice and integrity are his companions.
Each has his right, we are wrong.
He plays the whole day. They dance and sing.
Have you seen the king? *no*, I have seen the queen.
Virtue and happiness go hand in hand.
Thou and I do not know that.
Thou and he will not be informed of that.

Sun, Sonne, *f.*	await, erwarten.
shines, ſcheint.	eagle, Adler, *m.*
to eat, eſſen.	hawk, Habicht, *m.*
to sing, ſingen.	birds of prey, Raubvögel.
speaks, ſpricht.	justice, Gerechtigkeit, *f.*
of, von.	integrity, Redlichkeit, *f.*
written, geſchrieben.	each, jeder.
fame, Ruhm, *m.*	to play, ſpielen.
immortality, Unſterblichkeit.	happiness, Glückſeligkeit.

Observe. In addressing a person of title or rank, the verb is put in the plural, also in speaking of one who is absent; though this mode of speaking is ungrammatical, yet it is common; Ex.

Euere, *or* Ew. Majeſtät geruhen, your majesty is pleased, or may it please your majesty.

* Haben is used like the French *avoir*.

Mas. Seine, *or* Se. Majeſtät, (der König) haben befohlen, your majesty, (the king) has ordered, (*have ordered.*)
Fem. Ihro, *or* Ihre Majeſtät, (die Königin) ſind ſo gnädig, her majesty, (the queen) is so benevolent.
Der Herr geheime Rath ſagten mir, the privy counsellor told me.

RULE II.

The third person singular of pronouns is not only applied to persons, but to inanimate things; then er, ſie, es may be used for *it*, according to the gender of the noun referred to. And so likewise the possessive ſein, and ihr, for *its*.

Examples.

Weſſen iſt dieſer Hut? er iſt mein, oder meiner,	Whose hat is this? *it* is mine.
Wo haben Sie ihn gekauft?	Where did you buy *it*?
Kaufe Wahrheit, und verkaufe ſie nicht,	Buy the truth, and sell it not.
Der Adler breitet ſeine Flügel aus,	The eagle spreads *its* wings.
Die Amſel breitet ihre Flügel aus,	The blackbird spreads *its* wings.
Hier iſt ein Brief, leſen Sie ihn,	Here is a letter, read *it*.
Hier iſt die Schrift, leſen Sie ſie,	Here is the Scripture, read *it*.
Hier iſt das Buch, leſen Sie es,	Here is the book, read *it*.
Sehen Sie die Sonne? ſie wirft ihre Strahlen auf die Erde,	Do you see the sun? *it* throws *its* rays upon the earth.

Practice.

How do you like this weather? It is very unpleasant.
The court and its magnificence.
Do you see this flower? It is very beautiful.
How great is its charm; but how short its duration.
Where is my coat? it is in your room.

The child has broken its arm; it is ill.

The wine has lost its taste; it is flat.

The world has its enjoyments; but it is filled with pain and misery.

How do you like? wie gefällt Ihnen?	beautiful, ſchön.
weather, Witterung, *f.*	charm, Reiz, *m.*
very, ſehr.	short, kurz.
unpleasant, unangenehm.	duration, Dauer, *f.*
court, Hof, *m.*	room, Zimmer, *n.*
magnificence, Herrlichkeit, *f.*	child, Kind, *n.*
flower, Blume, *f.*	world, Welt, *f.*

RULE III.

In addressing a single person, (or more than one person,) whom we wish to treat with respect, it is the prevailing custom to use the third person plural Sie, (*they*,) for *you*, instead of ihr, or du, and the possessive Ihr, *instead of* euer, *your*; the first of which is always expressed in German, though not in English.

Examples.

Wie befinden Sie ſich?	How do *you*, (*they*) do?
Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen,	Very well, I thank *you*, (*them.*)
Kommen Sie her, mein Herr, und ſehen Sie,	Come here, Sir, and look.
Mit wem ſprechen Sie?	To whom do you speak?
Sprechen Sie mir nichts davon,	Do not speak to me about it.
Sagen Sie mir gefälligſt,	Tell me, if you please.
Haben Sie die Güte mir zu ſagen,	Have the goodness to tell me.
Gehen Sie Ihres Weges,	Go your way.
Wo ſind Ihre Hüte?	Where are your hats?
Da iſt Ihr Hut,	There is your hat.
Madam, ſind das Ihre Handſchuhe?	Madam, are those your gloves?

Practice.

Do you speak German? You are a generous friend.
Do you know him Madam? Have you seen her?
Will you come with me? Bring your brother.

German, Deutſch.	will, wollen.
generous, großmüthiger.	come, kommen.
know, kennen, him, *acc.*	bring, bringen.
seen, geſehen, her, *acc.*	

Observe. Du is used in addressing the Deity, children, brothers and sisters, intimate friends, and also people of low condition; it is common to use ihr to tradesmen and sometimes to servants; but er, *he*, and ſie, *she*, are more frequently used in addressing male, or female domestics.

Examples to illustrate the preceding Observations.

O, Gott! du wirſt mich erretten,	O, God! thou wilt deliver me.
Mein Sohn! du haſt deine Pflicht erfüllet,	My son! thou hast done thy duty.
Bauer, habt ihr die Hühner zum Verkauf?	Farmer, have you these fowls to sell, *or for sale?*
Freund, könnt ihr mir nicht ſagen, wo? ꝛc.	Friend, can you not tell me, where? &c.
Sey er ſo gut und ſage er ſeinem Herrn,	Have the goodness to tell your master.
Marie, hat ſie das Handtuch geholt?	Mary, have you (*has she*) fetched the towel?

---

§ 2. *Government of Verbs.*

RULE I.

The nominative follows the verbs, ſeyn, *to be*; werden, *to become*; bleiben, *to remain*; also heißen when it signifies *to be called* or *named*. *Whenever an active verb governs the accusative, the passive of the same verb governs the nominative.

Examples.

Georg iſt ein großer König,	George is a great king.
Friedrich II war ein großer Monarch,	Frederic the Second was a great monarch.

Mein Bruder wird ein reicher Mann werden,	My brother will become a rich man.
Er heißt Johann,	He is called John.
Der Narr bleibt ein Narr,	The fool remains a fool.
* *Act.* Die Leute loben meinen Bruder,	The people praise my brother.
Pass. Mein Bruder wird gelobt,	My brother is praised.

Obs. The German verbs govern the same cases of nouns and pronouns as the English; except in some particular modes of expression.

RULE II.

Those verbs which have *of* (and sometimes *from* or *with*) after them in English, require the genitive after them in German. Sometimes *of* or *from* is implied in the sense of the verb. The accusative comes with the genitive and is placed before it, when there is any other case in the sentence.

The following is a list of some of those verbs which take *of* or *from* after them in English, and whose corresponding verbs, in German, are said to govern the genitive case of the thing, and the accusative of the person.

Anklagen, to accuse *of*.	gewähren, to grant, to allow *of*.
bedürfen, to be in need *of*.	überheben, to free *from*.
belehren, to inform *of*.	überführen, to convict *of*.
berauben, to rob, or deprive *of*.	überzeugen, to convince *of*.
beschuldigen, to accuse *of*.	versichern, to assure *of*.
entlassen, to dismiss *from*.	verweisen to banish *from*.
entledigen, to free *from*.	würdigen, to deign, to think worthy *of*.
entsetzen, to discharge *from*.	
gedenken, to think *of*.	

Examples.

Ich klage dich des Diebstahls an,	I accuse you *of* the theft.
Er beraubte ihn seines Geldes,	He robbed him *of* his money.
Er beschuldigte ihn der Lüge,	He charged him *with* the lie.

Ich kann mich deſſen nicht erwehren.	I cannot keep myself *from it.*
Jemanden des Mordes anklagen.	To accuse somebody (or a person) *of* murder.
Er entzieht ſich der Geſellſchaft,	He avoids (he withdraws *from*) the company.
Jemanden großer Ehren würdigen,	To think a person worthy *of* great honor.
Ich entſetze ihn ſeines Amts,	I discharge him *from* his office.
Ich verſichere dich deſſen,	I assure you *of* it.

Practice.

* I assure you *of* my friendship.
Free me *from* this charge.
He has accused him *of* the crime.
To charge a person *with* treachery or treason.
They will banish him *from* his country.
He intends to rob me *of* this pleasure.

Friendship, Freundſchaft, *f.* treachery, Verrätherei, *f.*
charge. Amt, *n.* pleasure, Vergnügen, *n.*

RULE III.

When *to*, *for*, (and sometimes *from*) are used after verbs in English, the corresponding verbs in German require the dative: *to*, *for* &c. are frequently understood.†

Examples.

Geben Sie mir Brot,	Give (*to*) me some bread.
Schicken Sie mir die Sachen,	Send the things *to* me.
Ich kann Ihnen nun berichten wie die Sache war,	I can now report *to* you, how the matter was.

---

* I assure you of my friendship, may be expressed in the dative; as, Ich verſichere dir meine Freundſchaft.

† The accusative is used with the dative, when there is any other case in the sentence.

Some German Grammarians use the Latin Rule, Dativus commodi aut incommodi, *or* omnia verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur.

Er giebt mir das Buch,	He gives (*to*) me the book.
Er wird Ihnen dieſe Wiſſenſchaft lehren,	He will teach (*to*) you that science.
Geben Sie mir den Theil der Güter der mir gehört,	Give *to* me that part of the goods which belongs *to* me.
Der Schüler ſucht mir das Buch,	The scholar seeks the book *for me*.
Die Erde gleicht einer Kugel,	The earth is like (*to*) a ball
Ich ſchätze es mir für eine Ehre,	I think it an honor (*to me*.)

Sometimes the dative is used with the accusative when in English we use the genitive. (Vide Rule III, Possessive Pronouns, p. 275.)

Examples.

Die Franzoſen haben ihrem König den Kopf abgeſchlagen,	The French have *cut off their* king's head,

Practice.

Give the book *to* the man.
The son resembles (*to*) the father.
I promise (*to*) you my friendship.
The debauchee is addicted (*to*) drinking.
Lend (*to*) me twenty crowns.
You want to force it *from* me.
Pay (*to*) me what thou owest me.
I will pay (*to*) you, all.
Ask him *for* the book.
That is useful and advantageous *to* me.

Resembles, gleich.	pay, bezahlen.
to promise, verſprechen.	what, was
debauchee, Lüderliche, *m.*	to owe, ſchuldig ſeyn.
lend, leihen.	pay, abtragen, or bezahlen.
you want, du willſt.	to ask, fordern.
to force *from*, abzwingen.	advantageous, vortheilhaft.

Observations.

1. The dative is put before or after the verb, when we ask wem? *to whom?*

Wem bringt er das?	*To whom* does he bring that?
Mir bringt ers, er bringt mirs.	He brings it *to* me.

2. Most of the neuter, and many of the impersonal verbs govern the dative; Ex.

Einem anliegen etwas zu thun,	To press somebody to do something.
Es kommt mir eine Lust an,	I have a mind.

3. All verbs compounded of the prepositions ab, an, auf, bei, ein, vor, unter, zu, nach, require the dative; Ex.

Ich habe ihm das zugedacht,	I have destined that *to* him.
Folgen Sie mir nach, mein Freund,	Follow (*after*) me my Friend.
Die Menschen können Gott nichts vorschreiben,	Man can dictate nothing *to* God.

4. Seyn and werden with an adverb, govern the dative; Ex.

Mir ist wohl,	I am well.
Er ist mir gut,	He is good to me.
Es ist mir übel,	I am not well.
Mir wird übel von ihm,	He makes me ill.

RULE IV.

Those verbs in German govern the accusative, which have no preposition, *expressed* or *understood*, after them in English.

Haben, *to have* and all active verbs govern the accusative; when we can ask Wen? *whom?* Was? *what?* Wie viel? *how much?* Wie theuer? *how dear?* Wie lang? *how long?* Wie oft? *how often?* Wie alt sind Sie? *how old are you?*

Examples.

Er liebt mich und dich,	He *loves me* and *you.*
Wen liebt er, *acc.* mich und dich,	Whom does he love? *acc.* *me* and *you.*
Ich ehre dich,	I *honor you.*
Ich schätze meinen Freund,	I *value my friend.*
Er liebt das Geld,	He *loves money.*
Ich ehre die Wahrheit,	I *honor truth.*
Ich schätze die Wissenschaften,	I *value knowledge.*

Ich ſchreibe einen Brief,	I write a letter.
Ich habe ihn länger als zwei Jahre gekannt,	I have *known him* longer than two years.
Fürchte Gott, und ehre den König,	*Fear* God, and *honor* the king.
Liebe deinen Nächſten, als dich ſelbſt,	*Love* thy neighbour, as thyself.
Es wiegt ein Pfund,	It *weighs* a pound.
Ich bin vierzig Jahre alt,	I *am* forty years old.

Observations.

1. The verbs heißen, *to call;* nennen, *to name;* lehren, *to teach;* fragen, *to ask;* ſchelten, *to abuse;* ſchimpfen, to call names, govern two accusatives; as,

Ich nenne ihn meinen Vater,	I call *him my father.*
Herr! lehre mich deine Steige,	Lord! teach *me thy ways.*
Er fragt mich etwas,	He asks *me something.*
Er ſchimpft, or er ſchalt mich einen Narren,	He calls *me a fool.*

2. When the dative and accusative are used in the same sentence, the dative is generally placed before the accusative; as,

Ich ſchreibe dir einen Brief,	I am writing *a letter to you.*
Ich ſchneide ihm eine Feder,	I am making *a pen for him.*

Practice.

I have seen the father in his room.
He has lost a sum of money.
I know the good appetite of that man.
You instruct an idle boy.
He teaches me the German language.
Cain killed his brother Abel.
I have tired myself with walking.
He has been travelling three years.
I have taught you commandments and judgments.
I have purchased that house for ten thousand dollars.
I call him a hero.
He calls him a cheat.
I pray thee, hear my speeches.
I know him by his speech.
He asked him this question.

Room, Zimmer, *n.*	German language, deutſche Sprache.
to instruct, unterrichten,	to kill, or to slay, erſchlagen.
idle, faul.	

Abel, Abel.	hero, Held, *m.*
tired, müde.	cheat, Betrug, *m.*
travelling, reiſen.	to pray, bitten.
commandment, Gebot, *n.*	speech, Rede, *f.*

Obs. Many reflective and impersonal verbs govern the accusative; as,

Ich ſchäme mich,	I am ashamed.
Ich erinnere mich,	I remember.
Ich beſinne mich,	I recollect myself.
Es gereuet mich,	I repent of it.
Es freuet mich,	I am glad of it.
Es verdrießt mich,	I am vexed at it.
Es befiehl ihm ein Schwindel,	He was seized with a giddiness.
Es befremdet mich,	I am struck with that.
Es wundert mich,	I wonder at it.
Es friert mich,	I am cold.
Es hungert mich,	I am hungry.
Es begiebt ſich.	It happens.

---

§ 3. *Moods and Tenses of Verbs.*

RULE I.

The tenses of the indicative are generally used the same in German as in English; but most of the English tenses are expressed two or three different ways.

Examples.

Present.

Ich ſchreibe, *I write, I do write,* or *I am writing.*

Ich weiß es, I know it.	Schreibt er, Is he writing.	Wiſſet Ihr es nicht? Do you not know it?

Imperfect.

Wir wußten alles, We knew all.	Schrieben Sie? *Were* you *writing?*	Ich kannte ihn nicht, I did not know him.

Perfect.

Haben Sie es geſehen? *have* you *seen* it?	Wir haben geſchrieben, We have written, or we have been writing.	Ich habe ſie nicht geſehen, I have not seen her.

Pluperfect.

Ich hatte eben zu Mittage gespeiset, I *had* just *dined*.

Hatten Sie geschrieben? Had they *been writing? or had* they written?

First Future.

Ich werde darüber froh seyn, I *shall be* glad of it.

Ich werde nicht schreiben, I *shall* not *write*, or I shall not be writing.

Second Future.

Wenn ich werde in Paris gewesen seyn, when I *shall have been* to Paris.

Wenn ich werde die Ehre gehabt haben, when I shall have had the honor.

Ich werde geschrieben haben, I shall have written.

Conditional.

Ich würde schreiben, I should, would or could write.

Ich würde geschrieben haben, I should have written.

Recapitulatory Examples on the Tenses.

Present.

Ich spreche.	I speak, or I am speaking.
Ich spreche ja,	* I do speak.
Ich bin im Begrif einen Brief zu schreiben.	I am going to write a letter.
Ich spreche (nun or jetzt,)	I am speaking (*now*).
Saget ihr es nicht?	Do you not say so (*it*)?
Ich schreibe eben,	I am writing, (I am *just* writing).
Er achtet nicht darauf,	He does not mind it.
Warum saget ihr nicht eure Lection auf?	Why do you not say your lesson?
Kommt und sagt eure Lection auf,	Come and say your lesson.
Ich bin ja am Aufsagen,	I am saying my lesson.
Senden Sie jetzt an ihm?	Are you sending to him now?
Nein, er ist eben angekommen,	No, he is just arrived.
Sagt es ja keinem Menschen,	Do not tell (*it to*) any one.
Arbeiten wir nicht?	Do we not work?
Schreibt eure Exercitia auf, / Schreiben Sie Ihre Uebungen nieder,	Write down your exercises.
Was haben wir zu bezahlen?	What have we to pay?

* For, I do speak, the Germans say. Ich spreche ja, *I speak indeed.*

The present is often used for the future and sometimes for the perfect; as,

Ich reiſe morgen ab,	I *shall set off* to-morrow.
Ich wohne hier ſchon zwanzig Jahre,	I *have lived* here already twenty years.

Imperfect.

Observe. The Germans often use the perfect, when in English we use the imperfect, as may be seen in some of the following examples.

Ich liebte,	I loved, I did love, I was loving.
Indem ich davon ſprach, trat mein Vater herein,	Whilst I was speaking of it, in came my father.
Wir haben den König geſehen, oder wir ſahen den König,	We saw the king.
Ich habe ihn ungefähr vor vierzehn Tagen geſehen,	I saw him about a fortnight ago.
Ich war geſtern da, / Ich war da geſtern, / Geſtern war ich da,	I was there yesterday. / Yesterday I was there.
Wir gingen nicht denſelben Weg,	We did not go the same way.
Ich ging geſtern dahin, / Ich bin geſtern dahin gegangen,	I did go there yesterday. / I went there yesterday.
Sind Sie nie in Berlin geweſen?	Were you never at Berlin?
Ich ſchrieb geſtern einen Brief, / Ich habe geſtern einen Brief geſchrieben,	I wrote a letter yesterday. / I did write a letter yesterday.
Ich bin geſtern am Schreiben eines Briefes geweſen,	I was writing a letter yesterday.
Schrieben Sie einen Brief geſtern? / Haben Sie geſtern einen Brief geſchrieben?	Did you write a letter yesterday?
Ich ſchrieb als er herein kam,	I was writing when he came in.
Waren Sie geſtern am Schreiben eines Briefes?	Were you writing a letter yesterday?
Wußten Sie es nicht?	Did you not know it?
(Wir waren) letzteres Jahr, letztern Monat, letztere Woche am Schreiben eines Briefes, or ſchrieben wir Briefe,	We were writing letters last year, last month, last week.
Er hat ſein Deutſches nicht aufgeſagt,	He did not say his German.
Sie haben weder ihr Franzöſiſches noch Deutſches geſchrieben,	They wrote neither their French nor German.
Der Herr ſprach zu ihm, or der Herr hat ihn geſprochen,	The Lord spoke to him.

Der Herr hat es gegeben, und der Herr hat es genommen,	The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away.
Er iſt vor einem Jahre geſtorben,	He died twelve months ago.

Perfect.

Habt ihr (eure Lection) aufgeſagt?	Have you said your lesson?
Ich habe ſie ja aufgeſagt,	I have said it, or I did say it indeed.
Habt ihr euer / Haben Sie Ihr } Exercitium geſchrieben?	Have you written your exercise?
Ich habe es nicht geſehen,	I have not seen it.
Sie haben ihre franzöſiſchen Exercitia geſchrieben,	They have written their French exercises.
Ich habe meine Aufgabe fertig,	I have done my exercise.
Wir haben den König geſehen,	We have seen the king.
Sie haben an mich geſchrieben,	You have been writing to me.
Ich habe es nie geſehen,	I have never seen it, or I never saw it.
Ein Knabe iſt ins Waſſer gefallen,	A boy has, or is fallen, into the water.
Ich habe den ganzen Tag geſchrieben und ich bin müde,	I have been writing all day and am fatigued.

Pluperfect.

Ich hatte einen Brief geſchrieben, ehe Sie ankamen,	I had written a letter before you arrived.
Hatte ſie nicht mit Ihnen geſprochen?	Had she not been speaking to you?
Ich hatte eben zu Mittage geſpeiſet,	I had just dined.
Ich hatte gegeſſen als Ihr Bruder kam,	I had dined when your brother came.
Wir reiſeten ab, ſobald wir den König geſehen hatten,	We set out as soon as we had seen the king.

First Future.

Ich werde nicht viel zu thun haben, or keine Arbeit haben,	I shall not be busy.
Wir werden ihm verbunden ſeyn,	We shall be obliged to him.
Ich werde es heute bekommen,	I shall have it to-day.
Wird er nicht arbeiten?	Will he not labor?
Sie wird Sie wieder ſehen,	She will see you again.
Ich werde quälen,	I shall torment.
Ich werde gequält werden,	I shall be tormented.
Sie werden es in meinem Cabinet finden,	You will find it in my closet.

Second Future.

Ich werde gequält worden ſeyn,	I shall have been tormented.
Ich werde gequält haben,	I shall have tormented.
Ich werde ihn geſehen haben, ehe ich Sie wieder ſehe,	I shall have seen him, before I see you again.
Sie werden Ihr Abendeſſen gehabt haben,	You will have had your supper.
Es wird geſchrieben worden ſeyn,	It will have been written.

Subjunctive.

Wenn ich das Unglück gehabt hätte,	If I had had that misfortune.
Wenn ich reich wäre, ſo hätte ich Freunde,	If I were rich, I should have friends.

Practice.

Are you writing to him (*now*)?
I assure you of my great regard, or esteem.
She is just gone out. I had just come in.
I am writing a letter to him.
In three weeks time you (*will*) see me here again.
She was playing when I came in.
Where are you going? I am going home.
We have been reading the whole night.
I never saw that. I never was there.
Have they not been playing at dice?
Had they read the letters before you went?
Were you never at Paris? No, I have never been there.
When we arrived here, we sent back our servant.
Whilst I was saying this, he ran out.
Have you read the book, which I sent you?
I shall be travelling at that time.
We have been speaking of it a long time.
Had we not been dancing?
They had not been gaming.
I did not know the author formerly.
Did he give you the money?
Shall we not be dancing? He will not be walking.

Regard, or esteem, Hochachtung, *f.*	where, wo.
just, eben.	home, nach Hauſe.
gone out, ausgegangen.	at dice, mit Würfeln.
again, wieder.	to read, leſen.
to play, ſpielen.	before, ehe.
	never, nie.

there, da.
when, da.
to send, ſchicken.
servant, Bediente, *m.*
whilst, indem.
at, zu.
to travel, reiſen.
long time, lange.
of it, davon.
to dance, tanzen,
to game, ſpielen.
author, Verfaſſer, *m.*
formerly, vormals.
money, Geld, *n.*

Observe. When the present participle in English has no government, it is rendered by the present participle in German. Ex. Sie verließ das Zimmer ſingend, she left the room singing.

RULE II.

In simple sentences either past participles, or infinitives always occupy the last place:—in compound sentences it may be otherwise, *i. e.* when relative pronouns, conjunctions, or adverbs are used.

Examples.

Ich habe einen Brief geſchrieben,	I have *written* a letter.
Ich hatte einen Brief geſchrieben,	I had *written* a letter.
Ich werde einen Brief ſchreiben,	I shall *write* a letter.
Ich bin Willens Deutſch zu lernen,	I have a mind *to learn* German.
Haben Sie das Buch geleſen, welches ich Ihnen ſchickte?	Have you *read* the book, which I *sent* you?
Wer ſein Leben erhalten will, der wird es verlieren,	*Whoever will preserve* his life, shall *lose it*.
Nachdem er dieſe Worte geſagt hatte, ging er weg,	*After* he *had* said these words, he went away.
Die Frauensperſon, welche Sie geſehen haben, iſt weggegangen,	The woman *whom* you *have* seen, is gone away.

Der Ort, wo ich geweſen bin, iſt ſchön,	The place *where* I *have* been, is beautiful.
Er fragt mich, wer dieſen Morgen bei Ihnen war,	He asks, *who was* with you this morning.
Wenn er das Buch leſen will,	*If* he *will* read that book.
Da der König in London ankam,	*When* the king *arrived* in London.
Da ich den Mann, welcher ſo edel gedacht, ehre und liebe,	*Since* I *honor* and *love* the man who has thought so nobly.

Observe. If a past participle and infinitive come together in a sentence, the infinitive must be last. Ex. Ich werde meine Arbeit in einer Stunde gethan haben, I shall *have done* my work in an hour.

Practice.

Has he *written* a letter?
I will go to see (or *visit*) my friend.
I did *come* home very late yesterday.
I will *sell* my books.
He wishes *to learn* the Latin language accurately.
This man can *speak* English, German, French and several other languages of Europe.
If I *were* rich, I should *have* friends.
The place in which (*where*) I *saw* my friend to-day.
That writer is to be esteemed, who *has* the promotion of virtue for his object.
I am sorry that he *is* sick.
Mr. Legrand is *returned* from Germany.
He has *done* his duty, therefore I cannot *complain* of him.
The man who *is* (*here*) in London.
The woman who *was* (*here*) in London.
I believe that he *was* my friend.
When it *is* time, I will *come*.

To visit, beſuchen.	to, zu.
late, ſpät.	several, verſchiedene.
to sell, verkaufen.	to speak, reden.
to wish, wünſchen.	if, wenn.
accurately, gründlich.	place, Ort, *m.*

in which, wo.	for his object, zum Zwecke.
to see, ſehen.	I am sorry, es iſt mir leid.
writer, Schriftſteller, *m.*	Germany, Deutſchland.
is to be esteemed, iſt zu ſchätzen.	duty, Schuldigkeit.
promotion, Beförderung, *f.*	to complain, ſich beklagen.

RULE III.

The subjunctive is used when doubt or uncertainty is implied.

Examples.

Ich glaubte das er todt ſey,	I thought he was dead.
Ich wünſche daß er komme,	I wish he may come.
Ich warnte dich, damit du dich in Acht nähmeſt,	I warned you, in order that you might take care of yourself.
Er ſpricht, als wenn die Sache ſchon gewiß wäre,	He speaks as if the thing were true already.
Wenn du mir dieſe Freundſchaft erzeugen könnteſt,	If you could show me this friendship.
Er glaubt es ſey nicht möglich,	He thinks (*that*) it is not possible.
Wenn Ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre,	If I were in your place.
Wenn er reich wäre (ſo) würde er nicht betteln,	If he were rich, he would not beg.
Wäre er reich, er würde nicht betteln,	Were he rich, he would not beg.
Hätte ich Bücher, ſo würde ich lernen,	Had I books, I would learn.

Practice.

I wish he may find friends.
He asked me whether I was sick.
I hope he may be happy.
I do not know whether that might have happened.
If I were rich I would do it.
They say that the king has made peace.

We believe that he might have had it.
I should have thought he had been more polite.

To ask, fragen.	they say, man ſagt.
to hope, hoffen.	peace, Friede, *m.*
to know, wiſſen.	to believe, glauben.
might have happened, geſchehen möchte.	to think, glauben.
	polite, höflich.

RULE IV.

1. Zu, *to* is generally placed before the infinitive.*

2. The infinitive without zu, follows after the verbs,

Bleiben, to continue.	Liegen, to lie.
Finden, to find.	Lehren, to teach.
Fahren und gehen, to go.	Lernen, to learn.
Heißen, to bid.	Nennen, to call.
Helfen, to help.	Reiten, to ride.
Hören, to hear.	Sehen, to see.

Thun, to do (*with*) nichts als, nothing but.

Also zu is omitted both before and after können, mögen, laſſen, dürfen, ſollen, wollen, müſſen, haben, helfen, heißen, hören, werden.

Obs. Zu is *not put* before the infinitive of verbs used substantively. Ex. Verſprechen und Erfüllen ſind zwei verſchiedene Sachen, to promise and to fulfil are two different things.

Examples with zu.

Ich war froh meinen Freund wieder zu ſehen,	I was happy *to* see my friend again.
Lieben Sie die Tugend, um glücklich zu ſeyn,	Love virtue *in order to* be happy.
Ich bitte Sie davon zu nehmen,	I request you *to* take some.
Ich erkühne mich, Ihnen meine Aufwartung zu machen,	I make bold *to* wait upon you.

* The words um zu, *in order to*, are sometimes separated.

Er ging, um ſein Geld zu bekommen,	He went *in order to* get his money.

Examples without zu.

Der Vater lehrt das Kind leſen,	The father *teaches* the child to *read*.
Ich höre ihn reden,	I hear him *talking*.
Er heißt mich gehen,	He bids me *go*.
Sie macht mich lachen,	She makes me *laugh*.
Ich habe ihn reiten ſehen,	I saw him *riding*.
Ich ſehe ihn kommen,	I see him *coming*.
Ich darf ſagen,	I dare say.
Ich kann ſagen,	I can say.
Ich laß ihn gehen,	I let him go.
Ich will kommen,	I will come.

Practice with zu.

I wish *to* speak to you.
I hope *to* find him.
I wish *to* see you.
He did all he could, *in order to* ruin me.
I came hither *to* speak to you.
I have something *to* tell you.
Give me something *to* eat and drink.

Practice without zu.

He learns to dance and ride.
I will teach you to do good.
He will not work.
We saw him go.
I heard them sing.
He helps me to write.
He helped me to defend my rights.

RULE V.

The verbs dürfen, hören, helfen, laſſen, heißen, können, mögen, müſſen, wollen, ſollen, werden, ſehen, are put in the infinitive, after another infinitive, instead of the participle.

Examples.

Er hat es ſagen dürfen, (nicht gedurft),	He has dared to say so (*it*).
Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen (nicht geholfen,)	I have helped him to work.
Ich habe ſie ſprechen hören, (nicht gehört).	I have heard them speak.
Sie hätte es thun mögen, (nicht gemacht).	She might have done it.
Du hätteſt es kaufen ſollen, (nicht geſollt)	Thou shouldst have bought it.
Ich habe es nicht glauben können (nicht gekonnt)	I could not have believed it.

Obs. The participles of lehren and lernen, are generally used instead of infinitives; as,

Wer hat Sie Franzöſiſch ſprechen gelehrt?	Who taught you to speak French?
Bei wem haben Sie reiten gelernt?	Of whom did you learn riding?

However Rabener says:

Ich habe ihn kennen lernen, (*instead of* gelernt)	I have learnt to know him.

Practice.

I have seen him ride.
He could have done it.
Who has bid you come?
Have you heard me speak?
I must have done it.
I have left my compliments.
He has bid him go.
Of whom did you learn dancing?
Who taught you to write?
I have taught her to know.

Observations on the Moods, &c.

Obs. 1. *I am*, before an infinitive active, must not be expressed ich bin ꝛc.; but ich werde, ich muß, ich ſoll ꝛc. according to the nature of the sentence.

Examples.

Ich werde aufs Land gehen,	*I am* to go into the country.
Ich muß ihn wiſſen laſſen,	*I am* to let him know.
Was muß ich bezahlen?*	What *am I* to pay?
Wenn wir darnach beurtheilt werden ſollten.	If *we were* to be judged by that.
Was ſoll ich thun?	What *am* I to do?

Obs. 2. The subjunctive is sometimes used for the participle, and the verb ſollen for the infinitive.

Examples.

Ich bin zufrieden daß er mich in Thalern bezahle.	I am satisfied with his paying me in dollars.
Ich weiß nicht was ich thun ſoll.	I do not know what to do.

Obs. 3. Haben, ſitzen, liegen, ſtehen und geben, are sometimes Englished by *to be.*

Examples.

Da haben Sie es,	There it *is.*
Sie haben Recht,	You *are* right.
*Er hat unrecht,	He *is* wrong.
Es liegt auf dem Tiſche,	It *is* upon the table.
Es ſteht unter dem Tiſche,	It *is* under the table.
Der Dorn ſitzt in meinem Finger,	The thorn *is* in my finger.
Es giebt Männer,	There are men.

CHAP. VI.

Rules for the construction of passive, neuter, compound, reflective and impersonal verbs.

§. I. *Passive.*

RULE I.

Passive verbs are formed by werden, in the simple tenses, and in the compound tenses by ſeyn and werden, or the participle worden.

---

* Sie haben Recht, is similar to the French *vous avez raison.* Er hat Unrecht, *il a tort.*

Examples.

Ich werde von meinen Freunden gelobt,	I *am praised* by my friends.
Man wird geachtet,	People, they &c. are esteemed.
Ich bin von Ihnen gerettet worden,	I have been saved by you.
Wurden sie von uns angeklagt?	Were they accused by us?
Er wurde von mir gelobt,	He was praised by me.
Sie war von uns geliebt worden,	She had been loved by us.
Wir werden von ihnen nicht gelobt,	We are not praised by them.
Ich werde gewarnt werden,	I shall be admonished.
Ich werde von ihm bedauert worden seyn,	I shall have been pitied by him.

Practice.

He is called an honest man.
Books are written by us.
I had been prevented by them.
Children will be punished.
I should have been laughed at by you.
Shall I not have been pitied by him?

Honest, ehrlicher. to punish, strafen.
to prevent, verhindern. to laugh at, auslachen.

RULE II.

Passives may be changed into actives, and active into passives, without altering the meaning of a sentence.

Examples.

Pass. Mein Bruder wird gelobt,	My brother is praised.
Act. Die Leute loben meinen Bruder,	The people praise my brother.

Pass. Ich werde gelobt von Jedermann, I am praised by every body.

Act. Jedermann lobt mich, Every body praises me.

Observe. In order to know whether the verb *to be*, must be expressed by werden, or ſeyn; the distinction is this: if the sentence can be changed into the active form, as in the above examples, werden must be used, if not, ſeyn must be used.

Examples with Seyn.

Gott ſey gelobt,	God be praised.
Er iſt verarmt,	He is empoverished.

RULE III.

The passive is used in speaking of things done by the assistance of man, and the active in expressing the operations of inanimate objects.

Examples.

Passive.	*Active.*
The coat *is making*,	The fire *is burning*,
Der Rock wird gemacht.	Das Feuer brennt.
The ship is building,	The sun is rising,
Das Schiff wird gebaut.	Die Sonne geht auf.

Practice.

The house was repairing.	The fire is lighting.
The mill is building.	The candle is burning.
The table is making.	The pot is boiling.

to repair, ausbeſſern.	to light, anzünden.
mill, Mühle, *f.*	to boil, ſieden.

---

§. II. *Neuter Verbs.*

Whenever neuter verbs are employed actively, they are conjugated with haben, *instead of* ſeyn. (*Vide Obs. page* 189.)

The following verbs take haben and ſeyn, according to the nature of the sentences in which they are used. Ausbrennen, to burn out; ausdampfen, to exhale, or evaporate; dringen, to crowd; eilen, to hasten; fortfahren, to drive on; flattern, to flutter; fließen, to flow; frieren, to freeze; folgen, to follow; bekommen, to get; platzen, to crack; reiten, to ride; ſchlagen, to strike; ausſchlagen, to kick; zurückſchlagen, to repulse; ſegeln, to sail; ſchwimmen, to swim.

Examples with Seyn.	*Examples with* Haben.
The water *is* frozen,	It *has* frozen,
Das Waſſer iſt gefroren.	Es hat gefroren.
The whole city *is* consumed;	The fire *is*, (*or has*) burnt out,
Die ganze Stadt iſt abgebrannt.	Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt.
I rode to London,	I *have* tired myself with riding,
Ich bin nach London geritten.	Ich habe mich müde geritten.
I followed him, (*his person,*)	I followed him (*his advice,*)
Ich bin ihm nachgefolgt.	Ich habe ihm gefolgt.

Practice with Seyn.	*Practice with* Haben.
The moisture is exhaled.	The coal has evaporated.
The ship has sailed to America.	The ship sailed fast.
	I have hastened my journey.
I am in haste.	The bird has fluttered a long time.
It fluttered in the net.	
I rode to Bremen.	I have ridden three days.

Moisture, Feuchtigkeit, *f.* — coal, Kohle, *f.*
ship, Schiff, *n.* — journey, Reiſe, *f.*
net, Netz, *n.*

---

§. III. *Compound Verbs.*

RULE.

The separable particles are placed at the end of the sentence, in the present and perfect tenses, and imperative mood; unless the sentence be influenced by a relative pro-

noun, or a conjunction, in which instance the verb is placed at the end of the sentence, with the particle prefixed to it.

In the following Examples the Particles are separated from the Verbs.

Present.

Ich bereite mich vor,	I *prepare.*
Ich stehe alle Tage um fünf Uhr des Morgens auf,	I *rise* every day at five o'clock in the morning.
Ich schreibe alle meine Briefe ab,	I *copy* all my letters.

Imperfect.

Sie hielten mich zu lang auf,	They *detained* me too long.
Wir standen um zwei Uhr vom Tische auf,	We *rose* from table at two o'clock.

Imperative.

Setzen Sie Ihre Erzählung fort,	*Continue* your narrative.
Nehmen Sie mir die Last ab,	*Take* the burthen *from* me.

In the following Examples the Particles are joined with the Verb.

Sie glauben nicht, daß ich alle meine Briefe abschreibe,	They do not believe *that* I *copy* all my letters.
Wenn ich nicht wegginge,	*If* I *did* not *go away.*
Der Brief des Fürsten, welchen ich gestern abschrieb,	The prince's letter, which I *copied* yesterday.

Practice.

I begin the book.
I copied the prince's letters with great care.
Go thither, along with thy brother.
He prepared for a long journey.
Copy the letters this evening.
We came back to London, in a coach, within three days.
We communicated the information to our friends.

If the sun break through the clouds.
Do you not believe that I copy all his letters.

To begin, anfangen.	to go along with, mitgehen.
to copy, abſchreiben.	to come back, zurückkommen.
care, Sorgfalt, *f.*	to communicate, mittheilen.
thither, dorthin.	to break through, durchbrechen.

Observations.

1. Zu in the infinitive, and ge in the participle, are placed between the separable particle and the verb.

Examples.

Ich verlange auszugehen,	I desire *to go out.*
Meinen Sie ihm nachzufolgen?	Do you mean *to follow* him?
Er hat ſeine Reiſe aufgeſchoben,	He has *deferred* his voyage.

2. When verbs are compounded with inseparable particles, the ge and zu are not placed between the particle and verb.

Examples.

Ich habe ſeine Verzeihung erhalten, (*not* ergehalten,)	I have *obtained* his pardon.
Ich habe ihm viel zu verdanken, (*not* verzudanken,)	I have much *to thank* him *for.*

3. When a compound verb is followed by another verb, the separable particle is put before the second verb.

Examples.

Sie fingen früh Morgens mit Sonnen Aufgang an zu ſchlagen, (*not* zu ſchlagen an,)	They began to fight early in the morning, at the rising of the sun.
Ich fing nach dreien Tagen wieder an zu geneſen, (*not* zu geneſen an,)	After three days I began to recover.

4. Verbs compounded with miß, admit ge before the particle.

Examples.

Wir haben gemißbilliget,	We have disapproved.
Er hat ſie gemißhandelt,	He has ill-treated her.

§. IV. *Reflective Verbs.*

1. Those verbs which are called reflective, have the pronouns mich, dich, &c. immediately after them in the simple

tenses: and immediately after the auxiliary verb in the compound tenses.

Examples.

Ich tröste mich und er wird sich trösten,	I comfort *myself*, and he will comfort *himself*.
Er tröstet sich mit leerer Hoffnung,	He comforts himself with vain hope.
Er hat sich mit leerer Hoffnung getröstet,	He has consoled himself with vain hope.

2. "Those verbs, by which we express things that happen of themselves, *or* inward actions of the mind, are always reflective."

Examples.

The wind changes (*itself*,)	I remember (*myself*,)
Der Wind ändert sich.	Ich erinnere mich.
The day declines (*itself*,)	I recollect (*myself*,)
Der Tag neiget sich.	Ich besinne mich.

For other particulars respecting these verbs, *Vide* the Practice and observations, which follow the conjugation, *p.* 210 *to* 212, &c.

---

§. V. *Impersonal Verbs.*

An impersonal verb is that whose agent, or nominative is unknown, or considered as such, this unknown agent is expressed in English, by the word *it*, and in German, by es.

RULE I.

The impersonal form is used to denote the affections of the body, or mind.

Examples.

Es ist mir kalt,	I am cold.
Es ist mir wohl,	I am well.
Es hungert mich, dich, ihn, sie, uns, &c.	I am, he is, thou art, she is, we are hungry.

Es däucht mir, Es kömmt mir vor,	It seems, or appears to me.
Es ſchläfert ihn,	He is sleepy.
Es verdrießt, or es ärgert ſie,	It vexes her, or them.
Es glüht, ſiedet, flammt mir im Buſen,	It glows, boils, burns in my bosom, or my bosom glows.

Practice.

I am sorry (*for it.*) I am warm. You are thirsty. I am disgusted. I am ill. It pleases me, or I am glad of it. I want money. I repent. It surprises me. It grieves me.

RULE II.

Es, *it*, is also used for *there*, before ſeyn, geben, and liegen.

Examples.

Es giebt Leute, welche ſagen,	There are people who say.
Es tönt, ſchallt, kracht in der Luft,	It sounds, resounds, cracks in the air.
Gott iſt es, dem wir unſer Leben ſchuldig ſind,	It is to God we owe our life.
Es liegen Bücher auf dem Tiſche,	There are some books upon the table.
Es rauſcht, ſauſt, weht, tobt, leuchtet um mich her,	It roars, whistles, blows, rages, lightens round me.

1. "Es is sometimes used for ſo, which is often omitted in English."

Examples.

Ich glaube es,	I believe *so.*
Sind Sie zufrieden?	Are you contented?
Nein, ich bin es nicht,	No, I am not *(so.)*

2. In answer to questions, instead of saying, es iſt mir, *it is I*; say: ich bin es, I am *it*; so, er iſt es nicht, it is not him, (he is not it); Sie ſind es nicht, it is not they, *(they are not it.)*

3. Es is sometimes used before the verb, and the real nominative is placed after, by way of explanation. Ex. Es lehrt uns die Erfahrung, experience teaches us.

RULE III.

The indefinite pronoun man, is Englished by *we, people, they, men, one* and *it*, followed by *is, was*, &c.

Observe. Man is used as *on* in French.

Examples.

Man muß wiſſen,	*We* ought to know.
Man arbeitet den ganzen Tag,	*People, they*, &c. work whole day.
Man ſagt, daß man in dieſem Lande Wein verkaufe,	*It is* said that in th wine is sold.
Man trinkt den beſten Wein,	*One* drinks the b
Man ſagt, (*on dit*,)	People say, the it is said, &c.

CHAP. VII.

Rules for the Construction of the Particip

RULE I.

The present and perfect participles, like adjectiv agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, and case: unless used adverbially.

Examples.

Ein liebender Vater,	A loving father.
Ein geliebter Vater,	A beloved father.
Der liebende Vater,	The loving father.

Der geliebte Vater,	The beloved father.
Ein reitzendes Frauenzimmer,	A charming lady.
Das reitzende Frauenzimmer,	The charming lady.
Eine reitzende Frau,	A charming woman.
Die reitzende Frau,	The charming woman.
Ein erbitterter Feind,	An embittered enemy.
Der erbitterte Feind,	The embittered enemy.
Der Feind iſt erbittert,	The enemy is embittered.
Ich fand ihn ſterbend,	I found him dying.
Die Frau iſt reitzend,	The woman is charming.
Das Frauenzimmer iſt reitzend,	That lady is charming.
[illegible]ndend weiße Schnee,	The dazzling white snow.

Practice.

[illegible]laining man.	A playful child.
[illegible]book.	A laughing woman.
[illegible]child.	A beloved daughter.
[illegible]ding.	He spoke sitting.
[illegible]as dying.	The man is dead.

RULE II.

[illegible]nt participle in English, is generally rendered by [illegible]ve in German, particularly when used as a sub-

[illegible]hen ohne zu, without, is used, ohne retains its place [illegible]s immediately before the verb.

Examples.

[illegible]aufen des Waſſers,	The running of the water.
[illegible]achte eine Stunde mit Erzählen zu,	He spent an hour in *relating* it.
Er gieng ohne etwas zu ſagen vorbei,	He passed by *without saying* any thing.
Das Reiſen iſt nützlich,	Travelling is useful.

Practice.

Boys are more fond of playing than working.
He gets his living by begging.
I am tired of standing.
I come from writing.
At the rising of the sun.
It is the boiling of the pot.
I am weary of talking.

More fond, mehr lieben.	tired, müde.
playing, ſpielen.	to rise, aufgehen.
working, arbeiten.	boiling, Kochen.
to get, verdienen.	pot, Topf, *m.*
living, Brot.	weary, müde.
by begging, mit Betteln.	talking, Reden, *n.*

Observations.

1. The present participle is sometimes rendered by als, da, nachdem, indem, und weil, ꝛc. according to the sense of the sentence.

Examples.

Als ich zu Nacht gegeſſen hatte legte ich mich ſchlafen,	*Having* supped, I laid myself down to sleep, *or* when I had supped, I laid myself down to sleep.
Da ſeine Mutter dieſes hörte, wurde ſie ungehalten,	His mother hearing this became angry.
Nachdem ich die Sache überlegt habe,	*Having* considered the matter.
Indem ich mich auf ſein Wort verließ wurde ich betrogen,	Relying upon his word I was deceived.
Wie ich aus der Straße gieng ſahe ich meinen Freund,	*Going* along the street I saw my friend.
Er lächelte, und ſchien meinen Entſchluß zu billigen,	He smiled seeming to applaud my resolution.
Nach Erblickung einer Windmühle, die ſtille ſtand,	Upon the sight of a windmill *standing* still, (*which stood still*).
Weil er ihnen nicht anſtand, ſo wurde er verworfen,	Being disliked by them, he was rejected.

2. Reflective verbs are sometimes expressed by the present participle; as,

Ich habe mich müde gegangen,	I have wearied myself by walking.

3. There are some instances in which the Germans use the present participle; as,

Lebend oder ſterbend gab er ein gutes Beiſpiel	*Living* or *dying* he set a good example.
Er fiel nieder redend,	He dropped down *speaking*.

4. The participle *going* is rendered in the following manner.

Ich bin im Begriff zu verreiſen,	I am *going* to depart.
Ich bin im Begriff nach Hauſe zu gehen,	I am *going* home.

CHAP. VIII.

Rules for the placing of Adverbs.

RULE I.

Adverbs are placed immediately after the verb, unless the object intervenes: but they must precede past participles and infinitives.

Examples.

Er kam bald,	He came soon.
Das Kind, welches in der Wiege lag, weinte bitterlich,	The child that lay in the cradle, wept bitterly.
Wir haben hier keine Bekanntſchaft,	We have no acquaintance here.
Er behandelt den Gegenſtand vortrefflich,	He treats the subject excellently.
Ich habe meinen Bruder abermal, or wieder gewarnet,	I have warned my brother again.
Käme ich zu früh, ſo würde mir die Zeit lang,	Had I come too soon, the time would have appeared long to me.
Ich werde bald meine Schulden bezahlen,	I shall *soon* pay my debts.

Practice.

He goes fast.	If he came soon.
When I run fast I perspire.	Have you spoken well?

You will hardly finish to-morrow.
He has spoken wisely.
Did you speak freely?
Have you put the hats separately?
I have heard your friend well spoken of.

RULE II.

Adverbs of time are placed before all other adverbs; and when a sentence commences with an adverb, for the sake of emphasis, then the nominative follows the verb.

Examples.

Sie haben heute nicht ſtudirt,	You have not studied to-day.
Heute haben Sie nicht ſtudirt,	You have not studied to-day
Wir waren geſtern im Schauſpiele,	We were at the play yesterday.
Geſtern ſaß ich auf einer Bank beim Mondlichte,	Yesterday I was sitting on a bench by moonlight.
Er wird morgen hier ſeyn,	He will be here to-morrow.

Practice.

I was with him yesterday in the evening.
I have read the book to-day.
I did not sleep there last night.
He has seen the king to-day.

CHAP IX.

Rules respecting Prepositions.

RULE I.

The prepositions anſtatt, or ſtatt, instead of halben, or halber, on account of; wegen, on account of, because of: ungeachtet, notwithstanding, &c. require the genitive: (Vide. Prep. p. 227.) Halben or halber, is placed after the

noun; but wegen, and ungeachtet, may be used either before or after. An is sometimes separated from ſtatt.

Examples.

*An des Fürſten ſtatt (or anſtatt des Fürſten) war ein Miniſter da,	A minister was there instead of the prince.
An meiner ſtatt, or anſtatt meiner,	In my stead, or instead of me.
An Kindes ſtatt annehmen,	To adopt.
Des Königs halber,	For the sake of the king, or on account of &c.
†Vergnügens halber,	On account of (*or for the sake of*) pleasure.
Wegen des Nachbars, or des Nachbars wegen,	On account of the neighbour.
Des langen Prozeſſes halben iſt der Mann verarmt,	The man was empoverished *by* (*or on account of*) the long trial.

Practice.

Instead of the brother. In his stead, or instead of him.
Notwithstanding his art he was, (*however*) overreached.
I do it only for the sake of the company.
He does it out of friendship.
I love him notwithstanding his ugliness.
On account of his industry.

Art, Geſchicklichkeit, *f.*	company, Geſellſchaft, *f.*
overreach, übertreffen.	ugliness, Häßlichkeit, *f.*
I do it only, Ich thue es bloß.	industry, Fleiß, *m.*

Obs. Halben and wegen may be united with mein, dein, ſein, ihr, unſer, euer, thus; meinet-wegen, or halben, instead of meinerwegen &c. Ex. Er that es meinet-halben, deinet-, ſeinet-, ihret-, unſert-, euret-wegen or halben, he did it on *my, thy, his, her, our, your*, account.

---

* When a preposition comes first, the nominative follows the verb.

† Halben is used when the article is omitted.

RULE II.

The prepositions aus, außer, bei, &c. have the dative after them. (*Vide Prep. p.* 228.) Entgegen, zunächſt, and zuwider, always follow the substantive, and nach, likewise may when it signifies, *according to.*

Examples.

Aus, außer, *out of* &c.

Ich ſehe aus ſeinem Briefe,	I see *by* his letter.
Ich ſchließe aus ſeinem Betragen,	I infer *from* his conduct.
Sie kamen aus der Kirche,	They came *out of* the church.
Gehen Sie mir aus den Augen,	Go *out of* my sight.
Er ſpeiſete außer dem Hauſe zu Mittage,	He dined *out of* the house.
Er iſt aus einer alten Familie,	He is *of* an ancient family.

Bei.

Er iſt bei meinem Bruder,	He is *with* my brother.
Ich will bei ihm anſprechen,	I will call *upon* him.
Es iſt bei dem Schneider,	It is *at* the tailor's.
Bei Tage,	*By* day, or *in the* day time.
Sie ſtand bei mir,	She stood *by*, or *near* me.

Entgegen.

Er reitet dem Winde entgegen,	He rides *against* the wind.
Dieſes iſt der Natur der Dinge entgegen,	This is *contrary to* the nature of things.

Nach.

Meiner Meinung nach iſt er auf einem falſchen Wege,	*According to* my opinion he is in a wrong way.

Nach.

Dieſer Rechnung nach, / Nach dieſer Rechnung,	*According to* this account.
Ich gehe nach London,	I am going *to* London.
Als ich nach Hauſe ging,	When I went home.

Mit.

Wollen Sie mit mir kommen?	Will you come *with* me?
Ich habe Mitleiden mit ihm,	I take compassion *on* him.
Er ſchnitt es mit einem Meſſer entzwei,	He cut it in two *with* a knife.

Seit.

Seit dem Tode ſeines Vaters,	*Since* the death of his father.

Von.

Er ſpricht von mir,	He speaks *of* me.
Sie kömmt eben von meinem Bruder gekommen,	She is just come *from* my brother.
Vom Anfange der Welt,	From the beginning of the world.

Zu, to &c.

Ich bin zu Hauſe geweſen,	I have been *at* home.
Zu einer andern Zeit,	*At* another time.

Zunächſt.

Er ſaß mir zunächſt,	He sat *next to* me.

Zuwider.

Dieſes iſt den Geſetzen der Natur zuwider,	This is *contrary to* the laws of nature.

Practice.

Do not drink out of this glass.
I infer from his conduct.
He comes out of the garden.
I was with my brother. He sat near me.
I thought your friend was with you.

Are there fine walks near the house?
To work by candle light. By night.
My father opposes this design.
If we compare him with his brother.
I have received a letter by the post.
Most of us were of the same opinion.
That book treats of the immortality of the soul.
I shall come to you to night.
He was unhappy till the last moment of his life.

RULE III.

The prepositions durch, für, ꝛc. have the accusative after them. (*Vide Prep. p.* 230.) Durch is sometimes placed after its substantive.

Examples.

Durch, *through.*

Ich reiſete durch gefährliche Wälder,	I travelled *through* dangerous forests.
Durch ihn bin ich glücklich,	Through him I am happy.
Er ſieht durch das Fenſter,	He looks *through* the window.
Durch Sturm erobert,	Taken by storm.
Ich lag die ganze Nacht durch im Schlafrocke in einem Bette,	I lay in my bed the whole night *through* in my night gown.

Für, *for.*

Für wen ſtimmt ihr?	For whom are you? *or for whom do you vote?*
Es iſt hier kein Platz für ſie,	There is no place *for* them here.
Er fochte für das allgemeine Beſte,	He fought *for* the public good.
Mein Haus iſt für Sie und Ihre Freunde offen,	My house is open *for* you and your friends.
Ich habe ihn für Sie gehalten,	I took him *for* you.

Gegen, *towards, to, &c.*

Die Franzoſen marſchirten gegen den Rhein,	The French marched *towards* the Rhine.
Es iſt gegen meine Pflicht,	It is *against* my duty.
Sie iſt mildthätig gegen die Armen,	She is charitable *towards* the poor.
Es iſt gegen die Ruſſen gerichtet,	It is done *in opposition to* the Russians.
Gottes unendliche Barmherzigkeit gegen uns hat keine Gränzen,	God's infinite mercy *towards* us has no limits.
Er iſt nichts gegen ihn,	He is nothing *to* him.

In the following sentence gen is substituted for gegen.

Er richtete ſeine Augen gen Himmel,	He turned his eyes *towards* heaven.

Ohne, *without*, French *sans*

Daß weiß ich ohne dich,	I know it *without* that.
Ich kann nicht ohne einen Freund leben,	I cannot live *without* a friend.
Er iſt ohne Hut ausgegangen,	He is gone out *without* a hat.
Ich werde ohne Sie nichts thun,	I will do nothing *without* you.
Es iſt ohne Zweifel das Beſte was Sie thun können,	It is *without* doubt the best thing you can do.

Um, *about, round, &c.*

Sie ſitzen um den Tiſch,	They sit *about* the table.
Das Schnupftuch war ihr um den Kopf gebunden,	The handkerchief was tied *round* (*about*) her head.
Ich ging um die Stadt herum ſpazieren,	I walked *round about* the town.
Um wie viel Uhr?	At what o'clock?
Um zwei Uhr,	At two o'clock.

Einen Tag um den andern,	Every other day.
Ich bin den ganzen Tag um ihn,	I am all day *with* him (*about* him).
Um das Leben kommen,	To lose one's life.
Ich lobe dich um deinen Fleiß,	I praise you *for* your diligence.
Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung,	I beg your pardon.

Wider, *against, contrary to.*

Wider seine Gewohnheit,	*Contrary to* his custom.
Verschwor er sich wider den König?	Did he conspire *against* the king?
Es ist wider Ihre Pflicht,	It is *against* your duty.

Observe. Wieder, signifies *again*; as,

Hat er nicht wieder an Sie geschrieben?	Did he not write to you *again?*

Practice.

Athens flourished by (*through*) just laws.
I am happy through him.
He gained his reputation by (*through*) his good conduct.
All things were created by (*through*) the word of God.
This passage is too obscure for me.
He was a learned man for those times.
I board for six dollars a week.
I have paid ten dollars for it.
Do as you would be done by, or do unto others as you would, that others should do unto you.
You are very kind *to* me, (*towards me.*)
They marched against the enemy.
Four thousand men, besides women and children.
There is seldom a week without some feast of this kind.
I cannot do it without the consent of my father.
It was much about the same time.
This picture was sold for five guineas.
She sold her house at a very high price.
I requested nothing of him but what was just.
I am very sorry for you.
I shall come again directly.

RULE IV.

When motion *to a place* is expressed by the prepositions an, auf, hinter, &c. the accusative is required; but if they express motion, or rest *in a place*, the dative is used. This distinction may be made intelligible, by asking the question *when? where?* or *in what place?* then the answer will be in the dative; but if we ask *whereto?* or *to what place?* the answer will be in the accusative.

Examples.

A. Ich gehe in die Kirche, I am going into the church, or I go to the church, (*whereto?*) answer, to the church.

In this sentence the accusative is used, because motion towards the object is implied.

D. Ich gehe in der Kirche, I go in the church, (*where?*) answer, in the church.

Here the dative is used, because motion in a place is implied.

D. Ich ſtehe in der Kirche, I stand in the church, (*where?*)

Here again the dative is used, because rest in a place is implied.

D. Er ſitzt auf dem Stuhle, (wo?)* He sits on the chair, (*where?*)

A. Er ſetzt ſich auf den Stuhl, (wohin?) He sets, (*or places*) himself upon the chair.

D. Es liegt auf dem Tiſche, (wo?) It lies upon the table.

A. Er legt etwas auf den Tiſch, (wohin?) He puts something on the table.

D. Er ſteht an der Wand, (wo?) He stands against the wall.

A. Er ſtellt ſich an die Wand, (wohin?) He places himself against the wall.

---

* If we can ask wo? woran? an wem? in German the dative must be used, (wo? *where?* woran? *whereon? whereat? whereby?* an wem? *to whom?*) but the accusative is used if we can ask wohin? (*whither? what way?*) an wen? *whom?*

D. Die Reihe iſt an mir, (an wem?) — It is my turn.

A. Die Reihe kommt an mich, (an wen?) — It comes to my turn.

In the following instances the dative is used, because a state of rest is implied:

Hinter der Kirche wohnt der Prediger, — The preacher lives *behind* the church.

In der Stadt iſt Feuer, — *In* the town is fire.

Neben der Thür hängt ſein Bildniß, — His likeness hangs *near* the door.

Ueber mir wohnt ein Künſtler, — An artist lives *above* me.

Unter mir iſt ein Keller, — *Under* me is a cellar.

Vor dem Hauſe ſteht ein Baum, — A tree stands *before* the house.

Zwiſchen den Bergen liegt mein Garten, — My garden lies between the mountains.

Practice.

Accusative.	*Dative.*
He goes to every place.	He lies on the ground.
I sat down at the table.	He sat between the brother and the sister.
Put every thing in its right place.	He is writing at the desk.
Lay it upon the table.	The book lies upon the table.
He mounted the hill in great haste.	There sits a bird upon a tree.
	It lies behind the door.
He writes on fine paper.	He is in the school.
All our hopes are founded on God's bounty.	On his arrival in London.
	They live in peace together.
He went behind the door.	He stood near me.
He put the book into his pocket.	A friend is known in time of need.
We go to school.	His room is above mine.
When it comes to your turn.	I fell asleep over the book.
He leaped over a brook.	He was occupied with a work.
He writes on history.	It was the custom among the Greeks.
It was divided among them.	
To throw something before the door.	To fly before one's enemy.

CHAP. X.

Of Conjunctions.

RULE I.

The conjunctions und, aber, ſondern, weder, &c. connect similar cases, moods and tenses.

Examples.

Zeit und Stunde ſind noch nicht da,	The time and hour are not yet come.
Der Glanz der Sonne, des Mondes, und der Sterne,	The brightness of the sun, moon, and stars.
Gieb es dem Vater und dem Sohne, (not den Sohn,)	Give it to the father and (*to the*) son.
Ich kenne die Frau, aber ich kenne nicht den Mann,	I know the wife, but I do not know the husband.
Ich trinke weder Kaffee, noch Thee, noch Chocolate,	I drink neither coffee, tea, nor chocolate.
Was wir wünſchten und hofften, (not hoffen,)	What we wished and hoped.

Practice.

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my word shall not pass away.

I know neither his father nor brother.

Time and chance are things on which much depends.

He does nothing but eat, drink, and sleep.

I dined with him yesterday and the day before yesterday, and I shall dine there again to-day.

I will neither eat nor drink.

Fear God and honor the king.

To do good, and to shun evil, is the duty of all men.

Will pass away, werden vergehen.
on which, von denen.
much depends, vieles abhängt.
he does nothing but, er thut weiter nichts als.
fear, fürchten
honor, ehren.
to shun, meiden.

RULE II.

Some conjunctions require ſo after them in the German, (*Vide p.* 237 and 238.) which is not expressed in English. This throws the nominative after the verb in the subsequent sentence.

Examples.

Wann es Zeit iſt, ſo werde ich kommen,	When it is time I will come.
Ob ich gleich wenig habe, ſo bin ich doch zufrieden,	Though I have little, yet I am contented.
Wann ihr wieder kommet, ſo will ich es euch geben,	When you come again, I will give it you.
Wenn Sie es thun, ſo ſind Sie zu tadeln,	If you do it, you are to blame.
Als wir zu Abend gegeſſen hatten, ſo giengen wir ſpatzieren,	Having supped, we took a walk.

Practice.

If I were rich, I should have friends.

Since, or because it is so fine, we will take a walk.

However handsome she may be, yet, or nevertheless she is not amiable.

Having this opportunity, I could not omit writing to you.

If you will come to me, I will give it you.

When I see him, I will tell it to him.

If we say yes, he also says yes.

Since, weil ſolches.	amiable, liebenswürdig.
fine, ſchönes.	omit, unterlaſſen.
we will, ſo wollen wir.	

RULE III.

The conjunctions obſchon, obgleich, obwohl, have generally ob separated from them, when a personal pronoun is the nominative; but when the nominative is not a personal pronoun, ob is not separated.

Examples.

Ob er ſchon reich iſt, (or obſchon er reich iſt,) ſo iſt er doch unglücklich,	Though he is rich, yet he is unhappy.
Ob er gleich dieſes ſagt,	Though he says this.
Ob ich wohl gern helfen wollte, nichts deſto weniger iſt es mir wegen meiner Armuth unmöglich,	Although I would very willingly help, it is nevertheless impossible, on account of my poverty.
Obgleich dieſes Pferd kein Engländer iſt,	Although this is no English horse.

Practice.

Though I do not know.

Although we are rich, yet we cannot assist every body.

Though he knew she hated him, yet he insisted on marrying her.

Although you are learned, yet there is still much that you do not know.

Though you are older than he, yet I doubt whether you be so learned.

Though his proposition met with some opposition.

Know, weiß.
every body, allen Leuten.
hated, haßte.
insisted, beſtand darauf.
proposition, Vorſchlag.

RULE IV.

The conjunction daß, expressed or understood, requires the indicative, when a certainty is spoken of; but the subjunctive when desire, doubt or uncertainty is implied, and when the verb which goes before is conditional, either simple or compound.

Indicative.

Wir wiſſen, daß Cröſus reich geweſen iſt,	We know that Crœsus was rich.
Ich verſichere dich, daß ich dein Freund bin,	I assure thee that I am thy friend.

Ich weiß er wird heute ankommen,	I know, (*that*) he will arrive to-day.
Ich glaube es iſt Zeit,	I believe it is time.

Subjunctive.

Ich wünſche, daß er es nicht gethan hätte, (*or*,)	I wish that he had not done it, (*or*.)
Ich wünſche er hätte es nicht gethan,	I wish he had not done it.
Er will nicht glauben, daß ich ſein Freund ſey,	He will not believe that I am his friend.
Er fürchtete, er möchte ihn ſchlagen, or daß er ihn ſchlagen möchte,	He was afraid, *that* he might beat him.
Würde man glauben, daß es möglich wäre,	Would one think it were possible.

Examples.

Indicative.

I believe he is at home.
We know *that* he is a rich man.
He is of that humor, that no one can agree with him.
I am sorry I have not seen your sister.
Dost thou believe *that* thou art a sinner?
I know *that* it is wrong.

Subjunctive.

I was afraid (*that*) you would not come.
I hope your sister will marry my brother.
We believe that he might have had it.
They tell me that there has been thunder.
Our friend maintains that this will be a fruitful year.

Observe. Daß is sometimes omitted after an expression which implies *a wish*, *a hope*, *a prayer*, or *an assurance*; as in the following, and in some of the preceding examples.

Ich wünſche, Gott wolle Sie in ſeinen Schutz nehmen,	I wish God may take you under his protection.
Ich hoffe Sie werden es nicht übel nehmen,	I hope you will not take it amiss.

Ich bitte Sie, geben Sie ſich keine Mühe, — I beg you would give yourself no trouble.
Er verſicherte mich, es wäre wahr, — He assured me it was true.
Ich bitte, Sie wollen es annehmen, — I beg you will accept of it.

N. B. The word *but* is differently expressed.

1. At the beginning of a sentence, by aber, allein; as,

So ſagen Sie, aber (or allein) ich glaube es nicht, they say so, *but* I do not believe it.

2. *But* is expressed by ſondern, when the contrary of a negation is used; as,

Sie ſind nicht meine Freunde, ſondern meine Feinde, they are not my friends, *but* my enemies.

3. *But* signifying *only*, is expressed by nur; as,

Er hatte nur einen einzigen Freund, he had *but*, (*or only*) one friend.

4. *But* with words expressive of time or age, is erſt; as,

Sie iſt erſt ſechzehn Jahr alt, she is *but* sixteen years old.
Es iſt erſt zwei Uhr, it is *but* two o'clock.

5. *But* after nouns or pronouns of negation, is expressed by als; as, nichts als, or nichts anders als, nothing *but*; niemand als, nobody *but*.

6. *But* used in the sense of *except*, is außer, ausgenommen; as,

Es iſt das letzte Haus außer einem, it is the last house *but* one.

Sie ſind alle fleißig, ausgenommen ihr, They are all diligent *but* you.

7. *But* after *I do not doubt*, signifies *that*, daß; as,

Ich zweifle nicht, daß Sie mein Freund ſind, I do not doubt, *but* you are my friend.

FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

Erſtes Geſpräch.

First Dialogue.

Guten Morgen mein Herr, Madame, Mamſell, or Mademoiſelle,	Good morning, Sir, Madam, Miss.
Guten Tag, mein Herr, ꝛc.	Good day, Sir, &c.
Guten Abend,	Good evening.
Gute Nacht,	Good night.
Wie befinden Sie ſich, mein Herr?	How do you do, Sir?
Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen,	Very well, I thank you.
Ich befinde mich ſehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen,	I am very well, I thank you.
Es iſt mir lieb Sie zu ſehen,	I am glad to see you.
Ich hoffe Sie ſind wohl,	I hope you are well.
Nicht ſehr wohl,	Not very well.
Ich habe Sie lange nicht geſehen,	I have not seen you for a long time.
Wo ſind Sie geweſen?	Where have you been?
Ich bin in Paris geweſen,	I have been in Paris.
Wie befindet ſich Ihr Herr Bruder?	How does your brother do?
Er iſt ziemlich wohl,	He is tolerably well.
Er befindet ſich ziemlich wohl,	
Ich glaube er befindet ſich wohl,	I believe he is well.
Er befand ſich geſtern Abends wohl,	He was well last night.
Wie befinden ſich Ihr Herr Vater und Ihre Frau Mutter?	How are your father and mother.
Meine Mutter befindet ſich nicht wohl,	My mother is not well.
Sie befand ſich geſtern früh nicht wohl,	She was ill yesterday morning.
Es thut mir leid,	I am sorry for it.

Zweites Geſpräch.

Second Dialogue.

Was iſt die Uhr?	What o'clock is it?
Wie viel Uhr iſt es?	
Wie viel iſt die Uhr?	

Es iſt ein Uhr,	It is one o'clock.
Es iſt zwei Uhr,	It is two o'clock.
Es iſt zwölf Uhr,	It is twelve o'clock.
Es iſt ein Viertel nach zwölf,	It is a quarter past twelve.
Es iſt ein Viertel auf eins,	
Es iſt halb ein Uhr,	It is half past twelve.
Es iſt halb eins,	
Es iſt drei Viertel auf eins,	It wants a quarter to one.
Es fehlt ein Viertel zu eins,	
Es iſt ein Viertel auf drei,	It is a quarter past two.
Es iſt zwanzig Minuten nach zwei,	It is twenty minutes past two.
Es iſt zwanzig Minuten vor acht,	It is twenty minutes to eight.
Wie viel fehlt es zu zehn ?	How much does it want of ten?
Wie viel iſt es auf zehn ?	
Es fehlt zehn Minuten zu zehn,	It is ten minutes to ten.
Es iſt funfzig Minuten auf zehn,	It wants ten minutes to ten.
Es iſt zehn Minuten vor zehn,	
Wann ſind Sie gekommen ?	When did you come ?
Ich kam ungefähr um vier Uhr,	I came about four o'clock.
Es ſchlug eben ſieben Uhr,	It just struck seven o'clock.
Hat es ſchon geſchlagen ?	Has it already struck?
Es wird bald acht ſchlagen,	It will soon strike eight.
Wie viel ſchlägt es jetzt?	What does it strike now?
Es kann auf den Schlag neun ſeyn,	It may be on the stroke of nine.
Das iſt Ihre Zeit zu frühſtücken, nicht wahr?	That is your time for breakfasting, is it not ?

Drittes Geſpräch.

Third Dialogue.

Sprechen Sie Deutſch, mein Herr?	Do you speak German, Sir ?
Ich ſpreche es ein wenig,	I speak it a little.
Ich verſtehe es beſſer als ich es ſprechen kann,	I understand it better than I can speak it.
Sprechen Sie mit mir,	Speak with me.
Verſtehen Sie mich?	Do you understand me ?
Sprechen Sie mit ihm, (ihr,)	Speak with him, (her.)
Habe ich richtig ausgeſprochen?	Did I pronounce right?
Sie ſprechen ſehr gut Deutſch,	You speak German very well.
Sie ſchmeicheln mir,	You flatter me.
Sind Sie in Deutſchland geweſen?	Have you been in Germany ?
Nein, niemals, aber ich lerne die deutſche Sprache,	No, never, but I learn the German language.
Wie lange haben Sie gelernt?	How long have you learnt?
Fünf Monathe,	Five months.
Das iſt nur eine kurze Zeit, ich wundere mich, daß Sie ſchon ſo gut ſprechen,	That is but a short time, I wonder you speak so well already.

Was denken Sie von der deutschen Sprache?	What do you think of the German language?
Ich denke sie (es) ist eine sehr nützliche Sprache,	I think it is a very useful language.
Sie ist sehr wortreich,	It is very copious.
Verstehen Sie was Sie lesen?	Do you understand what you read?
Ich verstehe mehr als ich reden kann,	I understand more than I can speak.
Wie nennen Sie das auf Deutsch?	What do you call that in German?
Lassen Sie uns Deutsch sprechen,	Let us speak German.
Das ist ein gutes Mittel, es zu lernen,	That is a good way to learn it.
Mit wem sprechen Sie?	With whom do you speak?
Was sagen Sie?	What do you say?
Wovon sprechen Sie?	Of what do you speak?
Sprechen Sie zu mir?	Do you speak to me?
Sprechen Sie ein wenig lauter,	Speak a little louder.

Viertes Gespräch.

Fourth Dialogue.

Was ist es für Wetter?	What kind of weather is it?
Es ist schön (schönes) Wetter,	It is fine weather.
Scheint die Sonne?	Does the sun shine?
Ja, mein Herr, und es ist sehr warm,	Yes, Sir, and it is very warm.
Ist es heute gut Wetter gewesen?	Has it been good weather today?
Das Wetter ist den ganzen Tag schön gewesen,	The weather has been fine the whole day.
Wie ist das Wetter?	How is the weather?
Es ist nicht zu warm und nicht zu kalt,	It is neither too warm nor too cold.
Das Wetter hat sich geändert,	The weather has changed.
Es ist sehr windig,	It is very windy.
Die Wolken sind sehr dick,	The clouds are very thick.
Ich fürchte, wir werden Regen bekommen,	I fear we shall have rain.
Es rieselt, es wird regnen,	It drizzles, it will rain.
Es wird bald regnen,	It will soon rain.
Es fängt an zu regnen, schneien,	It begins to rain, to snow.
Es ist schlechtes (schlecht) Wetter,	It is bad weather.
Es ist schmutzig,	It is dirty.
Es ist trocken, naß, regnicht, stürmisch, windig, veränderlich Wetter,	It is dry, wet, rainy, stormy, windy, changeable weather.

Das Wetter klärt sich auf,	The weather clears up.
Dieser Regen wird bald vorüber seyn	This rain will soon be over.
Wir werden Donner haben,	We shall have some thunder.
Der Donner brüllt,	The thunder roars.

Fünftes Gespräch.

Fifth Dialogue.

Wo gehen Sie hin?	Where are you going?
Ich gehe nach London,	I am going to London.
Er gehet nach Deutschland,	He is going to Germany.
Wo wohnt er jetzt?	Where does he live now?
Er wohnt in der Stadt Hannover,	He lives in the town of Hanover.
Er gehet durch (über) Frankreich,	He is going through (by the way of) France.
Er ist in (zu) London, Paris, Neapel, Rom, Wien, Petersburg gewesen,	He has been in (at) London, Paris, Naples, Rome, Vienna, Petersburgh.
Meine Schwester ist in (zu) Rom gewesen,	My sister has been at Rome.
Mein Bruder war in Amsterdam gewesen,	My brother had been at Amsterdam.
Ich bin in (zu) London,	I am in (at) London.
Ich gehe ins (aufs) Land, / Ich gehe in das (auf das) Land,	I am going into the country.
Wo kommen Sie her?	Where do you come from?
Ich komme von (aus) dem Lande,	I come from (out of) the country.
Ich komme von (aus) der Stadt,	I come from (out of) the city.
Ich komme aus (von) der Straße,	I come out of (from) the street.
Wir kommen von der Börse,	We come from change.
Ich gehe nach Hause,	I am going home.
Ich komme aus (von) der Kirche,	I come from church.
Sie geht in die Kirche,	She is going to the church.
Er geht nach Hause,	He is going home.
Ich komme aus dem Zimmer,	I come out of the room.
Sie kommt aus der Stube,	She comes out of the parlour.
Ich gehe in die Kammer, in die Küche, in den Keller, &c.	I am going into the chamber, into the kitchen, into the cellar, &c.
Sie sind in der Kammer, in der Küche, in dem Keller, in dem Hofe, &c.	They are in the chamber; in the kitchen, in the cellar, in the yard, &c.

Sechstes Gespräch.

Sixth Dialogue.

Wie alt sind Sie?	How old are you?

Ich bin zwanzig Jahr alt,	I am twenty years old.
Sie sind älter als ich,	You are older than I.
Was ist Ihr Alter?	What is your age?
Ich bin noch nicht so alt,	I am not yet so old.
Er ist vierzig Jahr alt,	He is forty years old.
Ist Ihre Frau Mutter sehr alt?	Is your mother very old?
Sie ist fast neunzig Jahre alt,	She is almost ninety.
Ich fange an alt zu werden,	I begin to grow old.
Ich bin älter als Sie glauben,	I am older than you think.
Sie sind jedoch nicht sechzig Jahre,	Yet you are not sixty.
Nicht völlig; allein ich bin doch fünf und dreißig,	Not quite; I am only thirty five.
Sie sind noch sehr jung; Sie sind in der Blüthe Ihres Alters,	You are very young still; you are in the bloom of your age.
Ich hoffe wohl das Alter von achtzig Jahren zu erreichen, wie mein seliger Vater, der vor dreißig Jahren gestorben ist,	I hope to reach the age of eighty, like my deceased father who died thirty years ago.

Proverbs and Idiomatic Expressions, &c.

1. Ein rechtschaffner Mann ist das edelste Werk Gottes,	An honest man is the noblest work of God.
2. Jung gewohnt, alt gethan,	What we are accustomed to in youth, we do in old age.
3. Mit der Zeit pflückt man Rosen,	Be patient, and in time you will succeed.
4. Wissenschaft herrscht immer über Unwissenheit,	Knowledge will always predominate over ignorance.
5. Müßiggang ist aller Laster Anfang,	Idleness is the beginning of all vice.
6. Nach gethaner Arbeit ist gut ruhen,	After labor rest is sweet.
7. Gesundheit ist der edelste Schatz,	Health is above wealth.
8. Arbeit macht uns frohe Tage, Trägheit wird uns selbst zur Plage,	Labor is a source of pleasure; idleness of pain.
9. Durch Schaden wird man klug,	Through misfortune we become prudent.
10. Wer viel schläft, lebt wenig,	Whoever sleeps much, lives little.
11. Tugend kann nicht genug belohnt werden,	Virtue is worth any price.
12. Glücklich ist der, den Unglück Weisheit gelehrt hat,	Happy is he, to whom distress has taught wisdom.

13. Armuth schändet nicht, aber Thorheit und Laster,
Folly and vice disgrace, but poverty does not.

14. Die Morgenstunde hat Gold im Munde,
The morning hours are as valuable as gold.
Early to bed, and early to rise, make a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

15. Das ist mir lieb,
I am glad of that.

16. Friede ernährt, Unfriede verzehrt,
Peace nourishes, discord consumes.

17. Was deines Amts nicht ist, da laß deinen Vorwitz,
Do not trouble yourself about what is not your business.

18. Gewohnheit ist die andere Natur,
Custom is a second nature.

19. Gleich und Gleich gesellt sich gern,
Birds of a feather, flock together.

20. Das Werk lobt den Meister,
The work commends the master.

21. Ungerechtes Gut gedeihet nicht,
Ill got goods seldom prosper.

22. Ein gutes Gewissen ist ein sanftes Ruhekissen,
A good conscience is a soft pillow to rest on.

23. Böse Beispiele verderben gute Sitten,
Bad examples corrupt good manners.

24. Eine Hand wäschet die andere,
One hand washes the other.
One good turn deserves another.

25. Wie die Arbeit so der Lohn,
According to the work, so will be the reward.

26. Was man gern thut, wird einem leicht,
What we do willingly, becomes easy.

27. Ueberfluß macht Ueberdruß,
Excess causes surfeit.

28. Auch die Sonne ist nicht ohne Flecken,
The best man has his faults.

29. Unglück ist die Schule der Weisheit,
Misfortune is the school of wisdom.

30. Mit dem Hut in der Hand, kommt man durch's ganze Land,
With our hat in our hand, we may go through every land.

31. Besser spät als gar nicht,
Better late than never.

32. Wer viel anfängt, endet wenig,
Whoever begins many things, finishes few.

33. Der Geiz ist eine Wurzel alles Uebels,
Avarice is the root of all evil.

34. Lerne dich selbst kennen,
Learn to know thyself.

35. Eile mit Weile,
Soft and fairly goes far.

36. Was giebts?
What is the matter?

37. Hochmuth kommt vor dem Fall,
Pride will have a fall.

38. Aus Pfennigen werden Groschen, und aus Groschen Thaler,
Pence become shillings, and shillings become pounds.

39. Thue recht; ſcheue niemand,	Do right, fear nobody.
40. Du magſt wohl ſchön und vornehm ſeyn; doch bilde dir darauf nichts ein,	Although thou mayst be handsome and distinguished, yet do not be conceited.
41. Man iſt damit man lebt, man lebt nicht um zu eſſen.	We ought to eat to live, and not live to eat.
42. Mache nicht die Rechnung ohne den Wirth.	Do not reckon without the host.
43. Undank iſt der Welt Lohn,	Ingratitude is the world's reward.
44. Gute Bäume tragen zeitig,	Good trees bear in due season.
45. Genieſſe was dir Gott beſchieden,	Enjoy what God has appointed to you.
Entbehre gern was du nicht haſt,	What you have not, dispense with.
Ein jeder Stand hat ſeinen Frieden,	Every station has its comforts.
Ein jeder Stand hat ſeine Laſt,	Every station has its troubles.
46. Bete und arbeite,	Pray and work.
47. Jedem das Seine,	Let every one have his own.
48. Das verſteht ſich von ſelbſt,	That follows of course.
49. Das Kleid macht nicht den Mann,	Dress does not complete the man.
50. Fröhlich in Ehren kann niemand wehren,	None can prevent us being happy if we act honorably.
51. Ein Arbeiter iſt ſeines Lohnes werth,	The labourer is worthy of his hire.
52. Wer leicht glaubt, wird leicht betrogen,	Whoever easily believes, is easily deceived.
53. Ehrlich währt am längſten,	Honesty holds out longest, or Honesty is the best policy.
54. Lotterieloose ſind Eingangzettel ins Armenhaus.	Lottery tickets, are tickets of admission to the poor house.
55. Noth lehrt beten.	Necessity teaches us to pray.
56. Abgeredet vor der Zeit, giebt nachher keinen Streit,	An agreement beforehand, causes no dispute afterwards.
57. Der Hehler iſt ſo gut wie der Stehler.	The receiver is as bad as the thief.
58. Wer ſich in Gefahr begiebt, kommt leicht um,	Whoever ventures into danger, will be easily destroyed.
59. Der Horcher an der Wand hört ſeine eigene Schand,	The listener behind the wall, hears his own disgrace, or Listeners hear no good of themselves.
60. Wer andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt endlich ſelbſt darein,	Whoever digs a pit for another, ultimately falls into it himself.
61. Was Hänschen nicht lernt, lernt Hans nimmer mehr,	If we do not learn when young, we shall never learn when old.

62. Ende gut alles gut,
63. Von Verſtorbenen und Abweſenden ſoll man nichts Böſes reden,
64. Wer wenig hat, kann wenig miſſen,
65. Wo nichts iſt, da hat der Kaiſer ſein Recht verloren,
66. Es iſt beſſer allein, als in ſchlechter Geſellſchaft ſeyn,
67. Sage mir mit wem du umgehſt, ſo will ich dir ſagen wer du biſt,
68. Wer im Sommer nichts ſammelt, wird im Winter nichts zu eſſen haben,
69. Hunger iſt der beſte Koch,
70. Wer nichts wagt, gewinnt auch nichts,
71. Er hat Ehre damit eingelegt,
72. Er ſchlägt in ſich,
73. Er iſt dahinter gekommen,
74. Ich frage nichts darnach,
75. Trägheit geht langſam voran, und Armuth folgt ſchnell hinterdrein,
76. So iſt kein Unglück ſo groß, es iſt wieder ein Glück dabei,
77. Allzuviel iſt ungeſund,
78. Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen,
79. Ein magerer Vergleich iſt beſſer als ein fetter Prozeß,
80. Luſt und Liebe zum Dinge, macht Händchen alle Arbeit geringe,
81. Ländlich, ſittlich,
82. Ihr thut der Sache zu viel,
83. Er ſchlägt ſichs aus dem Sinne,
84. Schuſter, bleib bei deinem Leiſten,
85. Beſſer arm mit Ehren, als reich mit Schande,
86. Durch wiederhohlte Streiche, fällt die größte Eiche,

All is well that ends well.
We should never speak ill of the absent, or dead.
He who has but little, can lose but little.
Where nothing is, there the emperor loses his right.
It is better to be alone, than in bad company.
Tell me with whom you associate, and I will tell you who you are.
Whoever treasures up nothing in summer, will have nothing to eat in winter.
Hunger is the best sauce.
Nothing venture, nothing have.
He has gained honor by it.
He reflects, or meditates.
He got into the secret.
I do not care for it.
Idleness goes slowly before and poverty follows quick after.
There is no misfortune so great, but there is some advantage attending it.
Too much is unhealthy.
Whoever will not hear, must feel.
A small composition is better than a great lawsuit.
A desire and love for a thing makes work easy.
Every country has its custom.
You carry the thing too far.
He turns his thoughts from it.
Shoemaker, keep to your last.
It is better to be poor with honor, than rich with disgrace.
Repeated strokes, fell the greatest oaks.

87. [illegible] jeder ſtrecke ſich nach ſeiner [illegible]	Let every one cut his coat according to his cloth.
88. [illegible]ie das Leben, ſo der Nach[illegible]	As our life is, so will be our celebrity after death.
89. [illegible] Prophet gilt nirgend we[illegible] als in ſeinem Vaterlande,	A prophet has no honor in his own country.
90. [illegible]er Unglück gekoſtet hat, [illegible] wie es einem andern [illegible]	Whoever has experienced misfortune, knows how to feel for others.
91. [illegible] Beſen kehren gut,	New brooms sweep clean.
92. [illegible] und halten, ſteht [illegible] Jung und Alten,	It becomes both young and old, to perform what they promise.
93. [illegible] Krug geht ſo lange zu [illegible]er, bis er bricht,	A pitcher may go often to the well, and be broken at last.
94. [illegible]ne Krähe hackt der andern [illegible] Augen nicht aus,	One crow does not peck out the eyes of another.
95. [illegible]ne Schwalbe macht keinen [illegible]ommer,	One swallow does not make a summer.
96. [illegible] will die Gefahr laufen,	I will run the risk.
97. [illegible]orgen macht Sorgen,	He who goes a borrowing, goes a sorrowing.
98. [illegible] iſt nicht alles Gold was [illegible]t,	It is not all gold that glitters.
99. [illegible]oth bricht Eiſen,	Necessity has no law.
100. [illegible]iemand weiß wo der Schuh [illegible] drückt, als wer ihn hat,	No one knows, where the shoe pinches, but he who wears it.
101. Ein Vogel in der Hand, iſt beſſer als zwanzig auf dem Da[illegible]e,	A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
102. [illegible]ichts wiſſen iſt keine Schan[illegible]e, aber nichts lernen wollen,	Ignorance is no disgrace; but having no inclination to learn is a disgrace.
103. [illegible]ancher Apfel hat eine ſchöne [illegible]ale und inwendig ſteckt ein [illegible]urm,	Many apples have a fine outward appearance, but are rotten within.
104. [illegible]as Angeſicht verräth die [illegible]hat.	The countenance betrays the deed. A guilty conscience needs no accuser.
105. [illegible]ei Gott iſt kein Ding un[illegible]möglich,	With God nothing is impossible.
106. [illegible]enn Glück anklopft, ſo ma[illegible]e ſo bald auf,	When fortune knocks, be sure to open the door.
107. [illegible]ach dem Regen ſcheint die [illegible]Sonne,	After a storm comes a calm.
108. [illegible] macht aus der Mücke einen [illegible]Elephanten,	He makes a mountain of a mole hill.
109. [illegible]er mit Gold und Silber [illegible]ficht, iſt des Sieges gewiß,	He who fights with gold and silver is sure to conquer.

110. Geduld überwindet alles, — Patience overcomes all things.
111. Stille Wasser sind am tiefsten, — Still waters are commonly deepest.
112. Rom ist in einem Tage nicht gebauet worden, — Rome was not built in a day.
113. Zeit, Ebbe und Fluth warten auf niemand, — Time and tide wait for no man.
114. Gott wird geben einem jeden nach seinen Werken, — God will render to every man according to his deeds.
115. Im Wohlstande hat man Freunde die Menge; aber in Zeit der Noth gehen fünf und zwanzig auf ein Loth, — In time of prosperity friends will be plenty; in time of adversity not one amongst twenty.
116. Nicht Reichthum, sondern Zufriedenheit macht die Menschen glücklich, — Not riches, but contentment makes men happy.
117. Der Schriftsteller ist zu schätzen, welcher die Beförderung der Tugend zum Zwecke hat, — That writer is to be esteemed, who has the promotion of virtue for his object.
118. Strebe zu haben ein unverletzt Gewissen allenthalben, sowohl gegen Gott als gegen Menschen, — Strive to have always a conscience void of offence, both towards God and man.

GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS.

A. C.	Anno Christi,	in the year of our Lord.
Anno	im Jahr,	in the year.
Antw.	Antwort,	answer.
A. T.	Altes Testament,	Old Testament.
Ausg.	ausgenommen,	except.
B.	Buch, Band,	book, volume.
C. Cap., or Kap.	Capitel, or Kapitel,	chapter.
D.	Doctor,	Doctor.
d. h.	das heißt,	that means.
d. i.	das ist,	i. e. viz.
dergl.	dergleichen,	of this kind.
Ev.	Evangelium,	Gospel.
Ew.	Euer,	your.
f. or folg.	folgend, (*sing.*)	the following.
ff.	folgende, (*plu.*)	the following.
Fr.	Frau,	Lady, wife.
geb.	geboren,	born.

geſt. ..... geſtorben, ... died.
Gr. ..... Groſchen, ... a coin in Germany.
h. S. ..... heilige Schrift, ... Holy Scriptures.
Hr. Hen. .... Herr, Herrn, ... Mr. Sir, Sirs, Messrs.
J. C. ..... Jeſus Chriſtus, ... Jesus Christ.
l. ..... lies, ... read.
M. or Maj. .. Majeſtät, ... Majesty.
Mſcr. ..... Manuſcript, ... Manuscript.
N. S. ..... Nachſchrift, ... Postscript.
N. T. ..... Neues Teſtament, .. New Testament.
od. ..... oder, ... or.
Rec. ..... Recenſent, ... Reviewer, critic.
Rthlr. ..... Reichs Thaler, ... Rixdollar.
S. f. ..... Seite, ... Page (of a book).
S. or ſ. ..... ſiehe, ... see, or vide.
S. M. Maj. .... Seine Majeſtät, ... his Majesty.
St. ..... Sanct, ... Saint.
Thlr. ..... Thaler, ... dollar.
u. ſ. w. ..... und andere mehr, .. and so forth, or farther
u. d. g. ..... und dergleichen, ... and the like.
u. ſ. f. ..... und ſofort, or ferner, } &c.
u. ſ. w. ..... und ſo mehr, }
u. ſ. v. ..... und ſo weiter, }
V. or v. ..... Vers or von, ... Verse, of, or from.
Z. ..... Zeile, ... line.
z. B. ..... zum Beiſpiel, } for example.
z. E. ..... zum Exempel, }

FINIS.

Errata.

Page	5	line 25	for glutton, read gluttony.
....	10	.. 9	.. Zeichen, read zeichnen.
....	10	.. 31	.. der Boden, the ground, read the loft.
....	19	.. 10	.. das Reis, the rice, read the twig.
....	21	.. 23	.. Maria, read Marid.
....	23	.. 6	.. should be line 8.
....	38	.. 3	.. en read n.
....	38	.. 7	.. es, en, read s, n.
....	40	.. 26	.. should be line 28, for es, en, read s, n.
....	95	.. 27	.. for Spinnesen, m. l. read Spindel f. 3
....	114	.. 30	.. Gewollt, read Gewollt
....	147	.. 7	.. Ich befliß, read Ich befliß mich.
....	205	.. 3	.. inseparable, read inseparable.
....	206	.. 15	.. imp, read emp.

J. B. C. VOGEL, Printer 1, St. George's Place, Camberwell.

00048029

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 16 January, 2016